

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL  
ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO. 9109

CALL No. Sa 8 P / Vis / W. H





88.  
15.1.17

# WORKS

BY

~~114~~  
~~11810~~

THE LATE

HORACE HAYMAN WILSON,  
M.A., F.R.S.,

MEMBER OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY, OF THE ASIATIC SOCIETIES OF  
CALCUTTA AND PARIS, AND OF THE ORIENTAL SOCIETY OF GERMANY;  
FOREIGN MEMBER OF THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF FRANCE;  
MEMBER OF THE IMPERIAL ACADEMIES OF ST. PETERSBURGH AND VIENNA,  
AND OF THE ROYAL ACADEMIES OF MUNICH AND BERLIN;  
PH. D. DRESLAU; M. D. MARIENBURG, ETC.;  
AND DOCTOR PROFESSOR OF SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD.

VOL. VIII.

~~D 3391~~

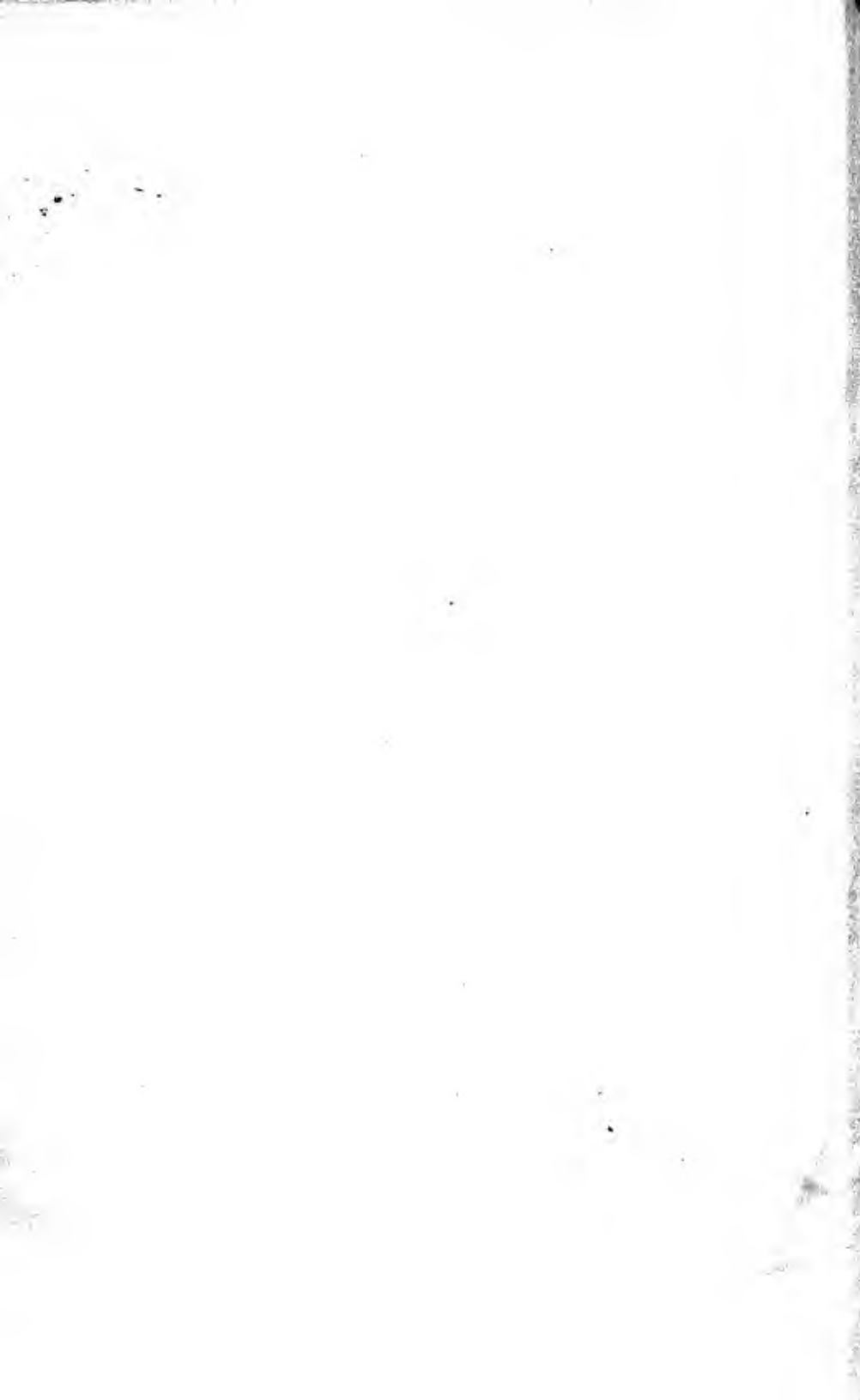


LONDON:

TRÜBNER & CO., 60.







THE  
VISHNŪ PURĀṆA:  
A SYSTEM



OF  
HINDU MYTHOLOGY AND TRADITION.

TRANSLATED

FROM THE ORIGINAL SANSKRIT,

3209

AND

ILLUSTRATED BY NOTES

DERIVED CHIEFLY FROM OTHER PURĀṆAS,

BY THE LATE

H. H. WILSON, M.A., F.R.S.,

BODEN PROFESSOR OF SANSKRIT IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD,  
ETC., ETC.

EDITED BY

FITZEDWARD HALL.

508P  
Vis/W.H.

VOL. III.

LONDON:

TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1866.

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 9149 .....

Date..... 26.7.57.....

Call No. Sa 8p .....

vis/w.H

# VISHNU PURĀNA.

## BOOK III.

### CHAPTER I.

Account of the several Manus and Manwantaras. Swárochisha, the second Manu: the divinities, the Indra, the seven Rishis, of his period, and his sons. Similar details of Auttami, Tāmāsa, Raivata, Chákshusha, and Vaivaswata. The forms of Vishnú, as the preserver, in each Manwantara. The meaning of Vishnú.

**MAITREYA.**—The disposition of the earth and of the ocean, and the system of the sun and the planets, the creation of the gods and the rest, the origin of the Rishis, the generation of the four castes, the production of brute creatures, and the narratives of Dhruva and Prahláda, have been fully related by thee, my venerable preceptor. I am now desirous to hear from you the series of all the Manwantaras, as well as an account of those who preside over the respective periods, with Śakra, the king of the gods, at their head.

**PARÁŚARA.**—I will repeat to you, Maitreya, in their order, the different Manwantaras,—those which are past, and those which are to come.

The first Manu was Swáyambhuva; then came Swárochisha; then, Auttami;\* then, Tāmāsa; then, Raivata;

---

\* Some of my MSS. have Uttama. See note 2 at p. 5, *infra*.

then, Chákshushia: these six Manus have passed away. The Manu who presides over the seventh Manwantara, which is the present (period), is Vaivaswata, the son of the Sun.\*

The period of Swáyambhuva Manu, in the beginning of the Kalpa, † has already been described by me, together with the gods, Rishis, (and other personages) who then flourished.<sup>1</sup> I will now, therefore, enumerate the presiding gods, Rishis, and sons of the Manu, in the Manwantara of Swárochisha.<sup>2</sup> The deities of this period (or the second Manwantara) were the classes

<sup>1</sup> The gods were said to be the Yámas (Vol. I., p. 109); the Rishis were Marichi, Angiras, &c. (Vol. I., p. 100, note 2); and the sons were Priyavrata and Uttānapāda (Vol. I., pp. 107, 108). The Vāyu adds, to the Yamas, the Ajitas, who share with the former, it observes, sacrificial offerings. The Matsya, Padma, Brahma Purāṇas, and Hari Vaiṣṇa‡ substitute, for the sons, the grandsons, of Swáyambhuva, — Agnīdhra and the rest (Vol. II., pp 101, 102).

<sup>2</sup> This Manu, according to the legend of his birth in the Márkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, § was the son of Swarochis, so named from the splendour of his appearance, when born, and who was the son of the nymph Varūthini, by the Gandharva Kali. || The text, in another place, makes him a son of Priyavrata. ¶

\* Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, I., 61, 62.

† The present Kalpa, the Várāha, from *varāha*, 'boar'. See Vol. I., pp. 58, 59.

‡ *Śl.* 415.

§ Chapter LXIII.

|| I find Kāla.

¶ See p. 11, note †, *infra*. According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 19, Swárochisha was son of Agni.

called *Párávatas* and *Tushítas*; <sup>1\*</sup> and the king of the gods was the mighty *Vipaśchit*.† The seven *Rishis*? <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The *Váyu* gives the names of the individuals of these two classes, consisting, each, of twelve. It furnishes, also, the nomenclature of all the classes of divinities, and of the sons of the *Manus*, in each *Manwantara*. According to the same authority, the *Tushítas* were the sons of *Kratu*;‡ the *Bhágavata* calls them the sons of *Tushítá* by *Vedaśiras*.§ The divinities of each period are, according to the *Váyu*, those to whom offerings of the *Soma* juice and the like are presented collectively.

<sup>2</sup> The *Váyu* describes the *Rishis* of each *Manwantara* as the sons, or, in some cases, the descendants, in a direct line, of the seven sages, *Atri*, *Angiras*, *Bhṛigu*, *Kaśyapa*, *Pulaha*, *Pulastya*, and *Vasishtha*: with some inconsistency; for *Kaśyapa*, at least, did not appear, himself, until the seventh *Manwantara*. In the present series,|| *Úrja* is the son of *Vasishtha*; *Stambha* springs from *Kaśyapa*; *Práña*, from *Bhṛigu*; *Rishabha* descends from *Angiras*; *Dattoli* is the son of *Pulastya*; *Nischara* springs from *Atri*; and *Arvarivat* is the son of *Pulaha*. The *Brahma Purāṇa* and *Hari Vamśa* ¶ have a rather different list, or, *Aurva*, *Stambha*, *Kaśyapa*,

---

\* We read, Vol. II., p. 27, after an enumeration of twelve names: "These, who, in the *Chákshusha Manwantara*, were the gods called *Tushítas*, were called the twelve *Ádityas*, in the *Manwantara* of *Vaiwasvata*." But our text, as now appears, places the *Tushítas* in the second *Manwantara*, not in the sixth: see p. 12, *infra*. Nor, according to the *Váyu-purāṇa*, were they *Vishnu*, *Śakra*, &c.

† The *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I. 20, gives *Rochana* as the *Indra* of the second *Manwantara* or *Patriarchate*.

‡ *Tushítá*, according to the same authority, was their mother, as in our text, p. 17, *infra*.

§ So, rather, the *Bhágavata* appears to imply: VIII., I., 21.

|| Professor Wilson seems to have followed, here, his own MSS. of the *Váyu-purāṇa*, exclusively; and they must differ greatly from those to which I, after him, have access. Instead of *Úrja* occurs, in these MSS., what looks like a corruption of *Turya* or *Úrva*; for *Práña*, *Droṇa*; for *Dattoli*, *Dattátri*; for *Nischara*, *Nischala*; and, for *Arvarivat*, *Dhávast*.

¶ Śl. 417.

were Urja, Stambha,\* Prāṇa, Dattoli,† Rishabha, Niś-

Prāṇa, Brīhaspati, Chyavana, and Dattoli:‡ but the origin of part of this difference is nothing more than an imperfect quotation from the Vāyu Purāṇa; the two first, Aurva and Stambha, being specified as the son of Vasishṭha and the descendant of Kaśyapa, and then the parentage of the rest being omitted: to complete the seven, therefore, Kaśyapa becomes one of them. Some other errors of this nature occur in these two works, and from the same cause,—a blundering citation§ of the Vāyu, which is named as their authority:

एते महर्षयस्तान् वायुमोक्षा महाव्रताः ।

A curious peculiarity, also, occurs in these mistakes. They are confined to the first eight Manwantaras. The Brahma Purāṇa omits all details of the last six; and the Hari Vanśa inserts them fully and correctly, agreeably to the authority of the Vāyu. It looks, therefore, as if the compiler of the Hari Vanśa had followed the Brahma, as far as it went, right or wrong, but had had recourse to the original Vāyu Purāṇa, when the Brahma failed him. Dattoli is sometimes written Dattoni and Dattotri; and the latter appears to have been the case with the copy of the Hari Vanśa employed by M. Langlois, who || makes one of the Rishis of this Manwantara, "le pénitent Atri." He is not without countenance in some such reading; for the Padma Purāṇa changes the name to Dattātreyā, no doubt suggested by Datta-atrī. Dattātreyā, however, is the son of Atri; whilst the Vāyu calls the person of the text the son of Pulastya. There can be no doubt,

\* Stamba is an equally common reading in my MSS.

† So read three of my MSS. Variants are Dattoni, Dattori, Dattobhi, Dattokti, Dantoli, Dantobhi, and Dambholi. See, further, Vol. I., p. 154, note †.

‡ In MSS. of the *Brahma-purāṇa* I find Stamba and Dattoni. The Calcutta edition of the *Harivanśa* has Stamba, Kaśyapa, and Dattoni.

§ In *Sl.* 418.

|| Vol. I., p. 38.

chara,\* and Arvarivat;† and Chaitra, Kimpurusha, and others were the Manu's sons.<sup>1</sup>

In the third period, or Manwantara of Auttami,<sup>2</sup> Su-

therefore, of the correct reading; for the son of Pulastya is Datoli. ‡ (Vol. I., p. 154.)

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu agrees with the text in these names, adding seven § others. The Bhāgavata has a different series. || The Padma has four other names: Nabha, Nabhasya, Prastiti, Bhavana. The Brahma has ten names, including two of these, and several of the names of the Rishis of the tenth Manwantara. The Matsya has the four names of the Padma for the sons of the Manu, and gives seven others, Havindhra, Sukṛita, Mūrti, Apas, Jyotis, Aya, Smṛita (the names of the Brahma), as the seven Prajāpatis of this period, and sons of Vasishṭha. The sons of Vasishṭha, however, belong to the third Manwantara, and bear different appellations. There is, no doubt, some blundering, here, in all the books except the Vāyu and those which agree with it.

<sup>2</sup> The name occurs Auttami, Auttama, and Uttama. The Bhāgavata ¶ and Vāyu agree with our text (p. 11, *infra*), in making him a descendant from Priyavrata. The Mārkaṇḍeya calls him the son of Uttama,\*\* the son of Uttānapāda; †† and this appears to be the correct genealogy, both from our text and the Bhāgavata. ‡‡

\* One MS. gives Nischira.

† The much more frequent lection known to me is Urvarivat.

‡ There is, I incline to think, room for very grave doubt as to both these points. See note † in p. 4, *supra*.

§ I do not count so many; and those that I find are very corruptly written.

|| At VIII., I., 20, it says there were seven, but names only Ūrja and Stambha. Burnouf melts these two names into one.

¶ It calls him Priyavrata's son: VIII., I., 23.

\*\* LXXII., 39. Auttama is the grandson's name, in the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*.

†† LXXIX., 3. Suruchi is there said to be Uttama's mother. For the same parentage, see Vol. I., p. 159, of the present work.

‡‡ Not from the *Bhāgavata*, certainly. See note ¶, in this page. As to our text, see note † at p. 11, *infra*.



śānti\* was the Indra, the king of the gods; the orders of whom were the Sudhāmans,† Satyas, Śivas, Pradarśanas,‡ and Vaśavartins;§ each of the five orders consisting of twelve (divinities). The seven sons of Vasishṭha were the seven Rishis;² and Aja,|| Paraśu,¶

¹ The Brahma and Hari Varuṣa\*\* have, in place of these, the Bhānus; but the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya†† concur with the text. ‡‡

² All the authorities agree in this; but the Brahma and Hari Varuṣa§§ appear to furnish a different series, also; or even a third, according to the French translation: ||| 'Dans le troisième Manwantara parurent, comme Saptarishi, les fils de Vasishṭha, de son nom appelés *Vāsichithas*, les fils d'Hiraṇyagarbha, et les illustres enfans d'Oūrdja. The text is:

वसिष्ठपुत्राः सप्तासन्वासिष्ठा इति विश्रुताः ।

हिरण्यगर्भस्य सुता श्रीर्जा ¶¶ नाम सुतेजसः ॥

The meaning of which is: "There were (in the first Manwantara) seven celebrated sons of Vasishṭha, who (in the third Manwantara) were sons of Brahmā (i. e., Rishis), the illustrious posterity

\* Satyajit, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 24.

† Five MSS. have Swadhāmans.

‡ Pratardanas represents the reading of two MSS.

§ Three MSS. exhibit Vaisavartins. Professor Wilson put "Vasavertis".

|| In three MSS. Prajas occurs.

¶ A single MS. reads Parabhu.

\*\* Śl. 825.

†† In my three MSS. I find Pratardanas, as in the Calcutta edition, instead of Pradarśanas. The Calcutta edition, at variance with my copies, has Swadhāmans, for Sudhāmans.

‡‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 24, names the Satyas, Vedaśrutas, and Bhadrās. Also see note \* at p. 17, *infra*.

§§ Śl. 422.

||| Vol. I., p. 38.

¶¶ The Calcutta edition reads ऊर्जा.

Divya, and others were the sons of the Manu.<sup>1</sup>

The Surúpas,\* Haris, Satyas, and Sudhís<sup>2</sup>† were the classes of gods, each comprising twenty-seven, in the period of Tāmasa, (the fourth Manu).<sup>3</sup> Śibi: was the

of Úrjá. We have already seen that Úrjá was the wife of Vasishtha, by whom she had seven sons, Rajas," &c. (see Vol. I., p. 155), in the Swáyambhuva Manwantara; and these were born again, as the Řishis of the third period. The names of these persons, according to the Matsya and Padma, are, however, very different from those of the sons of Vasishtha given in Vol. I., p. 155, or, Kaukúndihí, Kuruńdi, Dálbhya, Śankha, Praváhita, Mita, and Sammita. §

<sup>1</sup> The Váyú adds ten other names to those of the text. The Brahma gives ten altogether different. The Bhágavata || and Padma have, each, a separate nomenclature.

<sup>2</sup> Of these the Brahma and Hari Vanśa ¶ notice only the Satyas; the Matsya and Padma have only Sádhyas. The Váyú, Bhágavata,\*\* Kúrma, and Márkańdeya †† agree with the text.

<sup>3</sup> He is the son of Priyavrata, according to the text, †† the Váyú, &c. The Márkańdeya §§ has a legend of his birth by a doe;

\* One MS. has Swarúpas. † Swadhís is the reading of one MS.

† Śikhi is, in my MSS., almost as common a lection. And herewith agrees the *Márkańdeya-purána*, LXXIV., 58. Triśikha is the name in the *Bhágavata-purána*, VIII., I., 28.

§ I have put Dálbhya for "Dalaya", on manuscript authority. The *Bhágavata-purána*, VIII., I., 24, names only Pramada, out of the seven; and he is not of the family as detailed in IV., I., 41, 42. See Vol. I., p. 155, note 3.

|| VIII., I., 23: Pavana, Śfinjaya, Yajna-hotra, and others unnamed.

¶ Śl. 427.

\*\* I find—VIII., I., 28, 29—the Satyakas, Haris, Viras, and Vaidhítis.

†† LXXIV., 57.

‡‡ See p. 11, note ‡, *infra*; also, p. 17, text and notes ‡ and §.

§§ Chapter LXXIV.

Indra, also designated by his performance of a hundred sacrifices, (or named Śatakratu \*). The seven Ṛishis were Jyotirdhāman, Pṛithu, Kāvya, Chaitra, Agni, Vanaka, † and Pívara. † The sons of Tāmasa were the mighty kings Nara, Khyāti, Śántahaya, ‡ Jánujangha, and others. ‡

and, from his being begotten in dark tempestuous weather (तमसः), he derives his name. §

† Severally, according to the Vāyu, the progeny of Bhṛigu, Kaśyapa, Angiras, Pulastya, Atri, Vasishṭha, and Pulaha. There is considerable variety in some of the names. Thus, the Matsya has Kavi, Pṛithu, Agni, Akapi, Kapi, Jalpa, || Dhimat. The Hari Vaiṣṇava ¶ has Kāvya, Pṛithu, Agni, Jānu, Dhātri, \*\* Kapivat, Akapivat. For the two last the Vāyu reads Gātra and Vanapīṭha. The son of Pulaha is in his place (Vol. I., p. 155, note 1),—Arvarivat or Vanakapivat. Gātra is amongst the sons of Vasishṭha (Vol. I., p. 155). The Vāyu is, therefore, probably, most correct, although our text, in regard to these two denominations, admits of no doubt: †† अग्निर्वनकस्तथा पीवरश्च । ‡‡

‡ The Vāyu, &c. agree with the text; the Vāyu naming eleven. The Brahma, Matsya, and Padma have a series of ten names, Sutapas, Tapomūla, &c., of which seven are the Ṛishis of the twelfth Manwantara. §§

\* This parenthesis was supplied by the Translator.

† Five of my MSS. read Varada. Two of my MSS. of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa* have Vanaka; the third, Varuṇa. The Calcutta edition, LXXIV., 59, gives Valaka.

‡ In one MS. is Śāntibaya; and, in one, Śāntibavya.

§ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 27, represents him as brother of Uttama.

|| Corrected from the printer's "Salpa". ¶ *Śl.* 426.

\*\* The Calcutta edition has Janyu and Dhāman.

†† See, however, note † in this page.

‡‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 28, names Jyotirdhāman only.

§§ Agreeably to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 27, they were ten in number, of whom it specifies Pṛithu, Khyāti, Nara, and Ketu.

In the fifth interval, the Manu was Raivata;<sup>1</sup> the Indra was Vibhu; the classes of gods, consisting of fourteen each, were the Amitábhās, Abhútarajasas,\* Vai-  
kuñthās, and Sumedhasas;<sup>2</sup>† the seven Rishis were

<sup>1</sup> Raivata, as well as his three predecessors, is regarded, usually, as a descendant of Priyavrata. ‡ The *Mārkaṇḍeyaś* has a long legend of his birth, as the son of King Durgama by the nymph Revatī, sprung from the constellation Revatī, whom Rítavāch, a Muni, caused to fall from heaven. Her radiance became a lake on Mount Kumuda, thence called Raivatāka; and from it appeared the damsel, who was brought up by Pramucha Muni. Upon the marriage of Revatī, the Muni, at her request, restored the asterism to its place in the skies.

<sup>2</sup> The Brahma inserts, of these, only the Abhútarajasas, with

\* Two MSS. have Ábhūtaramas; two, Ábhūtārayas; both which words look very like depravations of the reading in all my other copies, to-wit, Ábhútarajas. The ordinary reading of the line containing this term is:

अमिताभाभूतरजा वैकुण्ठाः समुमेधसः ।

That the first two names must be taken as welded into a compound embodying Ábhútarajas is attempted to be shown in note || in the next page. See, further, note ¶, p. 17, *infra*. And hence the "Abhútarajasas"—i. e., Abhútarajasas—of Professor Wilson may be open to correction, as regards its first syllable. Moreover, on the assumption that his MSS. were like mine, he has substituted the longer ending of the word for the shorter. See Vol. II., p. 101, note \*; and p. 107, note †.

The Sanskrit scholar will have noticed, that, other considerations permitting, the line just quoted might yield Bhútarajas. The reading, unquestionably, of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 3, omits the vowel at the beginning. It is Bhútarayas; and it involves a corruption, I take it, as to its y, such as we have in Ábhūtārayas. The *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXV., 71, has, in my three MSS., Ábhūtanayas or Bhūtanayas, which, as could be shown, may easily have grown out of Ábhútarajas. The Calcutta edition exhibits Bhūpatīs!

† In the singular, Sumedhas. Three MSS. agree in reading Susamedhasas.

‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 2, calls him uterine brother of Tāmasa. And see p. 11, note ‡, *infra*.

§ Chapter LXXV.

Hiraṇyāroman, Vedaśrī,\* Ūrdhwabāhu, Vedabāhu,† Sudhāman,‡ Parjanya, and Mahāmuni.¹§ The sons of

the remark, that 'they were of like nature (with their name):'‡

देवाश्चाभूतरजसस्तथाप्रकृतयः स्मृताः ।

i. e., they were exempt from the quality of passion. M. Langlois,¶ in rendering the parallel passage of the Hari Vaṁśa,\*\* has confounded the epithet and the subject: 'dont les dieux furent les Pracritis, dépourvus de colère et de passion.' He is, also, at a loss what to do with the terms Pāriplava and Rāibhya, in the following passage, पारिप्लवश्च रैभ्यश्च,†† asking: 'Qu'est-ce que Pāriplava? qu'est-ce que Rēbhya?' If he had had the commentary at hand, these questions would have been unnecessary: they are there said to be two classes of divinities: पारिप्लवो रैभ्यश्च देवता-गणविशेषौ ।‡‡

¹ There is less variety in these names than usual. §§ Vedabāhu

\* Devaśrī, according to a single MS.

† In three MSS., Devabāhu.

‡ Two MSS. have Swadhāman.

§ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 3, says that they were, with others, Hiraṇyāroman, Vedaśrīras, and Ūrdhwabāhu.

¶ The Sanskrit allows us to take the word as Ābhūtarajases; meaning, perhaps, 'endowed with activity—*rajas*—as far as that possessed by the Bhūtas.' See Vol. I., p. 83; and Vol. II., p. 74, note 2.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* speaks of the Amṛitābhas and Ābhūtarajas:

अमृताभाभूतरजा विकुण्डाः समुमेधसः ।

For, just below this, it has the line:

इत्येतानीह नामानि आभूतरजसं विदुः ।

On now comparing note \* in the last page with note ¶ at p. 17, *infra*, it will be seen, that the gods under discussion were characterized by their possession, not want, of activity. In the latter passage here referred to, all Professor Wilson's MSS., including those now at Oxford, have, like my own, संभूतो राजसैः, or else संभूतो मानसैः.

¶ Vol. I., p. 39.

\*\* ŚL. 432:

देवाश्चाभूतरजसस्तथाप्रकृतयो ऽपरे ।

†† ŚL. 432.

‡‡ Of the gods of the fifth Manwantara the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 3, 4, particularizes the Bhūtarajas and Vaikuṇṭhas only. See note \* in the preceding page.

§§ See the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXV., 73, 74.

Raivata were Balabandhu, Susāmbhāvya,\* Satyaka, and other valiant kings.†

These four Manus, Swārochisha, Auttami,‡ Tāmasa, and Raivata, were, all, descended from Priyavrata, who, in consequence of propitiating Vishṇu by his devotions,§ obtained these rulers of the Manwantaras for his posterity.

Chākshusha was the Manu of the sixth period,<sup>1</sup> in

is read Devabāhu; Sudhāman, Satyanetra; and Mahāmuni, Muni, Yajus, Vāsishṭha, and Yadudhra. According to the Vāyu, those of the text are, respectively, of the lineage of Angiras, Bhṛigu, Vasishṭha, Pulastya, Atri, Pulaha, and Kaśyapa. There is considerable variety in the names of the Manu's sons.

<sup>1</sup> Chākshusha, according to the best authorities, descended from Dhruva (see Vol. I., p. 177): but the Mārkaṇḍeya has a legend of his birth as the son of a Kshatriya named Anamitra; of his being exchanged, at his birth, for the son of Viśrānta Rāja, and being brought up, by the prince, as his own; of his revealing the business, when a man, and propitiating Brahmā by his devotions, in consequence of which, he became a Manu. In his former birth, he was born from the eye of Brahmā, whence his name, from Chakshus, 'the eye.'||

\* Saṁbhāvya is the reading of five MSS.; Swasaṁbhāvya, that of one.

† Only Arjuna and Balivindhya are named in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 2.

‡ Uttama, as before, is here a variant. The *Vishṇu-purāṇa* is at odds with itself, if it here derives Auttami from Priyavrata,—not from Uttānapāda. See Vol. I. p. 159: also, p. 5, note ¶; p. 7, note 3; p. 8, note §; p. 9, note ‡, *supra*.

"Descended from Priyavrata" translates प्रियव्रतान्वयाः; and "for his posterity", आत्मवंशजान्. We may render: "one in lineage with Priyavrata"; but hardly, considering the context, "as his kindred", instead of "for his posterity". Uttānapāda and Priyavrata were brothers.

§ *Tapas*, 'austerity'. || Compare the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 7.

which the Indra was Manojava:\* the five classes of gods† were the Ādyas,‡ Prastūtas,§ Bhavyas, Prithugas,|| and the magnanimous Lekhas, eight of each:¶ Sumedhas, Virajas, Havishmat, Uttama, Madhu,\*\* Abhināman,†† and Sahishūu were the seven sages.‡ The kings of the earth, the sons of Ohākshusha, were the

\* The authorities agree as to the number, but differ as to the names; reading, for Ādyas, Āryas and Āpyas;‡ for Prastūtas, Prabhūtas and Prasūtas; for Prithugas, Pīthukas and Pīthusas; and, which is a more wide deviation, Rībhus for Bhavyas. M. Langlois§§ omits the Prasūtas, and inserts Divaukasas; but the latter, meaning 'divinities,' is only an epithet. The Hari Vamśa || has:

आद्याः प्रसूता अमवः पृथुगाश्च दिवीकसः । ¶¶

लेखा नाम महाराज पञ्च देवगणाः सुताः ॥

The comment adds: दिवीकस इति सर्वेषां विशेषणम् ।

‡ The Vāyu reads Sudhāman,\*\*\* for the first name; Unnata, for Uttama; and Abhināna, for Abhināman.††† The latter occurs

\* Mantradruma: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 8.

† See note \* at p. 3, *supra*.

‡ One MS. has Āryas.

§ This reading is in none of my MSS. Two have Prasūtas; all the rest, Prasūtas. || Three MSS. have Pīthugas.

¶ See p. 3, note \*, *supra*.

\*\* Man is in one MS.

†† Every one of my MSS. has Atināman.

‡‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* names the Āpyas only, of all the gods of this Patriarchate.

§§ Vol. I., p. 39.

|| *Śl.* 437.

¶¶ The Calcutta edition has आद्याः, प्रभूताः, and पृथुकाः.

\*\*\* And so does the *Harivamśa*, *Śl.* 435.

††† The *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXVI., 54, has, in one of my three MSS., Unnata, as against Uttama in the other two; and so has the Calcutta edition, with which they all concur in reading Atināman.

powerful Uru,\* Puru,† Śatadyumna, and others.‡

The Manu of the present period is the wise lord of obsequies,§ the illustrious offspring of the Sun. The deities are the Ādityas,|| Vasus, and Rudras:¶ their sovereign is Purandara. Vasishtha, Kaśyapa, Atri, Jamadagni, Gautama, Viśwamitra, and Bharadvāja are the seven Ṛishis; and the nine pious sons of Vaivaswata Manu are the kings\*\* Ikshwāku, Nabhaga,†† Dhṛishṭa,‡‡ Saryāti,§§ Narishyanta, Nābhānidishṭa,|||

also Abhināmin (Matsya) and Atināman (Hari Vainśa¶¶). The latter

\* Here—as in Vol. I., p. 177—I have corrected the Translator's "Uru".

† Para is the worthless reading of two MSS.; and as many have Pūru, the ancient form of the name. See Vol. I., p. 177, note †.

‡ Those named in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 7, are Puru, Purusha, and Sudyumna.

§ Śrāddhadeva; often taken as a proper name. Vaivaswata is intended. See p. 2, *supra*.

|| See Vol. II., p. 27, for their names.

¶ Add 'etc.' And see p. 15, note ‡. *infra*.

\*\* See Book IV., Chapters I.-V., where I return to these kings.

†† Three MSS. have Nābhaga. As will be seen further on, this king should seem to bear another name, that of Nīga, which word several of my copies give here, as the reading.

‡‡ In two MSS., Dhṛishṭa; in one, Viśhānu; the former of which lections is of no account.

§§ Here I correct the "Sanyati" of the original edition. Half my MSS. have Saryāti.

||| Not one of my MSS. has this reading. Six—like two of Professor Wilson's, now at Oxford—give Nābhāga and Dishṭa; two, Nābhāga and Arishṭa; one, Nābhāga and Dishṭa; one, Nābhāga and Dishṭa; one, Nābhāga and Dishṭa, &c. Moreover, it is shown, in the next page, that at least one of the commentators understands two kings to be here spoken of. And there is strong ground for believing that herein he is right.

Professor Wilson's choice of name—to which there is nothing, in any of the MSS. he used, nearer than नभो नेदिष्टः, occurring in one of them—must have been suggested by the Nābhānedishṭa of the *Rigveda* and other ancient writings, to whom he refers in a note to Book IV., Chapter I.

¶¶ *Sl.* 436.



Karūsha, Prishadhra, and the celebrated Vasumat.<sup>1\*</sup>

The unequalled energy of Vishū, combining with

reads, † no doubt incorrectly, Bhṛigu, Nabha, and Vivaswat, for Uttama, Madhu, and Ilavishumat.‡

The sons of Chākshusha are enumerated in Vol. I., p. 177.

<sup>1</sup> There is no great variety of nomenclature in this Manwantara. The Vāyu adds, to the deities, the Sādhyas, Viśwas, Ma-

\* The text is as follows:

कश्यपश्च पुषधश्च वसुमन्लोकविश्रुतः ।

On this it is remarked, in one of the commentaries, the other being silent: वसुमन्लोकविश्रुत इति विशेषणद्वयं पुषधश्चैव । वसुमान्धैर्यवान् । वसिष्ठश्चपि जातेऽपि चोभाभावाल्लोकविश्रुतः सर्वसंगपरित्यागेन मुक्तिप्राप्तेः । तथा सति नव पुत्रा महाबला इति नवत्वमुपपन्नं भवति । That is to say, the "Vasumat" of the text is an epithet of Prishadhra, denoting 'fortitudinous'.

It is thus evident how the commentator here makes out the exact tale of nine kings.

Discrepantly, the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 2, 3, has Ikshvāku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Dīshṭa, Karūsha, Prishadhra, and Vasumat,—ten, as it distinctly states. Reference will be made, in the sequel, to IX., I., 12. See, for nine sons of Vivaswata, the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXIX., 11, 12.

At present, it need only be added, that the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, professing to name but nine sons of the reigning Manu, makes Prābhū the last, and says nothing of Vasumat as one of his brothers. Later Purāṇas than the *Vāyu* have manipulated its statements with a very free hand. For instance, the first line of the stanza in which it speaks of the sixth and seventh of Vivaswata's Rishis, served, pretty certainly, as the type of the quotation given above; and hence the creation, there, of Vasumat. This stanza is thus expressed:

यष्टो वसिष्ठपुत्रस्तु वसुमन्लोकविश्रुतः ।

वत्सारः काश्यपश्चैव सन्ति साधुसंमताः ॥

Of the two commentaries adduced in my annotations, that which I have hitherto designated as the smaller becomes, here at the beginning of Book III., considerably the ampler. From this point, not to mislead, I shall, till further notice, distinguish it as B; the other being called A.

† *ŚL* 435.

‡ Havishmat and Viraka, and these only, are spoken of in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 8.

the quality of goodness, and effecting the preservation of created things, presides over all the Manwantaras, in the form of a divinity.\* Of a portion of that divinity Yajna was born, in the Swáyambhuva Manwantara,

and gods sprung from Bhṛigu and Angiras.† The Bhága-vata‡ adds the R̥ibhus;§ and most include the two Aświns, as a class. Of the Maruts, however, the Hari Vauśa remarks, that they are born in every Manwantara, seven times seven (or forty-nine); that, in each Manwantara, four times seven (or twenty-eight) obtain emancipation, but their places are filled up by persons reborn in that character. So the commentator explains the passages

मन्वन्तरेषु सर्वेषु प्राग्देशं सप्तसप्तकाः ॥

and

मन्वन्तरे व्यतिक्रान्ते चत्वारः सप्तका गणाः । ¶

सप्तसप्तका एकोनपञ्चाशत्वरुतो देवाः प्रतिमन्वन्तरे भवन्ति । Commentary. तेषां मध्ये चत्वारः सप्तका अष्टाविंशति मरुतः । Commentary. It may be suspected, however, that these passages have been derived from the simple statement of the Matsya, that, in all the Manwantaras, classes of R̥ishis appear by seven and seven, and, having established a code of law and morality, depart to felicity:

मन्वन्तरेषु सरेषु सप्त सप्त महर्षयः ।

छत्वा धर्मव्यवस्थानं प्रयान्ति परमं पदम् ॥

The Vāyu has a rather different list of the seven R̥ishis:\*\* or, Vasumat, the son of Vasishṭha; Vatsára, descended from Kaśyapa;

\* विष्णुशक्तिरनीपम्या सत्त्वोद्भक्ता स्थितौ स्थिता ।

मन्वन्तरेष्वशेषेषु देवत्वेनाधितिष्ठति ॥

† With this enumeration corresponds that in the *Mārka-pur.*, LXXIX., 1.

‡ At VIII., XIII., 4, it adds, to the Ádityas, Vasus, and Rudras, the Viśve devas, Maruts, Aświns, and R̥ibhus.

§ For these gods, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Āgveda*, Vol. I., p. 46, note a.

¶ ŚL. 444.

¶ ŚL. 445.

\*\* In this order: Viśvámitra, Jamadagni, Bharadwāja, Śaradwat, Atri, Vasumat, Vatsára.

the will-begotten progeny of Akūti.<sup>1\*</sup> When the Swá-

Viśwámitra, the son of Gádhi, and of the Kuśika race; Jama-dagni, son of Kuru,† of the race of Bhṛigu; Bharadwája, son of Bṛihaspati; Śaradwat, son of Gotama,‡ of the family of Utathya;§ and Brahmakośa or Atri, descended from Brahmá. || All the other authorities agree with our text.

<sup>1</sup> The nominal ¶ father being the patriarch Ruchi. (See Vol. I., p. 108.)

\* अग्नेन तस्य जज्ञे ऽसौ यज्ञः स्वायम्भुवे ऽन्तरे ।

आकूत्यां मानसो देव उत्पन्नः प्रथमे ऽन्तरे ॥

On this the two commentaries remark: तस्य विष्णोरंशेन स्वायम्भुव-  
मन्वन्तरे । आकूत्यां मातरि यज्ञसंज्ञ उत्पन्नो जज्ञे बभूवेत्यर्थः । यद्वा ।  
प्रथमे ऽन्तरे ऽवसरे ब्रह्मणी मानसो य उत्पन्नो रुचिस्तस्मात्पितुर्जज्ञे  
इति ।

According to this, "From a portion of him Yajna was born, in the Swáyambhuva Manwantara, of Akūti; or, in this first Manwantara, Yajna was born from Ruchi, a god will-begotten of Brahmá." Hence the term *mánasa* must be taken to allude to Ruchi, Akūti's husband, born from Brahmá in the first epoch of the Swáyambhuva Patriarchate. *Mánasa* cannot be applied to the child of a virgin. Males, not females, had will-begotten offspring.

† I find Ūru; also, Kuśa. See Book IV., Chapter VII.

‡ Corrected from "Gautama". This, importing 'son of Gotama', is Śaradwat's patronymic. See Book IV., Chapter XIX.

§ Corrected from "Utathya". In Vol. I., p. 153, note 2, I have amended "Uttathya".

In Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. II., p. 63, appears "Uchatthya"—*recte*, Uchathya—as father of Dirghatamas; and it is added, in a note: "The reading of the Purāṇas is, invariably, Uttathya." "Utathya" occurs *ibid.*, p. 83, note 6. These spellings, which I have never met with, must be incorrect; as the etymology—*uchatha*, 'praise'—of the Vaidik form of the name, Uchathya, clearly evinces.

These and suchlike minutiae are not purposeless, seeing that the great Sanskrit Dictionary of Messrs. Boehtlingk and Roth inserts so copiously, as variants, transformations of proper names which owe their existence to mere inadvertence, but the reality or unreality of which cannot be judged of in the absence of manuscripts.

|| Swáyambhuva, in the original, ¶ But see note \* in this page.

rochisha Manwantara had arrived, that divine (Yajna) was born as Ajita, along with the Tushita gods, the sons of Tushitá. In the third Manwantara,\* Tushita† was again born of Satyá, as Satya, along with the class of deities so denominated. In the next period, Satya became Hari,‡ along with the Haris, the children of Hari.§ The excellent Hari was again born, in the Raivata Manwantara, of Saubhúti,|| as Mánasa, along with the gods called Abhútarajasas.¶ In the next period, Vishnú\*\* was born of Vikunthí,†† as Vaikunthá, along

\* Bhagavat then appeared as Satyasena, along with the Satyavratas, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 25.

† Here a name of Vishnú.

‡ Son of Hariṇi and Harimedhas, says the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 30.

§ The original has the locative हरीयां, which supposes Haryá for the nominative.

|| Bhagavat manifested himself as Ajita, son of Vairaja and Saubhúti, in the time of the sixth Manu, Chákshusha, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., V., 9. We read, in this page, that Vishnú appeared as Ajita, in the age of Swárochisha. His epiphany then was as Vibhu, son of Vedaśiras and Tushitá, declares the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., I., 21.

¶ All my MSS.—except that four of them have मानसे: for राजसे:—concur in reading:

रेवते ऽ प्यन्तर देवः संभूत्या मानसो ऽ भवत् ।

संभूतो राजसेः सार्धं देवदेववरो हरिः ॥

‘In the Raivata patriarchal period, again, Hari, best of gods, was born, of Saubhúti, as the divine Mánasa,—originating with the deities called Rajasas’.

Mánasa is no inappropriate name for a deity associated with the Rajasas. We appear to have, in it, *mánasam*—the same as *manas*—with the change of termination required to express male personification. See Vol. I., p. 35, note\*.

Saubhúti had a son Paurṇamāsa. See Vol. I., p. 153. Also see the note immediately preceding this, and note ||, at p. 10, *supra*.

\*\* In the original, Purnashottama.

†† We must read Vikunthá. The Sanskrit presents the locative case as विकुण्डायाम्.

Vikunthá's husband was Śubhra, alleges the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., III.

with the deities called Vaikūṇṭhas.\* In the present Manwantara, Vishnū was again born as Vāmana, the son of Kaśyapa by Aditi.† With three paces‡ he subdued the worlds, and gave them, freed from all embarrassment, to Purandara.<sup>1</sup> These are the seven persons

<sup>1</sup> There is no further account of this incarnation in the Vishnū Purāṇa. Fuller details occur in the Bhāgavata, Kūrma, Matsya,

V., 4. But, according to that authority, Vikūṇṭha appeared in the fifth Patriarchate, not, as here, in the sixth.

\* That these gods appeared under Raivata, not under Chākshusha, we read in p. 3, *supra*.

† Hence, Vāmana was brother of the Ādityas and Tushitas. See Vol. II., p. 27. Also see p. 3, note \*, *supra*. He is called the last-born of the Ādityas, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 6.

‡ On the three strides of Vishnū, by reason of which he is called Trivikrama, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., Introduction, p. xxxiv.; and Vol. IV., p. 17, note: also, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part II., pp. 187 and 214–216; Part IV., Chapter II., especially pp. 54–58, and pp. 118, 119.

Dr Muir, in his *Mataparikshā*, Part I.,—p. 105 of the Sanskrit, p. 16 of the English,—and twice in pages, just referred to, of his *Texts*, has quoted and translated a curious relevant passage from Durga Āchārya on Yāska's *Nirukta*. It is subjoined, together with Dr. Muir's latest version of it:

विष्णुरादित्यः । कथमिति । यत् आह वेधा निदधे पदं निधत्ते पदं निधानं पदैः । कृत्तत्तावत् । पृथिव्यामन्तरिक्षे दिवीति शाक-पूषिः । पार्थिवो ऽग्निर्भूत्वा पृथिव्यां यत्किञ्चिदस्ति तद्विक्रमते तदधि-तिष्ठति । अन्तरिक्षे वैद्युतात्मना । दिवि सूर्यात्मना । यदुत्तम । तमू अह्नस्त्वेधा भुवे कमिति । समारोहणे उदयगिरावुदयपदमेकं नि-धत्ते । विष्णुपदे मध्यंदिने ऽन्तरिक्षे । गयशिरस्त्र्यस्रगिरावित्यार्षवाम आचार्यो मन्यते ।

“Vishnū is the sun [Āditya]. How so? Because [the hymn] says: ‘In three places he planted his step’; i. e., plants his step, [makes] a planting with his steps. Where, then, is this done? ‘On the earth, in the firmament, and in the sky’, according to Śākapuṇi. Becoming terrestrial fire, he strides over, abides in, whatever there is on earth; in the shape of lightning, in the firmament; and in the form of the sun,

by whom, in the several Manwantaras, created beings have been protected. Because this whole world has been pervaded by the energy of the deity, he is entitled Vishnú, from the root Viś, 'to enter', or 'pervade'; for all the gods, the Manus, the seven Rishis, the sons of the Manus, the Indras the sovereigns of the gods, all are but the impersonated might\* of Vishnú.<sup>1</sup>

and Vámana Puráúas. The first of these (Book VIII., Chapters 15—23) relates the penance and sacrifices of Bali, son of Virochana, by which he had overcome Indra and the gods, and obtained supreme dominion over the three spheres. Vishnú, at the request of the deities, was born as a dwarf, Vámana, the son of Aditi by Káśyapa; who, applying to Bali for alms, was promised, by the prince, whatever he might demand, notwithstanding Śukra, the preceptor of the Daityas, apprised him whom he had to deal with. The dwarf demanded as much space as he could step over at three steps, and, upon the assent of Bali, enlarged himself to such dimensions as to stride over the three worlds. Being worshipped, however, by Bali and his ancestor Prahláda, he conceded to them the sovereignty of Pátála.

<sup>1</sup> See the same etymology in Vol. I., p. 4, note 2.

in the sky. As it is said (in the R. V., X., 88, 10): 'They made him to become threefold'. Anúaváha Áchárya thinks [the meaning is] this: 'He plants one foot on the *'samárohaña'* (place of rising), when mounting over the hill of ascension; [another], on the *'vishnúpada'*, the meridian sky; [a third], on the *'gayasíras'*, the hill of setting".

\* *Vibhítayak*, 'potencies'.

## CHAPTER II.

OF the seven future Manus and Manwantaras. Story of Sanjná and Chháyá, wives of the Sun. Sávarñi, son of Chháyá, the eighth Manu. His successors, with the divinities, &c. of their respective periods. Appearance of Vishnú in each of the four Yugas.

MAITREYA.—You have recapitulated to me, most excellent Brahman, the particulars of the past Manwantaras. Now give me some account of those which are to come.

PARÁSARA.—Sanjná, the daughter of Viśwakarman, was the wife of the Sun, and bore him three children, the Manu (Vaivaswata), Yama, and the goddess Yamí (or the Yamuná river). Unable to endure the fervours of her lord, Sanjná gave him Chháyá,<sup>1</sup> as his handmaid, and repaired to the forests, to practise devout exercises.\* The Sun, supposing Chháyá to be his wife

<sup>1</sup> That is, her shadow, or image. It also means 'shade.' The Bhágavata, † however, makes both Sanjná and Chháyá daughters of Viśwakarman. According to the Matsya, Vivaswat, the son of Kaśyapa and Aditi, had three wives: Rájñi, the daughter of Raivata, by whom he had Revanta; Prabhá, by whom he had Prabháta; and, by Sanjná, the daughter of Twashítí, the Manu, and Yama, and Yamuná. The story then proceeds much as in the text.

\* "Devout exercises" renders *tapas*.

† VIII., XIII., 8. In the next stanza it adds, that some give the Sun a third wife, Vadhavá. The commentator, Śrīdhara, identifies her, nevertheless, with Sanjná, who is said—VI., VI., 38—to have been transformed into a mare—*vadhavá*.

Sanjná, begot, by her, three other children, Śanaishchara (Saturn), another Manu (Śavarñi\*), and a daughter, Tapatí (the Taptee river). Chháýá, upon one occasion, being offended with Yama,<sup>1</sup> the son of Sanjná, denounced an imprecation upon him, and, thereby, revealed to Yama, and to the Sun, that she was not, in truth, Sanjná, the mother of the former.† Being further informed, by Chháýá, that his wife had gone to the wilderness, the Sun beheld her, by the eye of meditation,‡ engaged in austerities, in the figure of a mare, (in the region of Uttara Kuru§). Metamorphosing himself into a horse, he rejoined his wife, and begot three other children,—the two Aświns|| and Revanta,—and then brought Sanjná back to his own dwelling. To diminish his intensity, Viśwakarma placed the luminary on his lathe, to grind off some of his effulgence, and, in this manner, reduced it an eighth: for more

---

<sup>1</sup> Yama, provoked at her partiality for her own children, abused Chháýá, and lifted up his foot, to kick her. She cursed him to have his leg affected with sores and worms: but his father bestowed upon him a cock, to eat the worms and remove the discharge; and Yama, afterwards propitiating Mahádeva, obtained the rank of Lokapála, and sovereign of Tartarus. ¶

---

\* Not named, here, in the original.

† कायासंज्ञा ददौ शापं यमाय कुपिता यदा ।  
तदान्वेयमसौ बुद्धिरित्यासीदमसूर्ययोः ॥

‡ *Samádhi*.

§ This parenthesis, as usual, is supplied by the Translator.

|| See Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., Introduction, pp. xxxv., xxxvi., and p. 8, note a; also, Vol. II., Introduction, p. viii.

¶ See the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, Chapter LXXVII.



than that was inseparable.<sup>1</sup> The parts of the divine Vaishṇava splendour, residing in the sun, that were filed off by Viśwakarma, fell, blazing, down upon the earth; and the artist constructed of them the discus of Vishṇu, the trident of Śiva,\* the weapon<sup>2</sup> of the god of wealth,† the lance of Kārttikeya,‡ and the weapons of the other gods: all these Viśwakarma fabricated from the superfluous rays of the sun.<sup>3</sup>

The son of Ohháyá, who was called, also, a Manu, was denominated Sávārī,<sup>4</sup> § from being of the same caste (Savarīa) as his elder brother, (the Manu Vai-

<sup>1</sup> The Matsya says, he trimmed the Sun everywhere except in the feet, the extent of which he could not discern. Consequently, in pictures, or images, the feet of the Sun must never be delineated, under pain of leprosy, &c.

<sup>2</sup> The term is Śibiká, which properly means 'a litter'. The commentator calls it Astra, 'a weapon'. ||

<sup>3</sup> This legend is told, with some variations of no great importance, in the Matsya, Márkaṇḍeya, and Padma Purāṇas (Swarga Khaṇḍa), in the Bhāgavata, and Hari Vaiṣṇa, ¶ &c.

<sup>4</sup> The Márkaṇḍeya,\*\* whilst it admits Sávārī to be the son of the Sun, has a legend of his former birth, in the Swārochisha Manwantara, as Suratha Rāja, who became a Manu by having then propitiated Devī. It was to him that the Durgá Māhātmya †† or Chāndī, the popular narrative of Durgá's triumphs over various demons, was narrated.

\* Substituted, by the Translator, for Rudra.

† This is to translate Dhanada, one of the names of Kubera.

‡ The original has Guha.

§ Sávārīa is a variant.

|| So both the commentators call it.

¶ Chapter IX.

\*\* Chapter LXXXI.

†† Or *Devī-māhātmya*.

vaswata). He presides over the ensuing, or eighth, Manwantara,\* the particulars of which, and the following, I will now relate. In the period in which Sāvarnī shall be the Manu, the classes of the gods will be the Sutapas, Amitābhas, and Mukhyas; twenty-one† of each. The seven Rishis will be Dīptimat, Gālava, Rāma,‡ Kṛipa,§ Drauṇi,|| my son Vyāsa¶ (will be the sixth); and the seventh will be Rishyaśringa.<sup>1</sup> The Indra will be Bali, the sinless son of Virochana, who, through the favour of Yishṇu, is, actually, sovereign

---

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu has Jāmadagnya (or Paraśurāma), of the Kuśika race; Gālava, of that of Bhṛigu;\*\* Dwaipāyana (or Vyāsa), of the family of Vasishṭha; Kṛipa, the son of Śaradwat; Dīptimat, descended from Atri; Rishyaśringa, from Kaśyapa; and Aśwatthāman, the son of Droṇa, of the Bhāradwāja family. The Matsya and Padma have Satānanda, in place of Dīptimat.

---

\* Called Sāvarnīka or Sāvarnāka, in the Sanskrit.

† My MSS. say 'twenty'; since they read:

तेषां गणसु देवानामेकैको विंशकः स्मृतः ।

And both the commentaries observe: विंशकः । विंशतिसंख्याकः । The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, too, has twenty; and so the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXX., 5.

‡ Otherwise known as Paraśurāma.

§ Droṇa's brother-in-law.

|| I. e., son of Droṇa; namely, Aśwatthāman. See Book IV., Chapter XIX. Three of my MSS. have Droṇi, as has the printed *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXX., 4. This form sins against grammar.

¶ Distinguished as Bādarāyaṇa.

\*\* My MSS. here differ from the text, in reading:

कौशिकी गालवश्चैव जामदग्न्यश्च भार्गवः ।

That is to say, Gālava was a Kauśika, and Jāmadagnya, a Bhārgava. See pp. 14—16, note 1; and p. 16, note †, *supra*. Also see Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 380; and p. 418, note 1.

of part of Pátála.\* The royal progeny of Sávarñi will be Virajas, Arvarivat,† Nirmoha,‡ and others.§

The ninth Manu will be Daksha-sávarñi.<sup>1</sup>|| The Páras,¶ Maríchigarbhas, and Sudharmans will be the

<sup>1</sup> The four following Sávarñis are described, in the Váyu, as the mind-engendered sons of a daughter of Daksha, named either Suvratá (Váyu) or Priyá (Brahma), by himself and the three gods, Brahmá, Dharma, and Rudra, to whom he presented her on Mount Meru; whence they are called also Meru-sávarñis. They are termed Sávarñis, from their being of one family or caste:

यस्मात्सवर्णास्त्रेषां वै ब्रह्मादीनां कुमारकाः ।

सवर्णा मनवस्त्रेषां सवर्णत्वं च तेषु तत् ॥

According to the same authority, followed by the Hari Varṇa,\*\* it appears that this Manu is also called Rohita. Most of the details of this and the following Manwantaras are omitted in the Matsya, Brahma, Padma, and Márkaṇḍeya†† Purāṇas. The Bhāgavata‡‡ and Kúrma give the same as our text; and the Váyu, which agrees very nearly with it,§§ is followed, in most

\* विष्णुप्रसादादनघः पातालान्तरगोचरः ।

विरोचनसुतस्त्रेषां बलिरिन्द्रो भविष्यति ॥

† The "Arvarivas" of the former edition was an oversight. Variants which I find are Urvarivat, Urvaravat, and Arvariya.

‡ Two of my MSS. have Nirmoka; one, Nirmogha.

§ According to the Bhāgavata-purāṇa, VIII., XIII., 11, 12, the gods will be the Sutapas, Virajas, and Amṛitaprabhas; and among the sons of Sávarñi will be Nirmoka and Virajaska.

|| All my MSS. have Dakshasávarña. The ninth Manu will be son of Varuṇa, according to the Bhāgavata-purāṇa, VIII., XIII., 18.

¶ Three MSS. give Paras.

\*\* Śl. 468.

†† This Purāṇa should here be omitted, as it contains a full exhibition of the details referred to. See its chapters XCIV. and C.

‡‡ It will be seen, from my notes, that its agreement with our text is not of the closest.

§§ If my five MSS. are to be trusted, it deviates therefrom very widely. I have recorded only a few specimens of these deviations.

three classes of divinities; each consisting of twelve: their powerful chief will be the Indra Adbhuta. Savana, Dyutimat, Bhavya,\* Vasu, Medhādhṛiti,† Jyotishmat, and Satya will be the seven Rishis. Dhṛitaketu,‡ Dīptiketū,§ Panchahasta, Nirāmaya,|| Pṛithuśrava,¶ and others, will be the sons of the Manu.\*\*

In the tenth Manwantara, the Manu will be Brahmasāvarṇi:†† the gods will be the Sudhāmans, Viruddhas,‡‡ and Śatasankhyas: the Indra will be the mighty Śānti:§§

---

respects, by the Hari Varṇa. The Matsya and Padma are peculiar in their series and nomenclature of the Manus themselves: calling the ninth, Rauchya; tenth, Bhautya; eleventh, Meru-sāvarṇi, son of Brahmā; twelfth, Ritu; thirteenth, Rītadhāman; and fourteenth, Viśwakṣena. The Bhāgavata calls the two last Manus Deva-sāvarṇi and Indra-sāvarṇi.

---

\* Of three MSS. the reading is Havya; and one has Sahya.

† Professor Wilson had "Medhatithi", which I find nowhere. Two of my MSS. have Medhāmṛiti, a bad lection for what all the rest give, the name in the text.

‡ In a single MS. is Dhṛitiketū.

§ The former edition had "Dīptiketū", for which I find no authority. A plurality of my MSS. read, like the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as above; while five have Dīptaketū; and two, Dāsaketū.

|| It seems very likely that we here have *nirāmaya*, 'free from disease', as an epithet of Panchahasta. In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, it qualifies, in the plural, names preceding it.

¶ The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads Pṛithuśravas.

\*\* Of the sons of this Manu the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 18, names only Bhūtaketū and Dīptaketū.

†† He is called Brahmasāvarṇa, also, as in the original of the end of this paragraph:

ब्रह्मसावर्णपुत्रासु रक्षिष्यन्ति वसुंधराम् ।

He will be son of Upaśloka, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 21.

‡‡ One MS. gives Viśuddhas.

§§ Śāmbhu: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 22.

the Rishis will be Havishmat, Sukṛiti, Satya,\* Apām-mūrti, Nábhāga, Apratimaujas, and Satyaketu:† and the ten sons of the Manu will be Sukshetra, Uttamaujas, Harisheṇa,‡ and others.

In the eleventh Manwantara, the Manu will be Dharma-sāvarṇi:§ the principal classes of gods will be the Vihangamas, Kāmagamas,|| and Nirmānaratis,¶ each thirty in number;<sup>1</sup> of whom Vṛisha\*\* will be the Indra: the Rishis will be Nischara, Agnitejas, Vupushmat, Vishnu,†† Aruṇi,‡‡ Havishmat, and Anagha:§§

<sup>1</sup> Hence the Vāyu identifies || || the first with days; the second, with nights; and the third, with hours. ¶¶

\* Four of my MSS. have Sahya; and two others have corruptions of it.

† Saptaketu appears in three MSS.

‡ Four MSS. have Bhūrisheṇa; and this is the reading of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 21.

§ In the original we have the elongated form, Dharmasāvarṇika.

|| In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Kāmajas (or Vihangamas) and Manojavas.

¶ The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, by twice beginning a line with this word, proves that we are not to read Anirmānaratis, 'of measureless enjoyment'; for the original—which, by the by, in none of my MSS. has -निर्मान- might, otherwise, be taken to combine the names of the second and third classes of gods into a compound, thus:

विहंगमाः कामगमानिर्माणरतयस्तथा ।

Two copies have Nirvānaruchis, like the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 26.

\*\* Vaidhṛita: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 26.

†† One MS. has Vṛishṇi; one, Dhṛiti.

‡‡ Four MSS. exhibit Vāruṇi, the lection of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. The reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 26, is Aruṇa.

§§ Anaya, in three of my MSS.

||| I find a different adjustment of these identifications: but my MSS. differ, perhaps, from those used by Professor Wilson.

¶¶ *Muhūrta*.

the kings of the earth, and sons of the Manu, will be Sarvaga,\* Sarvadarman, Devánika, and others.

In the twelfth Manwantara, the son of Rudra, Sávarni,† will be the Manu: Ritadháman‡ will be the Indra: and the Haritas, Lohitas,§ Sumanasas, and Sukarmans|| will be the classes of gods, each comprising fifteen. Tapaswin, Sutapas, Tapomúrti, Taporati, Tapodhríti, Tapodyuti,¶ and Tapodhana will be the Rishis:\*\* and Devavat, Upadeva, Devaśreshtha, and others, will be the Manu's sons, and mighty monarchs (on the earth).

In the thirteenth Manwantara, the Manu will be Rauchya:†† the classes of gods, thirty-three in each,

\* The son of the Prajapati Ruchi (Váyu, &c.), by the nymph Mániní,‡‡ the daughter of the Apsaras Pramlochá (Márkaṇḍeya).

\* The "Savarga" of the former edition must have been a mere oversight. In two of my thirteen MSS., the name is Sarvatraga; that following being Sudharmátman. The *Váyu-purāṇa* has Sarvavega, followed by Sudharman.

According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 25, the eleventh Manu will engender Satyadharman and nine other sons.

† Sávarni, in my copies.

‡ "Ritadhāma", the name in the first edition, was simply a typographic error, I take it, as to its second syllable. One of my MSS. seems to have Kshatadhāman. Similarly as in all my MSS. but one, Ritadhāman is the reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 29.

§ A single MS. has, like the *Váyu-purāṇa*, Rohitas.

|| A fourth class of gods is here omitted. Ten of my MSS. call them Táras; one, Surúpas; one, Surápas; and one, Supáras. The *Váyu-purāṇa* seems to have Suparvas.

¶ This name is implied, not expressed in full; the original being:

तपोधृतिर्द्युतिश्चायः सप्तमस्तु तपोधनः ।

\*\* Of the Rishis under the twelfth Manu the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 29, names only Tapomúrti, Tapaswin, and Ágnidhraka.

†† Devasávarni: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 31.

‡‡ Mániní, in some MSS., as in the Calcutta edition, XCVIII., 5. It may be a Bengal corruption.

will be the Sutrāmans, \* Sukarmans, and Sudharmans; † their Indra will be Divaspati: the Rishis will be Nirmoha, ‡ Tattwadarśin, § Nishprakampa, Nirutsuka, Dhṛitimat, Avyaya, and Sutapas: and Chitrasena, Vichitra, and others, will be the kings.

In the fourteenth Manwantara, Bhautya || will be the Manu; <sup>1</sup> Śuchi, the Indra: the five classes of gods will be the Chákshushas, the Pavitras, Kanishthas, Bhrájiras, ¶ and Váchávriddhas: \*\* the seven Rishis †† will be Agnibáhu, ‡‡ Śuchi, Śukra, Mágadha, §§ Grídhra, |||

<sup>1</sup> Son of Kavi, by the goddess Bhúti, according to the Váyu; but the Márkaṇḍeya ¶¶ makes Bhúti the son of Angiras, whose pupil, Śánti, having suffered the holy fire to go out in his master's absence, prayed to Agni, and so propitiated him, that he not only relighted the flame, but desired Śánti to demand a further

\* For the "Sudhámans" of the former edition I find no warrant. Sutrāmans is the name in the *Váyu-purāṇa*. Two of my MSS. have Suśarmans.

† These are not recognized in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 32.

‡ One of my MSS. shows this name written over Nirmoka, the reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 32.

§ Tattwadarśa, the reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 32, occurs in a single copy.

|| Indrasávarhi: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 34.

¶ The *Váyu-purāṇa* has Bhájiras or Bhájaras.

\*\* This is the reading of the *Váyu-purāṇa*, likewise. "Vávriddhas" is in the old edition: but it looks like an inadvertence only. Two of my MSS. have Váchávriddhas.

†† They are said to be Agnibáhu, Śuchi, Śuddha, Mágadha, and others, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII., XIII., 35.

‡‡ Agniváyu is in one MS.

§§ In two of my MSS. is what looks like the meaningless name Mámádhā.

||| Such is the lection of two of my MSS.; while all the rest have Agnidhra,—as has the *Váyu-purāṇa*,—or corruptions thereof.

¶¶ Chapter XCIX.

Yukta,\* and Ajita:† and the sons of the Manu will be Uru,: Gabhíra,§ Bradhna,|| and others,¶ who will be kings, and will rule over the earth.<sup>1</sup>

At the end of every four ages\*\* there is a disappearance†† of the Vedas; and it is the province of the seven Rishis to come down upon earth, from heaven, to give them currency again.:: In every Kṛita age,

---

boon. Śānti accordingly solicited a son for his Guru; which son was Bhūti, the father of the Manu Bhautya.

<sup>1</sup> Although the Purāṇas which give an account of the Manwantaras agree in some of the principal details, yet, in the minor ones, they offer many varieties, some of which have been noticed. These chiefly regard the first six and the eighth. Except in a few individual peculiarities, the authorities seem to arrange themselves in two classes; one comprehending the Vishṇu, Vāyu, Kūrma, Bhāgavata, and Mārkaṇḍeya; and the other, the Matsya, Padma, Brahma, and Hari Vāmśa. The Mārkaṇḍeya, although it agrees precisely with the Vishṇu in its nomenclature, differs from it, and from all, in devoting a considerable number of its pages to legends of the origin of the Manus, all of which are, evidently, of comparatively recent invention, and several of which have been, no doubt, suggested by the etymology of the names of the Manus.

---



---

\* Two MSS. have Mukta.

† Arjita is the lection of two MSS.

‡ Ūru, in a single copy.

§ Six MSS. give the synonymous Gambhira.

|| One MS. has Budhna; one, Budhnya; one, Randhra.

¶ These sons, agreeably to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, VIII, XIII, 34, will be Urubuddhi, Gambhīrabuddhi, and others. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has, apparently, Ojaswin, Subala, and Bhautya.

\*\* Yuga.

†† Viplava.

:: Compare the *Mahābhārata*, Śānti-pārvan, śl. 7660, quoted and translated in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., p. 90.



the Manu (of the period) is the legislator or author\* of the body of law, the Smṛiti; the deities of the different classes receive the sacrifices during the Manwantaras to which they severally belong; and the sons of the Manu themselves, and their descendants, are the sovereigns of the earth for the whole of the same term. The Manu, the seven Rishis, the gods, the sons of the Manu, who are the kings, and Indra,† are the beings who preside over the world during each Manwantara.

An entire Kalpa,‡ O Brahman, is said to comprise a thousand ages,§ or fourteen Manwantaras;¹ and it is succeeded by a night of similar duration; during which he who wears the form of Brahmá, Janárdana, the substance of all things, the lord of all, and creator of all, involved in his own illusions, and having swallowed up the three spheres, sleeps upon the serpent Śesha, amidst the ocean.² Being, after that, awake, he, who

¹ A thousand ages of the gods and fourteen Manwantaras are not precisely the same thing, as has been already explained. (See Vol. I., p. 51, note 2.)

² The order of the text would imply, that, as Brahmá, he sleeps upon Śesha: but, if this be intended, it is at variance with the usual legend, that it is as Vishnú or Náráyaṇa that the deity sleeps in the intervals of dissolution. The commentator|| accordingly qualifies the phrase Brahmá-rúpadhara (ब्रह्मरूपधर) by

\* "Legislator or author" is to translate *prañetṛi*, 'promulgator'.

† Śakra, in the original.

‡ For the names of twenty-eight Kalpas, as enumerated in the *Váyu-purāṇa*, see Dr. Aufrecht's *Catalogus*, &c., pp. 51, 52.

§ To render *yuga*.

|| Rather, both the commentators.

is the universal soul, again creates all things, as they were before, in combination with the property of foulness (or activity): and, in a portion of his essence, associated with the property of goodness, he, as the Manns, the kings, the gods, and their Indras, as well as the seven Rishis, is the preserver of the world. In what manner Vishnu, who is characterized by the attribute of providence\* during the four ages, effected their preservation, I will next, Maitreya, explain.

In the Kṛita age, Vishnu, in the form of Kapila and other (inspired teachers), assiduous for the benefit of all creatures, imparts to them true wisdom. In the Tretā age, he restrains the wicked, in the form of a universal monarch,<sup>1</sup> and protects the three worlds. In the Dwāpara age, in the person of Veda-vyāsa, he divides the one Veda into four, and distributes it into innumerable† branches;‡ and, at the end of the Kali (or fourth age), he appears as Kalki, and reestablishes the iniquitous in the paths (of rectitude). In this man-

---

the term Divā (दिवा): 'Vishnu wears the form of Brahmā by day; by night, he sleeps on Śeṣha, in the person of Nārāyaṇa: 'रात्री श्रीनारायणरूपेण शेषाहौ \* शेते । This, however, may be suspected to be an innovation upon an older system; for, in speaking of the alternations of creation and dissolution, they are always considered as consentaneous with the day and night of Brahmā alone.

<sup>1</sup> As a Chakravartin.

---

\* *Sthiti*.

† Literally, 'hundreds of', *śata*.

‡ For a more literal rendering of this paragraph, down to this point, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., p. 20.

ner the universal spirit preserves, creates, and, at last, destroys, all the world.\*

Thus, Brahman, I have described to you the true nature of that great being who is all things, and besides whom there is no other existent thing, nor has there been, nor will there be, either here or elsewhere. I have, also, enumerated to you the Manwantaras, and those who preside over them. What else do you wish to hear?

\* एवमेतज्जगत्सर्वं परिपाति करोति च ।

हन्ति चान्तेऽप्यनन्तात्मा नास्त्यस्माद्व्यतिरेकि यत् ॥

### CHAPTER III.

Division of the Veda into four portions, by a Vyása, in every Dwápara age. List of the twenty-eight Vyásas of the present Manwantara. Meaning of the word Bráhma.

MAITREYA.—I have learned from you, in due order, how this world is Vishnú, (how it is) in Vishnú, (how it is) from Vishnú: nothing further is to be known. But I should desire to hear how the Vedas were divided, in different ages,\* by that great being, in the form of Veda-vyása; who were the Vyásas of their respective eras; and what were the branches into which the Vedas were distributed.

PARÁŚARA.—The branches of the (great) tree of the Vedas are so numerous,† Maitreya, that it is impossible to describe them at length. I will give you a summary account of them.

In every Dwápara (or third) age, Vishnú, in the person of Vyása, in order to promote the good of mankind, divides the Veda, which is (properly, but) one, into many portions. Observing the limited perseverance, energy, and application of mortals, he makes the Veda fourfold, to adapt it to their capacities; and the bodily form which he assumes, in order to effect that classification, is known by the name of Veda-vyása.‡ Of the different Vyásas in the

\* *Yuga*, rendered by "eras", just below.

† Literally, 'by thousands', *sahasraśāñ*.

‡ वीर्यं तेजो बलं चालं मनुष्याणामवेक्ष्य वै ।  
हिताय सर्वभूतानां वेदभेदान्करोति सः ।

present Manwantara,<sup>1</sup> and the branches which they have taught, you shall have an account.

Twenty-eight times have the Vedas been arranged, by the great Rishis, in the Vaivaswata Manwantara in the Dwápara age;\* and, consequently, eight and twenty Vyásas have passed away; by whom, in their respective periods, the Veda has been divided into four. In the first Dwápara age, the distribution was made by Swayambhú (Brahmá) himself; in the second, the arranger of the Veda (Veda-vyása) was Prajápati (or Manu); in the third, Uśanas; in the fourth, Bṛihaspati; in the fifth, Savitrī; in the sixth, Mṛityu (Death, or Yama); in the seventh, Indra; in the eighth, Vasishtha; in the ninth, Sáraswata; in the tenth, Tridhāman; in the eleventh, Trivṛishan;† (in the twelfth), Bharadvāja;‡ in the thirteenth, Antariksha; in the fourteenth, Vapṛivan;§ in the fifteenth, Trayyāruṇa;||

<sup>1</sup> The text has: 'Hear, from me, an account of the Vyásas of the different Manwantaras':

यस्मिन्नन्वन्तरे ये ये व्यासास्तास्तान्निबोध मे ।

But this is inconsistent with what follows, in which the enumeration is confined to the Vaivaswata Manwantara.

<sup>2</sup> This name occurs as that of one of the kings of the solar

यथा स कुरुते तन्वा वेदमेकं पृथक्प्रभुः ।

वेदव्यासाभिधाना तु सा मूर्तिर्मधुविद्विषः ।

Vishnu is here called "the enemy of Madhu."

\* A more exact translation of Parāśara's reply, breaking off here, will be found in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 20, 21.

† Three MSS. have Trivisha; and so has the *Kṛma-purāṇa*.

‡ I find Bhāradwāja in six MSS.; and this lection seems best, as the nineteenth Vyása is called Bharadvāja.

§ So read seven of my MSS.; while two give Vamṛivan, and others, Vajrivan, Vyāghrivan, Vapovan, &c. &c. Professor Wilson's "Vapra", now discarded, I have nowhere met with.

|| Trayyāruṇi, in two MSS. Is the name Traiyāruṇa, or Traijāruṇi?

in the sixteenth, Dhananjaya; in the seventeenth, Kṛit-anjaya; in the eighteenth, Rīñajya;\* (in the nineteenth), Bharadwāja;† (in the twentieth), Gautama;‡ in the twenty-first, Uttama, also called Haryátman; (in the twenty-second), Vena,§ who is likewise named Rājaśravas;|| (in the twenty-third), Saumaśushmāyaña,¶ also Trīñabindu;\*\* (in the twenty-fourth), Riksha,†† the descendant of Bhṛigu, who is known also by the name Vālmiki; (in the twenty-fifth), my father, Śakti,‡‡

dynasty, and is included, by Mr. Colebrooke, amongst the per-

\* The Translator has "Rīñā", for which my MSS. furnish no warrant. Six of them exhibit Rīñajya; two, this, with Rīñadya written over; three, Kṛitiu; others, Rīñavya and Rīñin.

† A single MS. has Bhāradwāja. See note ‡ in the last page.

‡ Substituted for Professor Wilson's "Gotama", which none of my MSS. countenances.

§ Exchanged for "Veña", which is in but one of my MSS.

|| Almost as common a reading is Rājaśravas: and one of my MSS. gives Vājaśravas; another, Vājaśrava. Again, three of them, including those accompanied by commentary B, have, instead of राजस्रवाक्षु यः, वाजय्रवान्वयः, "of the line of Vājaśrava."

¶ Eight MSS. have Somaśushmāyaña; two, Somaśushmāpaña; others, Somayushmāyana, Somoyushmāpana, and Somaśushmāñaya. The Translator put "Somaśushmāpaña". My conjectural Saumaśushmāyaña would be descendant of Somaśushma, mentioned in the Śatapatha-brāhmaṇa, XI., IV., 5, and elsewhere.

That the *Kūrma-purāṇa* was compiled after our Purāṇa had become corrupted, as to the name in question, might be inferred from my MSS., which read:

राजय्रवाक्षैकविंशत्संस्मृत्युत्पत्तयः परः ।

\*\* According to the *Kūrma-purāṇa*, Trīñabindu was the twenty-third Vyāsa, Ūshmapāña being the twenty-second. See note § in the next page.

†† In one MS., Rikshya; in another, Daksha.

‡‡ Three MSS. have Śakti. In Vol. I., p. 8, the Translator, after speaking, in a note, of "Śakti, the son of Vasishtha," and father of Parāśara, calls him "Śakti or Śakti;" touching the first of which, Śakti, I there hastily observe: "This is hardly the name of a male. The right

was the Vyása; I (was the Vyása of the twenty-sixth Dwápara), and was succeeded by Játúkarña;\* the Vyása (of the twenty-eighth), who followed him, was Kṛishṇa Dwaipáyana. These are the twenty-eight elder Vyásas, by whom, in the preceding Dwápara ages, the Veda has been divided into four. In the next Dwápara, Draṇi (the son of Droṇa) will be the Vyása, when my son, the Muni Kṛishṇa Dwaipáyana, who is the actual Vyása, shall cease to be (in that character).<sup>1</sup>

sons of royal descent who are mentioned as authors of hymns in the *R̥ig-veda*.† Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 333.‡

<sup>1</sup> A similar list of Vyásas is given in the *Kúrma*§ and *Vá-*

word seems to be Śakti." On this observation Dr. Kern, in his meritorious edition of the *Bṛihat-saṃhitá*, Preface, p. 31, comments in these words: "F. E. Hall remarks that Śakti is 'hardly the name of a male.' As if a male were intended! Śakti is the heavenly power of Indra-Agni." Assuredly, a male is intended; and Śaktiputra, as Parásara is called in the *Mahābhārata*, is not to be rendered, as by Dr. Kern, "the son of strength",—but "son of Śakti,"—unless we consent to regard the attribute of strength as offspring of Vasishṭha. For Parásara, as son of Śakti, and grandson of Vasishṭha, see the *Anukramaniká* to the *R̥igveda*, on I., LXV., &c. &c. And the *R̥igveda* itself—VII., XVIII., 21—makes mention of Parásara, no less than of Vasishṭha, as if he were anything but a myth. Further, Śakti, as "the heavenly power of Indra-Agni," is, so far as I am at present informed, altogether a novelty.

\* This is the reading of eleven of my MSS.; and the other two have Játúkarña, which seems to be the lection of the *Váyu-purāṇa*. Hence I have displaced Professor Wilson's "Jaratkárū."

† See the *Anukramaniká* to the *R̥igveda*, on V., XXVII., and IX., CX. The Vaidik form of the name is Tryarṇa.

‡ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 23.

§ The list stands there as follows:

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. Swáyambhuva. | 4. Bṛihaspati. |
| 2. Prajāpati.   | 5. Savitṛi.    |
| 3. Uśanas.      | 6. Mṛityu.     |

The syllable Om is defined to be the eternal monosyllabic Brahma.<sup>1</sup> The word Brahma is derived from

yu\* Purāṇas. Many of the individuals appear as authors of different hymns and prayers in the Vedas; and it is very possible that the greater portion, if not all of them, had a real existence; being the framers, or teachers, of the religion of the Hindus, before a complete ritual was compiled.

<sup>1</sup> We have already had occasion to explain the sanctity of this monosyllable (see Vol. I., p. 1, note 1), which ordinarily commences different portions of the Vedas, and which, as the text describes it, is identified with the supreme, undefinable deity, or Brahma. So, in the Bhagavad-gītā:†

ओमित्येकाक्षरं ब्रह्म व्याहरन्मामनुस्मरन् । ‡

‘Repeating Om, the monosyllable, which is Brahma, and calling me to mind;’ which is not exactly the same idea that is conveyed by Schlegel’s version, § ‘Monosyllabum mysticum OM pronuntiando numen adorans, mei memor;’ where ‘numen ado-

7. Indra.	18. Āritanjaya.
8. Vasishṭha.	19. Bharadvāja.
9. Sāraswata.	20. Gautama.
10. Tridhāman.	21. Rājasaṛavas.
11. Trivṛṣha.	22. Ūshmāpaṇa.
12. Satatejas.	23. Tīrṇabindu.
13. Dharma.	24. Vālmiki.
14. Taraksha.	25. Śakti.
15. Triyāruṇi. (Traiyāruṇi?)	26. Parāsara.
16. Dhananjaya.	27. Jātūkarāa.
17. Kṛitanjaya.	28. Kṛishṇadwaipāyana.

None of these sages, it is observable, has more than one appellation. Noteworthy variants, in my MSS., are: Āruṇi, for Triyāruṇi; Ūshmānaya, for Ūshmāpaṇa. It is probable, that we should substitute, for Taraksha, Suraksha, which appears to be the reading of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

\* See Dr. Aufrecht’s *Catalogus Cod. Manuscript., &c.*, pp. 52, 53.

† VIII., 13.

‡ This passage is referred to in the commentary.

§ P. 156 of the first edition; p. 68 of the second.



the root *Brīh* (to increase); because it is infinite (spirit), and because it is the cause by which the Vedas (and all things) are developed.\* Glory to Brahma, who is addressed by that mystic word, associated eternally with the triple universe,<sup>1</sup> and who is one with the four Vedas! Glory to Brahma, who, alike in the destruction and renovation of the world, is called the great and mysterious cause of the intellectual principle (*Mahat*); who is without limit in time or space, and exempt from diminution or decay; in whom (as connected with the property of darkness) originates

rans', although it may be defended as necessary to the sense, is not expressed by the words of the text, nor compatible with Hindu notions. In one of the MSS. employed, the transcriber has, evidently, been afraid of desecrating this sacred monosyllable, and has, therefore, altered the text, writing it

ध्रुवमेकाचरं ब्रह्म द्वापराद्दे व्यवस्थितम् ।

instead of

ध्रुवमेकाचरं ब्रह्म ओमितिवं व्यवस्थितम् ।

<sup>1</sup> The daily prayers of the Brahman commence with the formula, *Om̐ bhūr bhuvah̐ swar̐*: 'Om, earth, sky, heaven.' These are the three mystical terms called *Vyāhṛitis*, and are scarcely of less sanctity than the *Praṇava* itself. Their efficacy, and the order of their repetition, preceding the *Gāyatri*, are fully detailed in *Manu*, II., 76—81. In the *Mitāksharā*† they are directed to be twice repeated mentally, with *Om* prefixed to each; *Om̐ bhūh̐*, *Om̐ bhuvah̐*, *Om̐ swar̐*; the breath being suppressed by closing the lips and nostrils: ओं भूः ओं भुवः ओं स्वरिति त्रीन्वारान्मुख-नासिकासंचारिणं वायुनिश्च्यवनसा जपेत् ।

\* बृहत्त्वावृंहणत्वाच्च तद्वृह्मेत्यभिधीयते ।

*Brahmā* and *Brahma* are similarly etymologized in the *Vāyu-purāṇa* and *Linga-purāṇa*, respectively. See Vol. I., p. 30, note \*.

† Commenting on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 23.

worldly illusion; and in whom resides the end of soul (fruition or liberation), through the properties of light and of activity (or goodness and foulness)! He is the refuge of those who are versed in the Sāṅkhya philosophy; of those who have acquired control over their thoughts and passions. He is the invisible, imperishable Brahma; varying in form, invariable in substance; the chief principle, self-engendered; who is said to illuminate the caverns of the heart; who is indivisible, radiant, undecaying, multiform. To that supreme Brahma be, for ever, adoration.

That form of Vāsudeva, who is the same with supreme spirit, which is Brahma, and which, although diversified as threefold, is identical, is the lord who is conceived, by those that contemplate variety in creation, to be distinct in all creatures. He, composed of the Rīg-, Sāma-, and Yajur-Vedas, is, at the same time, their essence, as he is the soul of all embodied spirits. He, distinguished as consisting of the Vedas, creates the Vedas, and divides them, by many subdivisions, into branches: he is the author\* of those branches: he is those aggregated branches: for he, the eternal lord, is the essence of true knowledge.<sup>1†</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The form or sensible type of Vāsudeva is here considered to be the monosyllable Om, and which is one with the three mystical words, Bhūh, Bhuvah, Swar, and with the Vedas. Consequently, the Vyāhritis and the Vedas are, also, forms of Vāsudeva; diversified as to their typical character, but, essentially, one and the same.

---

\* *Prañetā*, 'promulgator.'

† For another rendering of the Sanskrit of the latter half of this paragraph, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 11, 12.

## CHAPTER IV.

Division of the Veda, in the last Dwápara age, by the Vyása Kṛishná Dwaipáyana. Paila made reader of the Řich; Vaiśampáyana, of the Yajus; Jaimini, of the Sáman; and Sumantu, of the Atharvan. Sûta appointed to teach the historical poems. Origin of the four parts of the Veda. Sañhitás of the Řig-veda.

PARÁŚARA.—The original Veda, in four parts,\* consisted of one hundred thousand (stanzas); and from it sacrifice of ten kinds,<sup>1</sup> the accomplisher of all desires (proceeded). In the twenty-eighth Dwápara†

<sup>1</sup> According to the Gṛihya portion of the Sáma-veda, there are five great sacrificial ceremonies: 1. Agnihotra, burnt-offerings, or libations of clarified butter on sacred fire; 2. Darśapaurñamása, sacrifices at new and full moon; 3. Cháturmásya, sacrifices every four months; 4. Paśuyajna or Aśwamedha, sacrifice of a horse or animal; and, 5. Soma-yajna, offerings and libations of the juice of the acid asclepias. These, again, are either Prákṛita, 'simple', or Vaikṛita, 'modified',‡ and, being thus doubled, constitute ten.§

\* Chatushpáda.

† In the original, *antara*, i. e., Manwantara.

‡ Rather, 'normal' and 'supplemental'.

§ The commentary says: यज्ञः \* \* अग्निहोचदर्शपूर्णमासचातुर्मास्यपशुसोमा इति पञ्चविधः । स एव प्रकृतिविकृतिभेनेन दशविध इति । यद्वा गृह्योक्तेः पञ्चयज्ञैः सह दसविधत्वम् । Five sacrifices—but not said to belong to the *Sámaveda* ceremonial—are, thus, named, but not defined. The *paśu* of this nomenclature is, more usually, called *paśubandha* or *nirúdhapaśubandha*. It is not to be confounded with the *aśwamedha*. To the five sacrifices in question, remarks the commentator, if we add the five mentioned in the *Gṛihya*, the ten of the text are completed. These five others—the *maháyajnas* of the *Sámaveda* ritual—are said, in Áśaditya's *Karmayradīpabhāṣya*, to be the *bhūtayajna*, *manuṣhyayajna*, *pitṛiyajna*, *devayajna*, and *brahmayajna*. They are referred to in Chapter IX. of this Book. For the sacrifices generally, see Chapter XI., where I revert to this note.

age, my son Vyása separated the four portions of the Veda into four (Vedas). In the same manner as the Vedas were arranged by him, as Veda-vyása, so were they divided, (in former periods), by all the (preceding) Vyásas, and by myself; and the branches into which they were subdivided by him were the same into which they had been distributed in every aggregate of the four ages.\* Know, Maitreya, the Vyása called Kṛishná Dwaipáyana to be the deity† Náráyāṇa: for who else on this earth could have composed the Mahábhárata?¹ Into what portions the Vedas were arranged by my magnanimous son, in the Dwápara age, you shall hear.

When Vyása was enjoined, by Brahmá, to arrange the Vedas in different books, he took four persons, well read in those works, as his disciples. He appointed Paila reader of the Ríg-;² Vaisampáyana, of

¹ The composition of the Mahábhárata is always ascribed to the Vyása named Kṛishná Dwaipáyana, the contemporary of the events there described. The allusion in the text establishes the priority of the poem to the Vishnú Puráṇa.

² Or, rather, 'he took Paila as teacher.' The expression is: Rígvedaśrávakaṁ Pailaṁ jagráha sa mahámuniḥ:

ऋग्वेदश्रावकं पेलं जग्राह स महामुनिः ।

Śrávaka means, properly, 'he who causes to hear,' 'a lecturer,' 'a preacher;' although, as in the case of its applicability to the laity of the Buddhists and Jains, it denotes a disciple. The commentator, however, observes, that the text is sometimes read ऋग्वेदपारगं,³ 'one who had gone through the Ríg-veda.'

\* Yuga.

† Prahu.

³ But the more ordinary reading is the one found in the *Váyu-puráṇa*, from which work our text seems to be taken, largely, hereabouts.

the Yajur-; and 'Jaimini, of the Sāma-veda: and Sumantu, who was conversant with the Atharva-veda,\* was also the disciple of the learned Vyāsa. He also took Sūta, who was named Lomaharshaṇa,† as his pupil in historical and legendary traditions.<sup>1</sup>;

---

So, in the preceding verse, it is said: 'He took four persons, well read in the Vedas, as his disciples:'

अथ शिष्यान्स जयाह चतुरो वेदपारगान् ।

And again it is said: 'Sumantu, conversant with the Atharva-veda, was his disciple:'

\* \* \* \* \* तथैवाथर्ववेदवित् ।

सुसन्तुस्तस्य शिष्योऽभूद्वेदव्यासस्य धीमतः ॥

It is clear, therefore, that the Vedas were known, as distinct works, before Kṛishṇa Dwaipāyana; and it is difficult to understand how he earned his title of arranger, or Vyāsa. At any rate, in undertaking to give order to the prayers and hymns of which the Vedas consist, Paila and the others were rather his coadjutors than disciples; and it seems probable, that the tradition records the first establishment of a school, of which the Vyāsa was the head, and the other persons named were the teachers.

<sup>1</sup> The Itihāsa and Purāṇas; understanding, by the former, legendary and traditional narratives. It is usually supposed, that, by the Itihāsa, the Mahābhārata is especially meant. But, although this poem is ascribed to Kṛishṇa Dwaipāyana, the recitation of it is not attributed to his pupil, Romaharshaṇa or Lomaharshaṇa:

---

\* The *Saṁhitās* thus disposed of are said, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 52, 53, to be called, respectively, the Bahvrīchā, the Nigada, the Chhandoga, and the Atharvāṅgirasi.

This statement occurs in the passage referred to in Vol. I., Preface, p. XLIV.

† All my MSS. have Romaharshaṇa. Also see p. 64, 65, *infra*.

‡ This chapter, thus far, will be found retranslated in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 21, 22.

There was but one Yajur-veda; but, dividing this into four parts, Vyása instituted the sacrificial rite that is administered by four kinds of priests: in which it was the duty of the Adhwaryu to recite the prayers (Yajusas,—or direct the ceremony); of the Hotrí, to repeat the hymns (Ríchas); of the Udgátří, to chant other hymns (Sámans); and, of the Brahman, to pronounce the formulæ called Atharvans. Then the Muni, having collected together the hymns called Ríchas, compiled the Ríg-veda; with the prayers and directions termed Yajusas he formed the Yajur-veda; with those called Sámans, the Sâma-veda; and with the Atharvans he composed the rules of all the ceremonies suited to kings, and the function of the Brahman agreeably to practice.<sup>1\*</sup>

---

it was first narrated by Vaiśampáyana, and, after him, by Sauti, the son of Lomaharshaña.

<sup>1</sup> From this account, which is repeated in the Váyu Puráña, it appears, that the original Veda was the Yajus, or, in other words, was a miscellaneous body of precepts, formulæ, prayers, and hymns, for sacrificial ceremonies; Yajus being derived, by the grammarians, from Yuj (यज्), 'to worship.' The derivation of the Váyu Puráña, however, is from Yuj, 'to join,' 'to employ;' the formulæ being those especially applied to sacrificial rite, or set apart, for that purpose, from the general collection:

यच्छिष्टं च यजुर्वेदे तेन यज्ञमथायुजत् ।

युञ्जानः स यजुर्वेद इति शास्त्रविनिश्चयः ॥

Again:

प्रयुज्यते ह्यश्वमेधस्तेन वा युज्यते तु सः ।

The commentator on the text, however, citing the former of these

---

\* *Yathú-sthiti*, 'according to a fixed rule.'

This vast original tree of the Vedas, having been divided, by him, into four principal stems, soon branched out into an extensive forest. In the first place, Paila divided the Ṛig-veda, and gave the two Saṁhitās (or collections of hymns) to Indrapramati\* and to Bāshkali.† Bāshkali‡ subdivided his Saṁhitā into four, which he gave to his disciples,§ Baudhya,

passages from the Vāyu, reads it:

याजनाद्धि यजुर्वेद इति शास्त्रस्य निश्चयः ।

confining the derivation to Yaj, 'to worship.' The concluding passage, relating to the Atharvan, refers, in regard to regal ceremonies, to those of expiation, Śānti, &c. The function of the Brahman (ब्रह्मत्वं \* यथास्थिति) is not explained; but, from the preceding specification of the four orders of priests who repeat, at sacrifices, portions of the several Vedas, it relates to the office of the one that is termed, specifically, the Brahman. So the Vāyu has

ब्रह्मत्वमकारोयच्चे वेदेनाथर्वणेन तु ।

'He constituted the function of the Brahman at sacrifices, with the Atharva-veda.

<sup>1</sup> Both in our text, and in that of the Vāyu, this name occurs both Bāshkala and Bāshkali. Mr. Colebrooke writes it Bāhkala and Bāhkali. || Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 374. ¶

\* Two of my MSS. have, here and below, Indrapramiti, a reading of no value.

† My MSS. all here give Bāshkala. But see p. 49, note §, *infra*.

‡ Two MSS. here have Bāshkala.

§ They are called, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Bodhya, Agnināvāra—in three MSS., by corruption, perhaps, of the Agnimāthara of two others,—Pārāśara, and Yājñavalkya. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI, 55, has Bodhya, Yājñavalkya, Pārāśara, and Agnimitra.

|| Strictly, Bāhkala and Bāhkali, as translettering the ungrammatical mislections वाःकल and वाःकलि.

¶ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 14.

Agnimáthara,\* Yájuavalkya,† and Parásara; and they taught these secondary shoots from the primitive branch. Indrapramati imparted his Saúhitá to his son Máúdukeya;‡ and it thence descended through successive generations, as well as disciples.¹§ Vedamitra, (called also) Śákalya,|| studied the same Saúhitá; but he divided it into five Saúhitás, which he distributed amongst as many disciples, named, severally, Mudgala,

¹ The Váyu supplies the detail. Máúdukeya, or, as one copy writes, Márkaṇḍeya,¶ taught the Saúhitá to his son Satyasra-vas; he, to his son Satyabita; and he, to his son Satyaśrí. The latter had three pupils: Śákalya, also called Devamitra\*\* (sic in MS.); Rathántara;†† and another Báshkali, called also Bháradwája. The Váyu has a legend of Śákalya's death, in consequence of his being defeated, by Yájuavalkya, in a disputation at a sacrifice celebrated by Janaka.

\* Agnimáchara, the lection of two MSS., and Agnimátura, that of one, scarcely deserve noting.

† Professor Wilson had "Yajuawalka".

‡ The Translator put "Maúdukeya", as the name is written in five of my thirteen MSS. See III., §, of the *Prátisákhya* of the *Rigveda*, edited by M. Regnier.

§ तस्य शिष्यप्रशिष्येभ्यः पुत्रशिष्यात्कुमादयौ ।

|| According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 57, as explained by Śrīdhara, Śákalya was son of Máúdukeya.

¶ This is the reading of all the copies of the *Váyu-purāṇa* known to me.

\*\* And so reads the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 56.

As the *Vishnu-purāṇa* gives वेदमित्रस्तु शाकल्यः, so the *Váyu-purāṇa* gives देवमित्रस्तु शाकल्यः; and we here have, probably, only an epithet of Śákalya, or, at most, his secondary appellation.

†† See note †† in the next page.



Gokhalu,\* Vātsya,† Śāliya, and Śīśira.<sup>1</sup> Śākapūrñi: made a different§ division of the original Saṁhitā into three portions, and added a glossary (Nirukta), constituting a fourth.<sup>2</sup> The three Saṁhitās

<sup>1</sup> These names, in the Vāyu, are Mudgala, Golaka, Khāliya,|| Mātsya, ¶ Śaiśireya.

<sup>2</sup> The commentator, who is here followed by Mr. Colebrooke, states, that he was a pupil of Indrapramati; but, from the Vāyu, it appears, that Śākapūrñi was another name of Rathāntara, the pupil of Satyaśri, the author of three Saṁhitās and a Nirukta (or glossary); whence Mr. Colebrooke supposes him the same with Yāska. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 375.\*\* It is highly probable, that the text of the Vāyu may be made to correct that of the Vishṇu, in this place, which is inaccurate, notwithstanding the copies agree. They read:

संहिताचितयं चक्रे शाकपूष्णिरथेतर्म् †† ।  
निरुक्तमकरोत्तद्वस्तुर्थं मुनिसत्तम ॥

\* Probably it was from being misled by a smudged ख, that Professor Wilson deciphered "Goswala", which I have corrected. Five of my MSS. have the word in the text; two corrupt it into Gokhala; one, into Yokhalu; and four give Gomukha; one, Gālava. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 57, has Gokhalya. See, further, Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 135, note 2, and p. 368, note 6.

† A single MS. has Śankha.

‡ Thus in four of my MSS., while the other nine have Śākapūrñi.

Professor Max Müller—*Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 153, note—asserts, that "there can be no doubt that Śākapūrñi is the same name as Śākapūrñi." The former has much the air of being a corruption of the latter, due to popular etymology. The MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* almost everywhere have Śākapūrñi; and so has Yāska.

§ See note †† in this page.

|| Two MSS. have Khāliya; others, Khālāya, Khalāya, and Swāloya.

¶ All my MSS. give Matsya.

\*\* Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 15.

Professor Roth—*Nirukta*, p. 222—points out, that Śākapūrñi is quoted by Yāska. The former cannot, therefore, be identical with the latter.

†† The bulk of MSS. at my disposal read शाकपूष्णिरथेतर्म्; and the

were given to his three pupils, Krauncha, Vaitálaki,\*

Here, Śākapūrii atla-itaram is the necessary construction; but quere, if it should not be Śākapūrii Rathāntaraḥ. The parallel passage in the Vāyu is:

प्रोवाच संहितास्त्रिः शाकपूर्णिरथान्तरः†।

निरुक्तं च पुनश्चक्रे चतुर्थे द्विसत्तमाः ॥

Now, in describing the pupils of Satyaśri, Rathāntara was named clearly enough:

शाकल्यः प्रथमस्तेषां तस्मादन्यो रथान्तरः‡।

वाष्कलिश्च भारद्वाज इति शाखाप्रवर्तकाः ॥§

In another passage it would seem to be implied, that this Bāshkali was the author of the Sāñhitās; and Rathāntara, of the Nirukta only:

वाष्कलिश्च भारद्वाजस्त्रिः प्रोवाच संहिताः।

रथान्तरो ॥ निरुक्तं च पुनश्चक्रे चतुर्थकम् ॥

resulting sense is: "Now, another, Śākapūrii, made a triad of *Sañhitās*, and made, likewise, a glossary, for a fourth *work*." The fact that the forementioned lection, with its awkwardly introduced 'now, another,' is the more ordinary one, lends considerable support to Professor Wilson's suggestion, that the text is here depraved.

\* Bad readings are: Vaitálaki, Vaitáliki, Táluki, and Paitálaki; each in one manuscript.

† All my MSS. here give रथीतरः. One of Professor Wilson's has शाकपूर्णिरथन्तरः (*sic*).

‡ Such is, here, the prevailing lection: but रथीतरः occurs, also.

§ In the original, this passage precedes that quoted just above.

॥ रथीतरः is the reading here, in all my five MSS., and so in every one of Professor Wilson's.

Rathāntara is, without question, corrupted from Rathitara. As शाकपूर्णिरथीतरः, the reading of every one of my MSS.,—see note †, above—is an all but impossible compound name, and as the person intended is called, elsewhere in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Rathitara simply, we must read शाकपूर्णी रथीतरः, 'Śākapūrii, that is to say, Rathitara.' Śākapūrii thus comes out a patronymic of Śākapūrii,—a fact hitherto unnoticed, I believe. See Pāṇini, IV., I, 95. In two of the three passages adduced, above,

and Balāka;\* and a fourth, (thence named) Nirukta-

However this may be, his being the author of the Nirukta identifies him with Śākapūrāṇi, and makes it likely, that the two names should come in juxtaposition, in our text, as well as in the Vāyu. It must be admitted, however, that there are some rather inexplicable repetitions in the part of the Vāyu where this account occurs, although two copies agree in the reading. That a portion of the Vedas goes by the name of Rathantara† we have seen (Vol. I., p. 84); but, as far as is yet known, the name is confined to different prayers or hymns of the Ūhya Gāna of the Sāma-veda. The text of the Vishṇu also admits of a different explanation regarding the work of Śākapūrāṇi; and, instead of a threefold division of the original, the passage may mean, that he composed a third Saṁhitā.‡ So Mr. Colebrooke says: "the *Vishṇu purāṇa* omits them [the Śākhās of Āśwalāyana

from the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, we find, similarly, mention of 'Bāshkali, Bhāradwāja', i. e., sprung from Bharadwāja.

We are, then, to understand, that one and the same person is referred to in the *Bṛihaddevatā*, where it speaks of Śākapūrāṇi and of Rathantara. See *Indische Studien*, Vol. I., p. 105.

Of the exceedingly rare work just named there is a MS. in the Bodleian Library, wittingly misrepresented, in Dr. Aufrecht's Catalogue, as the gift of Mr. William Walker.

\* Instead of this, the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 58, says, that Jātikarīya, disciple of Śākalya, digested a *Saṁhitā* and a *Nirukta*, and gave them to his disciples, Balāka, Paija, Vaitāla, and Virāja. The commentator explains that he divided his *Saṁhitā* into three.

One Jātikarīya succeeded, as a teacher, Yaska. *Bṛihad-drahyaka Upanishad*, II., VI., 3; IV., VI., 3.

† For the passage so called, see Vol. II., p. 343; supplementary note on p. 295, l. 9, *ibid.*

‡ *संहितात्रितयं*, the reading of all my MSS., and also, apparently, of all seen by the Translator, can mean, in good Sanskrit, only 'three *Saṁhitās*',—not 'third *Saṁhitā*'. It would be interesting to know whether Colebrooke was acquainted with a different lection; as he very rarely trips in a matter of grammar. See Pāṇini, V., II., 43.

kṛit, had the glossary.<sup>1\*</sup> In this way branch sprang from branch.† Another: Bāshkali<sup>2</sup> § composed three

and Śānkhāyana], and intimates, that Śākapūrṇi, a pupil of Indrapramati, gave the third varied edition from this teacher.”|| The Vāyu, however, is clear in ascribing three Saṁhitās, or Śākhās, to Śākapūrṇi.

<sup>1</sup> In the Vāyu, the four pupils of Śākapūrṇi are called Kena, ¶ Dālaki, \*\* Śatabalāka, and Naigama.

<sup>2</sup> This Bāshkali may either be, according to the commentator, †† the pupil of Paila,—who, in addition to the four Saṁhi-

\* कौशो वैतालकिसद्वलाक्य महामतिः ।

निरुक्तश्चतुर्थोऽभूदेवेदाङ्गपारगः ।

As the commentary observes, some MSS. begin the second line of this stanza with चतुर्थो निरुक्तश्च ।

† इत्येताः प्रतिशाखाभ्योऽप्यनुशाखा द्विजोत्तम ।

‡ The original, unsupplemented by the commentary, does not discriminate this Bāshkali from the one before mentioned:

वाष्कलिश्चापरास्त्रिः संहिताः कृतवान्द्विज ।

See note †† in this page.

§ We read, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 59:

वाष्कलिः प्रतिशाखाभ्यो वालखिल्याख्यसंहिताम् ।

चक्रे वालायनिर्भज्यः काशारश्चैव तां दधुः ॥

Bāshkala had before been mentioned; and the Bāshkali here spoken of is said, by Śrīdhara, to have been his son: वाष्कलिः । पूर्वोक्तस्य वालखिल्य पुत्रः । It is stated, in this stanza, that Bāshkali compiled a *Saṁhitā*, called *Vāḷakhilyā*, from all the aforesaid *Śākhās*; and that Bālayani (*sic*), Bhajya, and Kāśāra accepted it,—or read it, according to the commentator's gloss on दधुः, namely, तामादधुः । अधीतवन्तः ।

|| *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 15.

¶ Two MSS. have Kaijava.

\*\* One MS. has Dwalāki; and two, Vāmana. Two, again, seem to intend Uddālaki. Uddālaka, son of Aruṇa, is a well-known Vaidik personage.

†† The commentary remarks: वाष्कलिः पिलशिष्यः । चतस्रः संहिताश्च इत्युक्तम् । स एवान्यास्त्रिः संहिताः कृतवान् । अपर एव

other *Saṁhitās*, which he taught to his disciples, Kā-lāyani, Gārgya,\* and Kathājava.<sup>†</sup> These are they by whom the principal divisions of the *Īch* have been promulgated.<sup>‡</sup>

tās previously noticed, compiled three others; or he may be another Bāshkali, a fellow-pupil of Śākapūrūi. The *Vāyu* makes him a disciple of Satyaśrī, the fellow-pupil of Śākalya and Ra-thāntara, and adds the name or title Bhāradvāja. §

<sup>1</sup> In the *Vāyu*, they are called Nandāyaniya, Pannagāri, || and Ārjava.

<sup>2</sup> Both the *Vishnū* and *Vāyu Purāṇas* omit two other principal divisions of the *Īch*, those of Āśwalāyana and Śānkhāyana (or the *Kaushītaki*). *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VIII., p. 375. ¶ There is no specification of the aggregate number of *Saṁhitās* of the *Īch*, in our text, or in the *Vāyu*; but they describe eighteen, including the *Nirukta*; or, as Mr. Colebrooke states,

शाक्यसतीर्थो बाष्कलिः । तच्छिष्याः कालायनिप्रमुखास्तयः । In other words, Bāshkali, disciple of Paila, first redacted four *Saṁhitās*, and then three others. But there was a different Bāshkali, Śākalya's fellow-student; and his disciples were Kā-lāyani and the rest.

We are left to ascertain on what authority seven *Saṁhitās* are imposed on a single Bāshkali.

\* Son of Balāka, mentioned a little before. See the *Kaushītaki-brāhmaṇa Upanishad*, IV., 1.

† One of my MSS. exhibits Ājava, which looks like a mere miscript of the *Vāyu-purāṇa's* Ārjava.

‡ इत्येते बह्वचाः प्रोक्ताः संहिता यैः प्रवर्तिताः ।

"These, by whom the *Saṁhitās* have been promulgated, were denominated Bahwīchas."

Bahwīcha is a general name for a teacher of the *Īgveda*.

§ See the second and third extracts from the *Vāyu-purāṇa* at p. 46, note 2, *supra*.

|| In two MSS., Pannagāni.

¶ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 15.

sixteen (Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 374\*); that is, omitting the two portions of the original as divided by Paila. The Kúrma Purána states the number at twenty-one;† but treatises on the study of the Vedas reduce the Śákhás of the Rích to five.‡

\* Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 14.

† But it does not name them.

‡ The Śákals, Báshkalas, Áśwaláyanas, Śákháyanas, and Mándúkáyanas. So says the *Charaṇa-vyúha*.

## CHAPTER V.

Divisions of the Yajur-veda. Story of Yájnavalkya: forced to give up what he has learned: picked up by others, forming the 'Taittiriya-yajus'. Yájnavalkya worships the sun, who communicates to him the Vájasaneyi-yajus.

PARÁŚARA.—Of the tree of the Yajur-veda there are twenty-seven branches, which Vaiśampáyana, the pupil of Vyása, compiled, and taught to (as many) disciples.<sup>1</sup> Amongst these, Yájnavalkya, the

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu divides these into three classes, containing, each, nine, and discriminated as northern, middle and eastern:

**उदीच्या मध्यदेशाश्च प्राच्याश्चैव पृथग्विधाः ।**

Of these the chiefs were, severally, Śyámáyani, Áruṇi, and Ánalavi (or Álambi\*). With some inconsistency, however, the same authority states, that Vaiśampáyana composed, and gave to his disciples, eighty-six Saṁhitás.†

---

\* My MSS. have this reading.

† The *Váyu-purāṇa* declares:

विशम्पायनगोत्रोऽसौ यजुर्वदं व्यकल्पयत् ।  
षडशीतिस्तु येनोक्ता संहिता यजुषां शुभाः ॥  
शिष्येभ्यः प्रददौ तासु जगुर्जस्ते विधानतः ।  
एकसुत्रपरित्यक्तो याज्ञवल्क्यो महातपाः ॥  
षडशीतिस्तु तस्यापि संहितानां विकल्पकाः ।  
सर्वेषामेव तेषां वै विधा भेदाः प्रकीर्तिताः ।  
विधा भेदास्तु ते प्रोक्ता भेदेऽस्मिन्नवमे शुभे ॥

Then follows the line quoted above, and the names of the disciples, Śyámáyani, &c.

These verses are thus edited, from Professor Wilson's MSS., in Dr. Aufrecht's *Catalogus*, &c., p. 55; and my five copies of the *Váyu-purāṇa* are of no help towards mending them into something probable. The passage, as it stands, is, in part, ungrammatical and unintelligible; and it would be venturesome to guess at its full meaning, in its unamended state.

son of Brahmarāta,\* was distinguished for piety and obedience to his preceptor.

It had been formerly agreed, by the Munis, that any one of them who, at a certain time, did not join an assembly held on mount Meru should incur the guilt of killing a Brahman within a period of seven nights.<sup>1</sup> Vaiśampāyana alone failed to keep the appointment, and, consequently, killed, by an accidental kick with his foot, the child of his sister. He then addressed his scholars, and desired them to perform the penance expiatory of Brahmanicide, on his behalf. Without any hesitation,† Yājñavalkya refused, and said: "How shall I engage in penance with these miserable and inefficient Brahmans?"‡ On which, his Guru, being incensed, commanded him to relinquish all that he had learned from him. "You speak contemptuously," he observed, "of these young Brahmans: but of what use is a disciple who disobeys my commands?" "I spoke," replied Yājñavalkya, "in perfect faith:§ but,

<sup>1</sup> The parallel passage in the *Vāyu* rather implies, that the agreement was to meet within seven nights:

ततस्ते सगणाः सर्वे वैशम्पायनवर्जिताः ।

प्रययुः सप्तरात्रेण यत्र संधिः कृतोऽभवत् ॥

\* One MS. has Devarāta; and so reads the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 64. Devarāta would be a violent synonym of Brahmarāta. Moreover, Daivarāti—patronymic of Devarāta—is a name of Janaka, Yājñavalkya's patron.

† These words should end the preceding sentence. The original runs:

चरध्वं मत्कृते सर्वे न विचार्यमिदं तथा ।

‡ He says: 'I will perform this sacred office': चरिष्येऽहमिदं व्रतम् ।

§ *Bhaktau*, "out of devotion to thee."



as to what I have read from you, I have had enough: it is no more than this—" (acting as if he would eject it from his stomach); when he brought up the texts of the Yajus, in substance stained with blood. He then departed. The other scholars of Vaiśampāyana, transforming themselves to partridges (Tittiri), picked up the texts which he had disgorged, and which, from that circumstance, were called Taittirīya;<sup>1</sup> and the disciples were called the Charaka professors\* of the Ya-

---

<sup>1</sup> Also called the Black Yajus. No notice of this legend, as Mr. Colebrooke observes (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VIII., p. 376 †), occurs in the Veda itself; and the term Taittirīya is more rationally accounted for in the *Anukramaṇī*, or Index, of the Black Yajus. It is there said, that Vaiśampāyana taught it to Yāska, who taught it to Tittiri, who, also, became a teacher; whence the term Taittirīya: for a grammatical rule explains it to mean, 'The Taittirīyas are those who read what was said or repeated by Tittiri:' तित्तिरिणा प्रोक्तमधीयते । तैत्तिरीयाः । Pāṇini, IV., III., 102. The legend, then, appears to be nothing more than a Paurāṇik invention, suggested by the equivocal sense of Tittiri, a proper name, or a partridge. ‡ Much of the mythos of the Hindus, and, obviously, of that of the Greeks and Romans, originates in this source. It was not confined, at least amongst the former, to the case that Creuzer specifies,—"Telle ou telle expression cessa d'être comprise, et l'on inventa des mythes pour éclaircir ces malentendus,"—but was wilfully perpetrated, even where the word was understood, when it afforded a favourable opportunity for a fable. It may be suspected, in the present instance, that the legend is posterior, not only to the Veda, but to the grammatical rule; or it would have furnished Pāṇini with a different etymology.

---

\* *Charakādhwaryu.*

† Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 16.

‡ Compare Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 174, note.

jus, from Charaṇa, ('going through' or 'performing' the expiatory rites enjoined by their master).<sup>1\*</sup>

Yājñavalkya, who was perfect in ascetic practices,† addressed himself strenuously to the sun, being anxious to recover possession of the texts of the Yajus. "Glory to the Sun," he exclaimed, "the gate of liberation, the fountain of bright radiance, the triple source of splendour, as the R̥g-, the Yajur-, and the Sāma-vedas! Glory to him, who, as fire and the moon, is one with the cause of the universe: to the sun, that is charged with radiant heat, and with the Sushumṇā; ray, (by which the moon is fed with light): to him who is one with the notion of time, and all its divisions of hours, minutes, and seconds:§ to him who is to be

---

\* This is another specimen of the sort of Paronomasia explained in the preceding note. The Charakas are the students of a Śākhā so denominated from its teacher Charaka. (Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 377 ||). So, again, Pāṇini, IV., III., 107: 'The readers of that which is said by Charaka are Charakas: चरकेन प्रोक्तं चरकाः। Charaka has no necessary connexion with Char, 'to go.' The Vāyu states, they were also called Chatakas, from Chat (चट्), 'to divide;' because they shared amongst them their master's guilt. 'Those pupils of Vaiśampāyana were called Chatakas by whom the crime of Brahmanicide was shared; and Charakas, from its departure.'

---

\* See the Translator's third note on Book IV., Chapter XXI.

† *Prāśadyama*. It is correctly rendered "suppression of breath", in Vol. II., p. 89.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 297, note \*.

§ कलाकाष्ठानिषादिकालज्ञानात्मने नमः ।

See Vol. I., p. 47.

|| Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 17.

meditated upon as the (visible) form of Vishṇu, as the impersonation of the mystic Om:\* to him who nourishes the troops of the gods, having filled the moon with his rays: who feeds the Pitṛis with nectar and ambrosia,† and who nourishes mankind with rain; who pours down, or absorbs, the waters, in the time of the rains, of cold, and of heat!‡ Glory be to Brahmá,§ the sun, in the form of the three seasons:|| him who alone is the dispeller of the darkness of this earth, of which he is the sovereign lord! To the god who is clad in the raiment of purity be adoration! Glory to the sun, until whose rising, man is incapable of devout acts, and water does not purify; and, touched by whose rays, the world is fitted for religious rites: to him who is the centre and source of purification!¶ Glory to Savitrī, to Sūrya, to Bhāskara, to Vivasvat, to Āditya, to the first-born of gods or demons.\*\* I adore the eye

---

वैशम्पायनशिष्यास्ते चरकाः समुदाहृताः ।  
ब्रह्महत्वा तु यैश्चीर्णा चरणाच्चरकाः स्मृताः ॥††

---

\* In the original, *paramākshara*, "the supreme syllable."

† *Sudhāmṛita*. See Vol. II., p. 300, note \*.

‡ हिमाम्बुघर्मवृष्टीनां कर्ता हर्ता च यः प्रभुः ।

§ Vedhas, in the original.

|| *Kāla*.

¶ सत्कर्मयोग्यो न जनो नैवापः शीघ्रकारणम् ।

यस्मिन्ननुदिते तस्मै नमो देवाय भास्वते ॥

सृष्टो यदंशुभिर्लोकः क्रियायोग्योऽभिजायते ।

पवित्रताकारणाय तस्मै शुद्धात्मने नमः ॥

\*\* "Or demons" represents *ādi*, 'etc.'

†† The halves of this stanza are here transposed, if my MSS. are correct.

of the universe, borne in a golden car, whose banners scatter ambrosia.”\*

Thus eulogized by Yājñavalkya, the sun, in the form of a horse, (appeared to him, and) said: “Demand what you desire.” To which the sage, having prostrated himself before the lord of day, replied: “Give me a knowledge of those texts of the Yajus with which (even) my preceptor is unacquainted.” Accordingly, the sun imparted to him the texts of the Yajus called Ayátayāma (unstudied), which were unknown to Vaiśampāyana: and, because these were revealed by the sun, in the form of a horse, the Brahmans who study this portion of the Yajus are called Vājins (horses).† Fifteen branches of this school sprang from Kaṇwa and other pupils of Yājñavalkya.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu names the fifteen teachers of these schools, Kaṇwa, Vaidheya, Śālin, Madhyandina, Śāpeyin,‡ Vidagdha, Uddālin,§ Tāmrañi,|| Vātsya, Gālava,¶ Śāishiri,\*\* Ātavya,†† Parāya, Virāṇi,‡‡ and Saṃparāyaṇa,§§ who were the founders of no fewer than 101 branches of the Vājasaneyi, or White Yajus. Mr. Colebrooke specifies several of these, as the Jābālas, Baudhāyanas, Tāpaniyas, &c. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 376. ||

---

\* Yājñavalkya's hymn will be found in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 67–72.

† See, for a translation of nearly the whole of this chapter, Yājñavalkya's hymn excepted, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., pp. 32, 33.

‡ Two of my MSS. have Śāpemin, a reading of no value.

§ This, as I judge from all my MSS., is an error for Uddala.

|| Similarly, this seems an oversight for Tāmrañi.

¶ Gālava is a variant.

\*\* All my MSS. have Śāishiri.

†† Ātavin is the most common reading; but Ātavin and Ātavin, also, are found.

‡‡ Virāṇi is in all my MSS.

§§ The lection of four MSS. is सपरायणः, ‘and Parāyaṇa.’

|| Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 17.

## CHAPTER VI.

Divisions of the Sāma-veda: of the Atharva-veda. Four Paurāṇik Saṁhitās. Names of the eighteen Purāṇas. Branches of knowledge. Classes of Rishis.

YOU shall now hear, Maitreya, how Jaimini, the pupil of Vyāsa, divided the branches of the Sāma-veda. The son of Jaimini was Sumantu; and his son was Sukarman; who, both, studied the same Saṁhitā under Jaimini<sup>1</sup>. The latter\* composed the Sāhasra Saṁhitā (or compilation of a thousand hymns, &c.), which he taught to two disciples, Hiraṇyanābha,—also named Kauśalya† (or, of Kośala),—and Paushyinji<sup>2</sup>.‡ Fifteen disciples (of the latter) were the authors of as many Saṁhitās: they were called the northern chanters of

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu makes Sukarman the grandson of Sumantu; his son being called Sunwat. §

<sup>2</sup> Some copies read Paushpinji. The Vāyu agrees with our text, but alludes to a legend of Sukarman having first taught a thousand disciples; but they were, all, killed by Indra, for reading on an unlawful day, or one when sacred study is prohibited.

\* Sukarman, namely.

† One of my MSS. has Kaiśilya. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads Kauśilya, which looks less likely than Kauśalya to be correct.

‡ All my MSS. have Paushpinji. Paushyinji, a reading of no account, occurs in some copies of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*—see p. 59, note \*, *infra*,—has Paushpanji, a patronymic of Pushpanja. The meaning of Paushpinji is not evident; but it is, probably, the original name.

§ See p. 60, note -||, *infra*.

the Sáman.\* As many more, also, the disciples of

\* साहस्रं संहिताभेदं सुकर्मा तत्सुतस्ततः ।  
चकार तं च तच्छिष्यो जगृहति महामती ॥  
हिरण्यनाभः कौशिल्यः पौष्पजिह्व द्विजोत्तम ।  
उदीच्यसामगाः शिष्यास्तेभ्यः पञ्चदश स्मृताः ॥  
हिरण्यनाभात्तावत्यः संहिता येर्द्विजोत्तमैः ।  
गृहीतास्तेऽपि चोच्यन्ते पण्डितैः प्राच्यसामगाः ॥

The corresponding passage of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*,—XII., VI., 76-78,—runs thus:

सुकर्मा चापि तच्छिष्यः सामवेदतरोर्महान् ।  
साहस्रं संहिताभेदं चक्रे साम्नां ततो द्विजः ॥  
हिरण्यनाभः कौशिल्यः पौष्पजिह्व सुकर्माणः ।  
शिष्यो जगृहतुश्चान्य आवन्त्यो ब्रह्मवित्तमः ॥  
उदीच्याः सामगाः शिष्या आसन्पञ्च शतानि वै ।  
पौष्पज्यावन्त्ययोश्चापि कांश्चित्प्राच्यान्प्रचक्षते ॥

Śrīdhara explains this to mean, that Hiraṇyanābha, Paushtpanji, and Āvantya had, between them, five hundred disciples, first called northern, and, some of them, in time, eastern.

It seems possible that the name Āvantya grew out of a misreading of *āvatyaṇi*,—which some of my MSS. corrupt into *tāvantyāṇi*,—and the suggestion of Kauśalya; both which words stand only two lines apart, in the verses quoted from the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*. Āvantya does not appear in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, an older work than either the *Vishṇu* or the *Bhāgavata*:

तस्य शिष्योऽभवद्दीमान्पौष्पजिह्विजसत्तमाः ।  
हिरण्यनाभः कौशिल्यो द्वितीयोऽभून्नराधिपः ॥  
अध्यापयन्तु पौष्पजिह्वः शहस्रार्धं तु संहिताः ।  
ते नाम्नोदीच्यसामान्याः शिष्याः पौष्पजिनः शुभाः ॥  
शतानि पञ्च कौशिल्यः संहितानां च वीर्यवान् ।  
शिष्या हिरण्यनाभस्य स्मृतास्ते प्राच्यसामगाः ॥

Here, distinctly, Paushtpinji is said to have taught half a thousand *Saṁhitās*; and his disciples were called northerners: Hiraṇyanābha had five hundred *Saṁhitās*; and his disciples were known as easterlings.

Śrīdhara tries to harmonize with the text he is editing that of the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*; quoting from it, in place of the fourth verse adduced above:

उदीच्याः सामगाः शिष्यास्तस्य पञ्च शत स्मृताः ।

The reading तस्य is seen, at once, to be incomparably better than

Hirañyanábha, were termed the eastern chanters of the Sáman, founding an equal number of schools. Lokákshi,\* Kuthumi,† Kushidin,‡ and Lángali were the pupils of Paushyinji; and by them and their disciples many other branches were formed: whilst another scholar of Hirañyanábha, named Kriti,§ taught twenty-four Saṁhitás to (as many) pupils; and by them, again, was the Sáma-veda divided into numerous branches.<sup>1</sup>||

---

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu specifies many more names than the Vishnú; but the list is rather confused. Amongst the descendants of those named in the text, Ráyánaniya (or Rañányaniya), the son of Lokákshi, is the author of a Saṁhitá still extant; Saumitri, his son, was the author of three Saṁhitás: Párásara, the son of Kuthumi, compiled and taught six Saṁhitás: and Śáligotra, a son

---

तेभ्यः; and 'five hundred', as the *Váyu-purāṇa* shows, has to displace "fifteen". By the ordinary text, only thirty *Saṁhitás* are disposed of, out of the thousand. Both these better lections are in a single one of my thirteen copies of the *Vishnú-purāṇa*; but the commentary adopts, uninquiringly, and without demur, what are now made out to be corruptions.

\* Three MSS. have Laugákshi; one has Laukákshi. The former of these readings seems to be the best of all.

† Scarcely worthy of mention are the variants Kuthami and Kuśumi.

‡ This is the prevailing lection; while three MSS. have Kusidin; two, Kuśidi; two, Kuchidi; one, Kuśádi. The *Váyu-purāṇa* seems to give Kuśiti, in some MSS.; in others, Kuśin.

§ Two MSS. exhibit Kṛita; and this, according to the copies of it known to me, is the name, in the *Váyu-purāṇa*.

|| The history of the transmission of the *Sāmaveda* is briefly told as follows, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VI., 75—80. Jaimini had a son, Sumantu, whose son was Sunwat; and to each of them he gave a *Saṁhitá*. Sukarman, another disciple of Jaimini, divided the *Sāma-veda* into a thousand parts. His disciples were Hirañyanábha, Pauspanji, and Ávantya; and their disciples were, in all, five hundred.

I will now give you an account of the *Saṁhitās* of the Atharva-veda. The illustrious Muni Sumantu taught this Veda to his pupil Kabandha, who made it twofold, and communicated the two portions to Devadarśa\* and to Pathya. The disciples of Devadarśa were Maudga,† Brahmabali, Śaulkāyani,‡ and Pippalā-

of Lāngali, established, also, six schools. § Kṛiti was of royal descent:

ततो हिरण्यनाभस्य ऋतिः शिष्यो नृपात्मजः ।

He and Paushyinji were the two most eminent teachers of the *Sāma-veda*.

Pausspanji's disciples, to-wit, Langākshi, Māngali, Kulya, Kuśīda, and Kukshi, received, each, a hundred *Saṁhitās*; Hirañyanābha's disciple, Kṛita, twenty-four; and Āvantya's disciples, the rest.

We are not told who, or how many, these last were. They must have taken four hundred and seventy-six *Saṁhitās*, to make up the thousand into which the *Sāmaveda* was partitioned by Sukarman.

\* The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has Vedasparśa. Śrīdhara, commenting on the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VII., 1, quotes a portion of our text, and reads Vedadarśa.

† One MS. has Maunda. The name, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, is Modā.

‡ One MS. has Śaulkyāyani.

§ I do not find that Rāñāyaniya is called son of Lokākshi: he seems to have been only his disciple. Nor is Saumitri represented as son of Rāñāyaniya; and no writings are credited to him. Rāñāyaniyi—son of Rāñāyaniya—and he are merely stated to have been conversant with the *Sāmaveda*. The Sanskrit runs:

राणायनीयिः सौमित्रिः सामवेदविशारदौ ॥

Again, instead of "Pārāsara, the son of Kuthumi," I meet with Pārāśarya Kauthuma and with Kauthuma Pārāśarya, which perhaps intend Pārāśarya, son of Kuthumi. Once more, the kinship of Lāngali and Śālihoṭra,—a better reading than Śāligotra—is left unspecified; and each of them, we are told, published six *Saṁhitās*:

लाङ्गलिः शालिहोत्रस्तु षट्पट्टोवाच संहिताः ।

As to this line, at least, my MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* must differ from those which were consulted by Professor Wilson.



da.\* Pathya had three pupils, Jājali, Kumudādi,† and Śaunaka; and by all these were separate branches instituted. Śaunaka, having divided his Saṁhitā into two, gave one to Babhru, and the other to Saindhavāyana; and from them sprang two schools, the Saindhavas and the Munjakeśas.† The principal subjects of difference§ in the Saṁhitās of the Atharva-veda

\* According to the commentator, Munjakeśa is another name for Babhru; but the Vāyu seems to consider him as the pupil of Saindhava; but the text is corrupt:

सैन्धवो मुञ्जकेशाय भिन्नां चास्य द्विधा पुनः । ॥

\* Pishpalāda, though occurring in five of my MSS., and in some copies of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, can be nothing but a clerical error.

† Kumudādi is the reading of two MSS.; Kumudāri, of one.

‡ The account of the *Atharvaveda* given in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VII., 1—3, is, in substance, this. Sumantu had two disciples, Pathya and Vedadarśa. The disciples of the latter were Śaulkāyani, Brahmanabali, Modosha, and Paippalāyani; and those of the former were Kumuda, Śunaka, and Jājali. Śunaka had two disciples, Babhru—son of Angiras,—and Saindhavāyana; and these were succeeded by the Sāvarīyas and others.

I have availed myself of Śankara's supplementations, here and in note ॥ in p. 60, *supra*.

One MS. has, for Modosha, Modāsha; another, Mediya. All my MSS., and likewise the printed editions, have the ungrammatical Pippalāyani, which I have corrected to Paippalāyani. The *Bhāgavata-kathā-saṅgraha* gives, in my incorrect copies of it, Śaunakāyani, Brahmanabali, Maudgalādi, and Pippalāyani, as the disciples of Vedadarśa.

§ "Subjects of difference" is the rendering of *vikalpakāḥ*, 'divisions.'

॥ Just before this line we read, almost in the words of the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*, as follows:

शौनकसु द्विधा कृत्वा द्वावेकं तु बभुवे ।

द्वितीयां संहितां धीमान्सैन्धवायनसंज्ञिते ॥

It is now patent why the Translator pronounced the text corrupt. Saindhavāyana and Saindhava cannot denominate the same teacher. The former must have been a descendant of the latter.

are the five Kalpas (or ceremonials): the Nakshatra Kalpa, (or rules for worshipping the planets); the Vaitāna (Kalpa), (or rules for oblations, according to the Vedas generally); the Saṁhitā (Kalpa), (or rules for sacrifices, according to different schools); the Āngirasa (Kalpa), (incantations and prayers for the destruction of foes and the like); and the Śānti Kalpa, (or prayers for averting evil).<sup>1\*</sup>

Accomplished in the purport of the Purāṇas, Vyāsa compiled a Paurāṇik Saṁhitā, consisting of historical and legendary traditions, prayers and hymns, and sacred chronology.<sup>2†</sup> He had a distinguished disciple,

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu has an enumeration of the verses contained in the different Vedas; but it is very indistinctly given, in many respects, especially as regards the Yajus. The R̥ich is said to comprise 8,600 R̥ichas: the Yajus, as originally compiled by Vyāsa, 12,000; of which the Vājasaneyi contains 1,900 R̥ichas and 7,600 Brāhmaṇas; the Charaka portion contains 6,026 stanzas; and, consequently, the whole exceeds 12,000 verses. The stanzas of the Sāman are said to be 8,014; and those of the Atharvan, 5,980. Mr. Colebrooke‡ states the verses of the whole Yajus to be 1,987; of the Śatapatha§ Brāhmaṇa of the same Veda, 7,624; and, of the Atharvan, 6,015.

<sup>2</sup> Or, of stories (Ākhyānas) and minor stories or tales (Upā-

\* नचचकल्यो वेदानां संहितानां तथैव च ।  
चतुर्थः स्यादाङ्गिरसः शान्तिकल्पश्च पञ्चमः ।  
श्रेष्ठास्त्वथर्वणमिमे संहितानां विकल्पकाः ॥

The Translator consulted, for his intercalative explanations, those of the commentary; and this understands, by the second and third kalpas, the Brāhmaṇas of the Atharvaveda, and its mantras.

† आख्यानैश्चाप्युपाख्यानैर्गाथाभिः कल्पशुद्धिभिः ।  
पुराणसंहितां चक्रे पुराणार्थविशारदः ॥

‡ *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 54, 60, 89.

§ "Salapalka" was, of course, an error of the press, in the first edition.

Sūta, also termed Romaharshaṇa; and to him the great Muni communicated the Purāṇas. Sūta had six scholars, Sumati, Agnivarchas, Mitrayu\* Śāṁsapāyana,† Akṣitabrahṇa,‡ (who is also called Kāśyapa§), and Śavarūi.¶ The three last composed three fundamental

kyānas); of portions dedicated to some particular divinity, as the

\* One MS. has, here and below, Mitrayu, a reading which is seen in some copies of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as well.

† In one MS. is Śāṁsapāyana.

‡ One MS. has Kṣitabrahṇa: but the reading is, perhaps, to be rejected. Akṣitabrahṇa, however, renders the line which it begins hypermetrical:

अष्टतत्रयोऽथ सावर्णिः षड्विंशसंख्यं चाभवत् ।

What is conclusive,—if the MSS. are not corrupt,—the *Vāyu-purāṇa* has the line

आवेयः सुमतिर्घोमान्काशपो ह्यष्टतत्रणः ।

It is proved hereby, moreover, that Akṣitabrahṇa sprang from Kāśyapa. Sumati is here called descendant of Atri, too.

For the reading Kṣitavrata, see note || in this page.

§ In the Sanskrit, Kāśyapa is not named here, but in the following sentence, which the translation abridges.

|| "Six persons received the Purāṇas from Vyāsa, and were his pupils. Their names are Sūta, Lomaharsha, Sumati, Maitreya, Śāṁsapāyana, and Śavarūi." The Translator thus renders a passage from the *Agni-purāṇa*, in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, Vol. I., p. 84. Compare Professor Wilson's *Essays, Analytical, Critical, &c.*, Vol. I., p. 88.

Burnouf—in his edition of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. I., Preface, pp. XXXIX., XL.—quotes the original of the passage thus rendered, and translates and annotates it, as follows:

प्राप्य व्यासात्पुराणादि सूतो वै लोमहर्षणः ।

सुमतिश्चाग्निवर्चाश्च मित्रयुः शंशपायनः ॥

अष्टतत्रतोऽथ सावर्णिः षड्विंशसंख्यं चाभवत् ।

शंशपायनादयश्चक्रुः पुराणानां तु संहिताः ॥

ब्राह्मादीनि पुराणानि हरिर्विद्या दशाष्ट च ।

महापुराणे चाग्नेये विद्यारूपो हरिः स्थितः ॥

"Lomaharshaṇa le Sūta, après avoir reçu de Vyāsa les Purāṇas et le reste, eut six disciples, savoir: Sumati, Agnivarchas, Mitrayu,

Sāmhitas; and Romaharshaña himself compiled a

Śiva-gītā, Bhagavad-gītā, &c.; and accounts of the periods

Çāṁcapāyana, Kṛitavṛata et Sāvārī. Çāṁcapāyana et les autres firent des collections des Purāṇas. Les Purāṇas, dont le Brāhma est le premier, sont au nombre de dix-huit; c'est la science même qui n'est autre que Hari. En effet, dans le grand Purāṇa nommé l'Āgnēya, Hari existe sous la forme de la science.

"M. Wilson \* \* \* a cité ce texte qu'il regarde comme remarquable en ce qui touche à la question de l'origine des Purāṇas. Mais soit qu'il ait eu sous les yeux un texte différent du nôtre, soit que quelque faute d'impression se soit glissée dans son travail, il fait deux personnages de Śūta et de Lōmaharshaña, et il ne nomme pas Kṛitavṛata. Au lieu de Çāṁcapāyana, que donne également le Vāichīnava, M. Wilson lit *Sihśapāyana*, comme le Bhāgavata, et *Māitrēya* au lieu du *Mitrāyu* ou *Mitrāyu* du Vāichīnava. Ces différences viennent probablement de l'inattention des copistes qui ont compilé les index dont s'est servi M. Wilson pour ses analyses; quelle qu'en soit d'ailleurs la cause, je crois plus sûr de m'en tenir au texte que j'ai sous les yeux, que de faire deux personnages de Śūta et de Lōmaharshaña. Mais je dois en même temps remarquer le peu d'accord qui se trouve entre les trois autorités originales dont je rapporte le témoignage, le Bhāgavata, le Vāichīnava et l'Āgnēya. Les noms de *Trayyārūṇi* et de *Hārīta*, donnés par le Bhāgavata, ne reparaissent plus dans le Vāichīnava ni dans l'Āgnēya; d'autre part, le *Sumati*, l'*Agnivartchas* et le *Mitrāyu* de ces deux derniers ouvrages ne se trouvent pas dans le Bhāgavata. La liste de ce dernier Purāṇa contient d'ailleurs un vice radical, qui consiste à faire deux personnages de Kaçyapa (qu'il faut lire, comme je vais le dire plus bas, *Kāçyapa*), et d'Akṛitavṛata. Quand on pourra comparer un plus grand nombre de textes indiens, et surtout de commentaires, peut-être résoudra-t-on ces difficultés, comme on peut le faire en ce qui touche Akṛitavṛata, qu'un commentateur nous apprend avoir été surnommé *Kāçyapa*, à cause sans doute de la famille à laquelle il appartenait; ainsi, le nom de *Trayyārūṇi*, qui est patronymique, cache probablement le nom propre de *Sumati* ou d'*Agnivartchas*. *Trayyārūṇi* rappelle le *Trayyārūṇi* qui figure, selon Colebrooke, parmi les rois auteurs de quelques hymnes du Rīgvēda (*Miscell. Essays*, t. I., p. 23); et *Hārīta* est le nom d'un sage, auteur d'un Dharmacāstra qui est quelquefois cité par Kullūka Bhaṭṭa, dans son Commentaire sur Mann", etc.

For Tryarūṇa, the real Vaidik name, see p. 36, note †, *supra*; for Ātreya, the patronymic of Sumati, p. 64, note †, *supra*. According to

fourth, called Romaharshaṇikā;\* the substance of which four Saṁhitās is collected into this (Vishṇu Purāṇa). †

The first of all the Purāṇas is entitled the Brāhma. Those who are acquainted with the Purāṇas enumerate eighteen, or, the Brāhma, Pādma, Vaishṇava, ‡ Śaiva,

called Kalpas, as the Brāhma Kalpa, Vārāha Kalpa, &c. §

the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Bhāradwāja is Agnivarchas's patronymic; Vāsishṭha, Mitravṇ's; and Saṁmadatti, Śāvarāi's.

The originators of the Purāṇas are thus enumerated in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, XII., VII., 5:

त्रय्यारुणिः काश्यपश्च सावर्णिरकृतव्रणः ।

वैशम्पायनहारीती षड्वि पौराणिका इमे ॥

So read, all but consentaneously, five MSS. which I have examined. One of them has Akṣitavrata, for Akṣitabrāṇa; and one has - like the *Bhāgavata-kathā-saṁgraha* - Śāṁsapāyana, for Vaisampāyana. Śāṁsapāyani is the name, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

\* काश्यपः संहिताकर्ता सावर्णिः शांशपायनः ।

रोमहर्षणिका चान्या तिसृणां मूलसंहिता ॥

"Kāśyapa was compiler of a *Saṁhitā*; and so was Śāvarāi, and so Śāṁsapāyana: and the *Romaharshaṇikā* was another *Saṁhitā*, the root of the three just specified."

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* says the same, in effect.

† The original of this paragraph, the scholia on it, and a translation of both, will be found in Burnouf's edition of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. I., Preface, pp. XXXVII.—XXXIX.

‡ From the commentary: विष्णुपुराणं च क्वचिद्दशसहस्रं क्वचिदष्टसहस्रमित्यादिविकल्पेऽप्यत्र षट्साहस्रमेव व्याख्यायते । We learn, from this, that the *Vishṇu-purāṇa* has been variously reputed as consisting of ten thousand stanzas, of eight thousand, and of six thousand. The scholiast accepts the most moderate estimate. It is a great reduction from twenty-three thousand. See Vol. I., Preface, p. XXXIV., note 2, extract from the *Matsya-purāṇa*.

§ Most of this note is taken from the commentary, which remarks as follows: आख्यानादिभिः सह पुराणसंहितां चक्रे। व्यास इति शेषः । तत्र दृष्टोपलब्धकथनं प्राञ्जराख्यानकं बुधाः । श्रुतस्वार्थस्य कथनमुपाख्यानं प्रचवते । गाथा पितृपृथादिगीताः । कल्पशुद्धिर्वाराहादिकल्पनिर्णयः ।

Bhágavata, Náradíya, Márkañdeya, Agneya, Bhavishyat, Brahma Vaivarta, Lainga, Váráha, Skánda, Vámana, Kaurma, Mátsya, Gáruḍa, Brahmáñḍa. The creation of the world, and its successive reproductions, the genealogies (of the patriarchs and kings), the periods of the Manus, and the transactions of the (royal) dynasties, are narrated in all these Puráñas.\* This Puráña which I have repeated to you, Maitreya, is called the Vaishnáva, and is next, in the series, to the Pádma; and in every part of it, in its narratives of primary and subsidiary creation, of families, and of periods, the mighty Vishnú is declared, in this Puráña<sup>1</sup>.

The four Vedas, the (six) Angas (or subsidiary portions of the Vedas), (viz., Śikshá, rules of reciting the prayers, the accents and tones to be observed; Kalpa, ritual; Vyákaraṇa, grammar; Nirukta, glossarial comment; Chhandas, metre; and Jyotisha, astronomy), with Mímáṃsá (theology), Nyáya (logic), Dharma (the institutes of law), and the Puráñas, constitute the fourteen (principal) branches of knowledge: or (they are considered as) eighteen, (with the addition of these four), the Áyur-veda, (medical science, as taught by Dhanwantari), Dhanur-veda, (the science of archery or arms, taught by Bhṛígu), Gándharva-(veda), (or the drama, and the arts of music, dancing, &c., of

---

<sup>1</sup> For remarks upon this enumeration, see Introduction.†

---

\* See Vol. I., Preface, p. VII., note 1; and the supplementary annotation thereon, in p. 199, *ibid.* See, further, the note at the end of the present chapter.

† Vol. I., Preface, pp. XXIII. *et seq.*

which the Muni Bharata was the author), and the Artha Śāstra, (or science of government, as laid down first by Brīhaspati).\*

There are three kinds of Ṛishis (or inspired sages): royal Ṛishis, (or princes who have adopted a life of devotion, as Viśwāmitra), divine Ṛishis, (or sages who are demigods also, as Nārada), and Brahman Ṛishis, (or sages who are the sons of Brahmā, or Brahmanas, as Vasishṭha and others).<sup>1†</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A similar enumeration is given in the Vāyu, with some additions. Ṛishi is derived from Ṛish, 'to go to', or 'approach.' The Brahmarshis, it is said, are descendants of the five patriarchs who were the founders of races or Gotras of Brahmanas; or, Kaśyapa, Vasishṭha, Bhṛigu, Aṅgiras, and Atri. The Devarshis are Nara and Nārāyaṇa, the sons of Dharma;‡ the Vālikhilyas, § who sprang from Kratu;|| Kardama, the son of Pulaha; Kubera, the son of Pulastya ¶; Achala, the son of Pratyūsha;\*\* Parvata and Nārada, the sons of Kaśyapa. Rājarsis are Ikshvāku and other

\* The definitions and other particulars enclosed within parentheses, in this and the following paragraph, are borrowed from the commentary.

† On these, and other descriptions of Ṛishis, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 109, note 11.

‡ See Vol. I., p. 111, note 1.

§ Such is the more ordinary spelling, in MSS. known to me. For the Vālikhilyas, see the *Mahābhārata*, *Ādi-parvan*, Chapters XXX., XXXI. I am not aware that these pigmies had anything to do with the portion of Veda called Vālikhilya. See p. 49, note §, *supra*.

|| See Vol. I., p. 155.

¶ The original, as will be seen in the next page, has Pulastya; and this does not necessarily signify "son of Pulastya"; but it does so, there. Kubera was Pulastya's grandson, and son of Viśravaś, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IV., I., 36, 37. See Vol. I., p. 154, note 2.

\*\* See Vol. II., p. 23.



I have, thus, described to you the branches of the Vedas, and their subdivisions; the persons by whom they were made; and the reason why they were made (or, the limited capacities of mankind). The same branches are instituted in the different Manwantaras.\* The (primitive) Veda,† that of the progenitor of all things,‡ is eternal: these (branches) are but its modifications (or Vikalpas).§

princes. The Brahmarshis dwell in the sphere of Brahmá; the Devarshis, in the region of the gods; and the Rájarshis, in the heaven of Indra. ||

\* सर्वमन्वन्तरेष्वेवं शाखाभेदाः समाः स्मृताः ।

† *Śruti*, in the Sanskrit.

‡ *Prajápatya*, 'derived from Prajapati'.

§ See *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part III., p. 11.

|| The passage of the *Váyu-purāṇa* is as follows:

ज्ञेया ब्रह्मर्षयः पूर्वं तेभ्यो देवर्षयः पुनः ।\*  
 राजर्षयः पुनस्तेभ्य ऋषिप्रकृतयस्त्रयः ॥  
 तेभ्य ऋषिप्रकृतयो मुनिभिः शंसितव्रतैः ।  
 कश्यपेषु वसिष्ठेषु तथा भृग्वङ्किरोत्तिषु ॥  
 पञ्चस्त्रितेषु जायन्ते गोत्रेषु ब्रह्मवादिनः ।  
 यस्मादृषन्ति ब्रह्माणं तेन ब्रह्मर्षयः स्मृताः ॥  
 धर्मस्याथ पुलस्त्यस्य क्रतोश्च पुलहस्य च ।  
 प्रत्यूषस्य प्रभासस्य कश्यपस्य तथा पुनः ॥  
 देवर्षयः सुतास्त्रिषां नामतस्मान्निबोधत ।  
 देवर्षी धर्मपुत्री तु नरनारायणावुभौ ॥  
 वाल्मिल्याः क्रतोः पुत्राः कर्दमः पुलहस्य तु ।  
 कुबेरश्चैव पौलस्त्यः प्रत्यूषस्याचलः स्मृतः ॥  
 पर्वतो नारदश्चैव कश्यपस्यात्मजावुभौ ।  
 ऋषन्ति देवान्यस्मात्ते तस्माद्देवर्षयः स्मृताः ॥  
 मानवे वैनवे (??) वंशे ऐडे वंशे च ये नृपाः ।  
 ऐडा ऐत्ताका नाभागा ज्ञेया राजर्षयश्च ते ॥



I have, thus, related to you, Maitreya, the circumstances, relating to the Vedas, which you desired to hear. Of what else do you wish to be informed?<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> No notice is taken, here, of a curious legend which is given in the Mahābhārata, in the Gadā Parvan.\* It is there said, that, during a great drought, the Brahmans, engrossed by the care of subsistence, neglected the study of the sacred books, and the Vedas were lost. The Ṛishi Śāraswata, alone, being fed with fish by his mother Saraswatī, the personified river so named, kept up his studies, and preserved the Hindu scriptures. At the end of the famine, the Brahmans repaired to him, to be taught; and sixty thousand disciples again acquired a knowledge of the Vedas from Śāraswata. This legend appears to indicate the revival, or, more probably, the introduction, of the Hindu ritual by the race of Brahmans, or the *people*, called Śāraswata: for, according to the Hindu geographers, it was the name of a nation, as it still is the appellation of a class of Brahmans who chiefly inhabit the Punjab. (Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 219; † Vol. VIII., pp. 338, 341.) The Śāraswata Brahmans are met with in many parts of India, and are, usually, fair-complexioned, tall, and handsome men. They are classed, in the Jāti mālās, or popular lists of castes, amongst the five Gaudā Brahmans, and are divi-

ऋषन्ति रज्जनायस्मात्प्रजा राजर्षयस्ततः ।

ब्रह्मलोकप्रतिष्ठासु स्मृता ब्रह्मर्षयोऽमलाः ॥

देवलोकप्रतिष्ठासु त्रैया देवर्षयः शुभाः ।

इन्द्रलोकप्रतिष्ठासु सर्वे राजर्षयो मताः ॥

The Translator omitted mention of the sons of Prabhāsa, here classed among the Devarshis, but not named. Prabhāsa was father of Viśwakarmān. See Vol. II., p. 24.

Further, the Rājārshis are said to be Aīdas, Aīkshwākas, and Nābhīgas,—kings sprung from Manu, Vena (??), and Idā.

\* Or *Gadāyuddha-parvan*. It concludes the *Śalya-parvan*, beginning with its thirty-third chapter.

† Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. II., p. 22.

ded into ten tribes. They are said, also, to be, especially, the Purohitas or family-priests of the Kshatriya or military castes‡;—(see the *Jāti mālā*, printed in Price's *Hindee and Hindoostanee Selections*, Vol. I., p. 280)—circumstances in harmony with the purport of the legend, and confirmatory of the *Sāraswatās* of the Punjab having been prominent agents in the establishment of the Hindu religion in India. The holy land of the Hindus, or the primary seat, perhaps, of Brahmanism, has, for one of its boundaries, the *Saraswatī* river. See Vol. II., p. 142, note 4.

Note referred to at p. 67, *supra*.

Barnouf, in his edition of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. I., Preface, pp. XLIV.—LI., dwells at length on the definition of the term *Purāṇa*. After citing, from the *Śabdakalpadruma*, a passage of the *Brahmavai-varta-purāṇa*, where the topics of a *Purāṇa* are said to be ten, he translates an extract from the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*,—XII., VII., 8–19,—in which these topics are enumerated almost in the same manner. Subjoined is his translation, with the original prefixed.

पुराणलक्षणं ब्रह्मन्ब्रह्मर्षिभिर्निरूपितम् ।  
 शृणुष्व बुद्धिमाश्रित्य वेदशास्त्रानुसारतः ॥  
 सर्गोऽस्याथ विसर्गश्च वृत्ती रचान्तराणि च ।  
 वंशो वंशानुचरितं संस्था हेतुरपाश्रयः ॥  
 दशभिर्लक्षणैर्युक्तं पुराणं तद्विदो विदुः ।  
 केचित्पञ्चविधं ब्रह्मन्महदल्पव्यवस्थया ॥  
 अथैकतगुणबोभान्महत्स्त्रिवृतोऽहम् ।  
 भूतसूक्ष्मेन्द्रियार्थानां संभवः सर्ग उच्यते ॥  
 पुरुषानुगृहीतानामेतेषां वासनामयः ।  
 विसर्गोऽयं समाहारो बीजाद्वीजं चराचरम् ॥  
 वृत्तिर्भूतानि भूतानां चराणामचराणि च ।  
 कृता स्वेन गुणैः तच्च कामाच्चोदनयापि वा ॥  
 रचाच्युतावतारेहा विश्वस्यानुयुगे युगे ।  
 तिर्यङ्मूर्त्यर्थिदेवेषु हन्यन्ते येस्त्रयो द्विषः ॥  
 मन्वन्तरं मनुर्देवा मनुपुत्राः सुरेश्वराः ।  
 ऋषयोऽशावतारश्च हरः षड्विधमुच्यते ॥  
 राज्ञां ब्रह्मप्रसूतानां वंशस्त्रैकालिकोऽन्वयः ।  
 वंशानुचरितं तेषां वृत्तं वंशधराश्रयः ॥

नैमित्तिकः प्राकृतिको नित्य आत्यन्तिको लयः ।

संस्थिति कविभिः प्रोक्ता चतुर्धास्य स्वभावतः ॥

हेतुर्जीवोऽस्य सर्गादेरविद्याकर्मकारकः ।

यं चानुशथिनं प्राङ्गरेव्याकृतमुतापरे ॥

व्यतिरेकान्वयो यस्य जाग्रत्स्वप्नसुषुप्तिषु ।

मायामयेषु तद्ब्रह्मजीववृत्तिष्वपाश्रयः ॥

"Écoute, ô Brâhmane (dit Sâta à Çânnaka), en y appliquant ton intelligence, la définition d'un Purâna, telle que l'ont donnée les Brahmarchis, d'accord avec les diverses écoles des Vêdas. La création de cet univers et la création distincte, l'existence, la conservation, les intervalles [de chaque Manu], la généalogie, l'histoire des familles postérieures, la destruction, la cause, la délivrance: voilà ce que les savants reconnaissent pour un Purâna, ouvrage qui a dix caractères particuliers. D'autres, distinguant les Purânas en grands et en petits, disent qu'un [petit] Purâna a cinq caractères. On entend par *Sarga*, création, l'origine du principe dit de l'Intelligence, qui vient du mouvement des qualités qui appartiennent à la Nature, celle du principe de la Personnalité qui est triple et qui sort de l'Intelligence, celle des molécules subtiles, celle des sens et des éléments grossiers. On entend par *Visarga*, création distincte, l'association de tous ces principes fécondés par Purucha association qui leur rappelle leur ancienne activité; il en résulte tout ce qui se ment comme ce qui ne se ment pas, de même qu'un germe sort d'un autre germe. Par *Vṛitti*, existence, on entend que les êtres servent à l'existence les uns des autres, ceux qui ne se meuvent pas, à celle de ceux qui se meuvent; mais les moyens qu'a l'homme de soutenir son existence sont, par une suite de sa nature propre, volontaires ou nécessaires. La *Rakchâ* ou conservation de l'univers, c'est l'action d'Atchyuta (Vichân) qui descend, à chaque Yuga, dans des formes d'animaux, d'hommes, de Rîchis, de Dêvas, pour anéantir les ennemis du triple Vêda. Par *Manvantara*, intervalle de chaque Manu, on entend une époque où se trouvent les six espèces d'êtres suivantes: un Manu, des Dêvas, des fils de Manu, des chefs de Suras, des Rîchis, des incarnations partielles de Hari (Vichân). Par *Vamsha*, généalogie, on entend la succession des rois, nés de Brahmâ, pendant les trois parties de la durée; et par *Vamshânutcharita*, histoire des familles postérieures, on entend la conduite de ceux qui ont perpétré les familles de ces rois. Les chants inspirés nomment *Sainsthâ*, destruction, la dissolution de cet univers qui est de quatre sortes, savoir; Nâimittika, Prâkṛitika, Nitya et Atyantika, et qui résulte de sa nature propre. Par *Hêtu*, cause de la création et des autres états de l'univers, on entend l'âme individualisée qui accomplit des actes sous l'influence de l'Avidyâ (l'Ignorance). Cette cause, quelques-uns l'appellent le principe [intelligent] qui s'endort [au temps de la destruction de l'univers

au sein de l'Être suprême]; d'autres, le principe [matériel] non développé. On entend par *Apāpraya*, délivrance, Brahma auquel il appartient d'être présent et absent tout à la fois, pendant que s'accomplissent les fonctions de la vie, de la veille, du sommeil et du sommeil profond, fonctions qui sont l'œuvre de Mâyâ."

This passage, and that from the *Brahmavaivarta-purāṇa*, before adverted to, are of interest, as evincing the comparatively recent date of those compositions; only five constitutive and characteristic topics of a Purāṇa being recognized by so late writers as the commentators on the *Amarakośa*. See Vol. I., Preface, p. VII., where the commentators on *Amarasūtra* are inadvertently identified, in respect of their views touching the subject-matters of a Purāṇa, with the vocabularist himself.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

By what means men are exempted from the authority of Yama, as narrated, by Bhīshma, to Nakula. Dialogue between Yama and one of his attendants. Worshippers of Vishnu not subject to Yama. How they are to be known.

MAITREYA.—You have, indeed, related to me, most excellent Brahman, all that I asked of you. But I am desirous to hear one thing which you have not touched on. This universe, composed of seven zones, with its seven subterrestrial regions, and seven spheres,—this whole egg of Brahmá,—is everywhere swarming with living creatures, large or small, with smaller and smallest, and larger and largest; so that there is not the eighth part of an inch in which they do not abound. Now, all these are captives in the chains of acts, and, at the end of their existence, become slaves to the power of Yama, by whom they are sentenced to painful punishments. Released from these inflictions, they are again born in the condition of gods, men, or the like; and, thus, living beings, as the Śāstras apprise us, perpetually revolve. Now, the question I have to ask, and which you are so well able to answer, is, by what acts men may free themselves from subjection to Yama.

PARÁŚARA. — This question, excellent Muni, was once asked, by Nakula,<sup>1</sup> of his grandfather Bhīshma;

---

<sup>1</sup> Nakula is one of the Pándava princes, and, consequently, grand-nephew, not grandson, of Bhīshma: he is great grandson of Parásara; and it is rather an anomaly for the latter to cite a conversation in which Nakula *formerly* bore a part.

and I will repeat to you the reply made by the latter.

Bhīshma said to the prince: "There formerly came, on a visit to me, a friend of mine, a Brahman, from the Kalinga country, who told me that he had once proposed this question to a holy Muni who retained the recollection of his former births, and by whom what was and what will be was accurately told. Being importuned by me, who placed implicit faith in his words, to repeat what that pious personage had imparted to him, he, at last, communicated it to me; and what he related I have never met with elsewhere.

"Having, then, on one occasion, put to him the same question which you have asked, the Kalinga Brahman recalled the story that had been told him by the Muni, —the great mystery that had been revealed to him by the pious sage who remembered his former existence, —a dialogue that occurred between Yama and one of his ministers.

"Yama, beholding one of his servants with his noose in his hand, whispered to him, and said: 'Keep clear of the worshippers of Madhusūdana. I am the lord of all men, the Vaishnavas excepted. I was appointed, by Brahmá,\* who is revered by all the immortals, to restrain mankind, and regulate the consequences of good and evil in the universe. But he who obeys Hari, as his spiritual guide, is here independent of me; for Vishnú is of power to govern and control me. As gold is one sub-

---

\* Dhātṛī, in the Sanskrit.

stance, still, however diversified as bracelets, tiaras,\* or ear-rings, so Hari is one and the same, although modified in the forms of gods, animals, and man. As the drops of water, raised, by wind, from the earth, sink into the earth again, when the wind subsides, so the varieties of gods, men, and animals, which have been detached by the agitation† of the qualities, are reunited, when that disturbance ceases, with the eternal. He who, through holy knowledge, diligently adores the lotos-foot of that Hari, who is revered by the gods, is released from all the bonds of sin; and you must avoid him, as you would avoid fire fed with oil.'

"Having heard these injunctions of Yama, the messenger addressed the lord of righteousness, and said: 'Tell me, master, how am I to distinguish the worshipper of Hari, who is the protector of all beings?' Yama replied: 'You are to consider the worshipper of Vishnú him who never deviates from the duties prescribed to his caste; who looks with equal indifference upon friend or enemy; who takes nothing (that is not his own), nor injures any being. Know that person of unblemished mind to be a worshipper of Vishnú. Know him to be a devout worshipper of Hari, who has placed Janárdana in his pure mind, which has been freed from fascination, and whose soul is undefiled by the soil of the Kali age. Know that excellent man to be a worshipper of Vishnú, who, looking upon gold in secret, holds that which is another's wealth

---

\* *Mukuta*.

† *Kalusha*, 'feculence'.

but as grass, and devotes all his thoughts to the lord. Pure is he as a mountain of clear crystal: for how can Viṣṇu abide in the hearts of men with malice, and envy, and other evil passions? The glowing heat of fire abides not in a cluster of the cooling rays of the moon. He who lives pure in thought, free from malice, contented, leading a holy life, feeling tenderness for all creatures, speaking wisely and kindly, humble and sincere, has Vāsudeva ever present in his heart. As the young Śāla-tree, by its beauty, declares the excellence of the juices which it has imbibed from the earth, so, when the eternal has taken up his abode in the bosom of any one, that man is lovely amidst the beings of this world. Depart, my servant, quickly from those men whose sins have been dispersed by moral and religious merit,<sup>1</sup> whose minds are daily dedicated to the imperceptible deity,\* and who are exempt from pride, uncharitableness, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Or Yama and Niyama. The duties intended by these terms are variously enumerated. The commentator on the text specifies, under the first head, absence of violence or cruelty to other beings (Ahimsā), truth (Satya), honesty (Asteya), chastity (Brahmacharya), and disinterestedness, or non-acceptance of gifts (Aparigraha). Under Niyama are comprehended purity (Śauca), contentment (Santosha), devotion† (Tapas), study of the Vedas (Swādhyāya), and adoration of the supreme (Īśwara-praṇidhāna).

---

\* "Imperceptible deity" here renders *achyuta*, on which term see Vol. I., p. 15, note 3.

† Rather, 'mortification'.



malice. In the heart in which the divine Hari, who is without beginning or end, abides, armed with a sword, a shell, and a mace, sin cannot remain; for it cannot coexist with that which destroys it: as darkness cannot continue in the world, when the sun is shining. The eternal makes not his abode in the heart of that man who covets another's wealth, who injures living creatures, who speaks harshness and untruth, who is proud of his iniquity, and whose mind is evil. Janár-dana occupies not his thoughts who envies another's prosperity, who calumniates the virtuous, who never sacrifices, nor bestows gifts upon the pious, who is blinded by the property of darkness. That vile wretch is no worshipper of Vishnú, who, through avarice, is unkind to his nearest friends and relations, to his wife, children, parents, and dependants. The brute-like man whose thoughts are evil, who is addicted to unrighteous acts, who ever seeks the society of the wicked, and suffers no day to pass without the perpetration of crime, is no worshipper of Vásudeva. Do you proceed afar off from those in whose hearts Ananta is enshrined; from him whose sanctified understanding conceives the supreme male and ruler, Vásudeva, as one with his votary and with all this world. Avoid those holy persons who are constantly invoking the lotos-eyed Vásudeva, Vishnú, the supporter of the earth, the immortal wielder of the discus and the shell, the asylum of the world. Come not into the sight of him in whose heart the imperishable\* soul resides; for he is defended from my power by the

---

\* *Ayaya*. See Vol. I., p. 17., note \*.

discus of his deity: he is designed for another world, (for the heaven of Vishnú).<sup>2</sup>

“‘Such,’ said the Kalinga Brahman, ‘were the instructions communicated by the deity of justice, the son of the Sun, to his servants, as they were repeated, to me, by that holy personage, and as I have related them to you, chief of the house of Kuru’ (Bhíshma). So, also, Nakula, I have faithfully communicated to you all I heard from my pious friend, when he came, from his country of Kalinga, to visit me. I have, thus, explained to you, as was fitting, that there is no protection, in the ocean of the world, except Vishnú; and that the servants and ministers of Yama, the king of the dead himself, and his tortures, are, all, unavailing against one who places his reliance on that divinity.”\*

I have, thus, resumed Parásara, related to you what you wished to hear, and what was said by the son of Vivaswat.<sup>1</sup> What else do you wish to hear?

---

<sup>1</sup> Or Vaivaswata. This section is called the Yama gítá.

---

\* Keshava, in the original.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

How Vishnu is to be worshipped, as related, by Aurva, to Sagara.

Duties of the four castes, severally and in common: also in time of distress.

MAITREYA.—Inform me, venerable teacher, how the supreme deity, the lord of the universe, Vishnu, is worshipped by those who are desirous of overcoming the world; and what advantages are reaped, by men assiduous in his adoration, from the propitiated Govinda.

PARÁŚARA.—The question you have asked was formerly put, by Sagara, to Aurva.<sup>1</sup> I will repeat to you his reply.

<sup>1</sup> Sagara, as we shall see,\* was a king of the solar race. Aurva was a sage, the grandson of Bhṛigu.† When the sons

\* Book IV., Chapter III.

† "In the *Mahābhārata*, *Ādi-parvan*, verse 2610, . . . we have the parentage of Aurva thus specified: 'Ārushi, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of this sage [Chyavana, son of Bhṛigu]: the illustrious Aurva was born of her, having separated his mother's thigh.' In the *Harivamśa*, verse 1456, he seems to be identified with Rīchika, father of Jamadagni; Rīchika being *Aurva*, or the son of Ūrva," &c. *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 172, 173.

Subjoined are the originals of the passages here referred to:

आरुषी तु मनोः कन्या तस्य पत्नी मनीषिणः ।

और्वस्तस्यां समभवदूर्ध्वं भित्त्वा महायशः ॥

*Mahābhārata.*

और्वस्त्वैवमुचीकस्य सत्यवत्यां महायशः ।

जमदग्निस्तपोवीर्याञ्ज्जे ब्रह्मविदां वरः ॥

*Harivamśa.*

The name of the father of Jamadagni should, then, be read Ūrva,—not Kuru, nor Ūru, nor Kuśa, as at p. 16, note †, &c., *supra*.

Sagara, having bowed down before Aurva, the

of king Kṛitavīrya persecuted and slew the children of Bhṛigu, to recover the wealth which their father had lavished upon them, they destroyed even the children in the womb. One of the women of the race of Bhṛigu, in order to preserve her embryo, secreted it in her thigh (Ūra), whence the child, on his birth, was named Aurva. From his wrath proceeded a flame, that threatened to destroy the world; but, at the persuasion of his ancestors, he cast it into the ocean, where it abode, with the face of a horse. Aurva was, afterwards, religious preceptor to Sagara, and bestowed upon him the Ágneyāstra,\* or fiery weapon, with

---

\* The Translator—in Professor Johnson's *Selections from the Mahābhārata*, pp. 1, 2,—thus annotates on *Sl.* 5107 of the *Adi-parvan*: "Ágneyāstra, 'the weapon of fire',—a kind of fire-arms. Fiery arms or rockets were, possibly, employed by the Hindus in remote antiquity, as well as in recent times; whence came the notion of certain mysterious weapons framed of the elements, and to be wielded only by deities and demigods. These make a great figure in the battle-scenes of the Mahābhārata and Rāmāyaṇa, and, to readers who are not Hindus, spoil descriptions which would, else, be not without spirit. For a further account of these weapons, see Translation of the *Uttara Rāma Charitra*."

The further account here spoken of is found in Professor Wilson's *Specimens of the Hindu Theatre*, Vol. I., p. 297, second edition. "These weapons are of a very unintelligible character. Some of them are, occasionally, wielded as missiles; but, in general, they appear to be mystical powers exercised by the individual,—such as those of paralysing an enemy, or locking his senses fast in sleep, or bringing down storm and rain and fire from heaven. In the usual strain of the Hindu mythology, they are supposed to assume celestial shapes, endowed with human faculties, and, in this capacity, are alluded to in the text. The list of them, one hundred, is given in the first book of the *Rāmāyaṇa*; and there, also, they are described as embodied, and address Rāma, saying: 'Command us, O Rāghava, of mighty arm. Here we are, O chief of men: command us. What shall we do for thee?' The son of Raghu replied: 'Depart, all of you, and, in time of necessity, when called to mind, render me assistance. They then circumambulated Rāma, and, having said *so be it*, received permission to depart, and went whence they came.' The *Rāmāyaṇa* calls them, also, the sons of Kṛishṇa, and the

descendant of Bhrigu, asked him what were the best

which he conquered the tribes of barbarians who had in-

sons of Jayā and Vijayā, the daughters of Prajāpati. (*Rāmāyaṇa*, Book I., Sections 20, 26, and 42.)"

For the armiform progeny of Kṛiśāśwa, see the present work, Vol. II., p. 29, text and note 2.

Mention is made of a similar mysterious weapon, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, I., VII., 18—32. The text and Burnouf's translation here follow:

तमापतन्तं स विलोक्य दूरा-  
त्कुमारहोद्विप्रमना रथेन ।  
पराद्रवत्प्राणपरीप्सुर्व्यां  
यावन्नमं रुद्रभयाद्यथार्कः ॥  
यदाशरणमात्मानमैवत आन्तवाजिनम् ।  
अस्त्रं ब्रह्मशिरो मेन आत्मचाणं दिवात्मजः ॥  
अथोपसृष्टं सलिलं संदधे तत्समाहितः ।  
अजानन्नपि संहारं प्राणकृच्छ्र उपस्थिते ॥  
ततः प्रादुष्कृतं तेजः प्रचण्डं सर्वतोदिशम् ।  
प्राणापदमभिप्रेत्य विष्णुं जिष्णुर्वाच ह ॥  
छण्ण छण्ण महाबाहो भक्तानामभयंकर ।  
त्वमेको दह्यमानानामपवर्गोऽसि संसृतेः ॥  
त्वमाद्यः पुरुषः साक्षादीश्वरः प्रकृतेः परः ।  
मायां व्युदस्य चिच्छक्त्या कैवल्ये स्थित आत्मनि ॥  
स एव जीवलोकस्य मायामोहितचेतसः ।  
विधत्ते स्वेन वीर्येण श्रेयो धर्मादिलक्षणम् ॥  
तथायं चावतारस्ते भुवो भारजिहीर्षया ।  
स्वानां चानन्यभावानामनुधानाय चासकृत ॥  
किमिदं स्त्रित्कुतो वेति देवदेव न वेद्व्यहम् ।  
सर्वतोमुखमायाति तेजः परमदारुणम् ॥

श्रीभगवानुवाच ।

वेत्येदं द्रोणपुत्रस्य ब्राह्ममस्त्रं प्रदर्शितम् ।  
नैवासौ वेद संसारं प्राणवाध उपस्थिते ॥  
न ह्यस्यान्यतमं किञ्चिदस्त्रं प्रत्यवकर्शनम् ।  
जह्यस्त्रतेज उन्नद्धमस्त्रं ह्योऽस्यस्त्रतेजसा ॥

सूत उवाच ।

श्रुत्वा भगवता प्रोक्तं फाल्गुनः परवीरहा ।  
सृष्ट्वापस्त्रं परिक्रम्य ब्राह्मं ब्राह्मणाय संदधे ॥

means of pleasing Vishnu, and what would be the  
vaded his patrimonial possessions. Mahābhārata, Ādi Par-

संहृतान्योन्यमुभयोस्तेजसी शरसंवृते ।  
आवृत्य रोदसी खं च ववृधातेऽर्कवह्निवत् ॥  
दृष्ट्वास्त्रतेजसु तयोस्त्रील्लोकान्द्रदहन्महत ।  
दह्यमानाः प्रजाः सर्वाः सांवर्तकममंसत ॥  
प्रजोपस्रवमानस्य लोकव्यतिकरं च तम् ।  
मतं च वासुदेवस्य संजहारार्जुनो द्वयम् ॥

"Mais l'assassin des enfants de Drāupadi, qui avait mis pied à terre, troublé à la vue d'Ardjuna qui accourait de loin sur son char, s'enfuit pour sauver sa vie, de toute la rapidité de sa course, comme le soleil reculant de crainte devant Rudra (Śiva).

"Voyant que ses chevaux fatigués le laissaient sans ressource, le fils du Brāhmane songea, pour sauver sa vie, au javelot nommé Brahmaçiras (Tête de Brahmā).

"Alors, dirigeant sa pensée sur cet objet, et s'étant plongé dans l'eau, il lança le javelot, quoiqu'il ignorât le moyen de le retenir, s'il venait à mettre en danger les êtres vivants.

"Il en sortit un feu indomptable qui enveloppait tout le ciel; alors prévoyant le danger qui menaçait les créatures, Ardjuna dit à Vichnu:

"Kṛichūa! Kṛichūa au bras puissant! toi qui donnes la sécurité à ceux qui te sont dévoués! tu es le seul qui puisses délivrer du monde les créatures qui y sont consumées.

"Oui, tu es le Seigneur suprême, Parucha, ce premier être, supérieur à la Nature, qui se dégageant de Mâyā par l'énergie de sa pensée, subsiste absolu en lui-même.

"C'est toi-même qui, par ta puissance, établis sous la forme de la loi et des autres avantages ce qui donne le salut au monde des créatures, dont l'intelligence est troublée par Mâyā.

"De même, cette incarnation [sous laquelle tu te manifestes à mes yeux], tu l'as revêtue pour te charger du fardeau de la terre, et pour offrir un perpétuel sujet de méditations à ceux qui te connaissent et dont la pensée n'a pas d'autre objet que toi.

"Dieu des Dêvas! j'ignore quelle est cette merveille et quelle en est la cause; de tous côtés s'avance à ma rencontre un feu dont l'ardeur est intolérable.

"Bhagavat dit: Tu le connais; c'est le javelot de Brahmā que le fils de Drōṇa veut t'opposer; mais lui-même ignore le moyen de le retenir, au moment où il va détruire les êtres.

"Certes, aucun autre javelot quel qu'il soit n'est capable de le domp-

consequence of obtaining his favour. Aurva replied: "He who pleases Vishnú obtains all terrestrial enjoyments; heaven, and a place in heaven; and what is best of all, final liberation:\* whatever he wishes, and to whatever extent, whether much or little, he receives it, when Achyuta is content with him. In what manner his favour is to be secured, that, also, I will, O king, impart to you, agreeably to your desire. The supreme Vishnú is propitiated by a man who observes

van,† Dána Dharma Parvan; Hari Vanúsa.‡

ter; mais puisque tu en connais le secret, anéantis, avec un feu semblable, le feu de ce javelot déchaîné.

"Sâta dit:

"À ces mots, Phálguna (Ârdjuna), redoutable aux guerriers ennemis, portant de l'eau à ses lèvres et tournant autour de Kíçhka, opposa le javelot de Brahmâ au javelot de Brahmâ.

"Les feux de ces deux javelots, avec les flèches dont ils étaient entourés, s'étant confondus l'un dans l'autre, comme le soleil et le feu [au temps de la destruction des mondes], augmentèrent de violence, enveloppant la terre, le ciel et l'atmosphère.

"En voyant l'immense éclat de ces javelots des deux guerriers, qui portaient l'incendie dans les trois mondes, toutes les créatures, consumées par le feu, crurent que le jour de l'embrasement de l'univers était arrivé.

"Ârdjuna remarquant la détresse des créatures, le danger des trois mondes et l'intention du fils de Vasudêva, retint les deux javelots."

In stanzas 10—16 of the chapter following that just quoted from, the *brahmaśiras* is again introduced, with other fire-tipped darts.

It has been thought worth while to give the preceding passage at length, since it shows, quite as clearly as any other that I have met with, the sort of fiery weapon known to the Hindus of old times.

An interesting and learned disquisition on ancient and oriental fire-arms will be found in Sir Henry M. Elliot's *Bibliographical Index to the Historians of Muhammedan India*, Vol. I., Note H,—pp. 340-375.

\* This expression here translates *nirvāṇa*.

† In *Sl.* 6340, the *brahmāstra* is named.

‡ The *brahmaśiras* is spoken of in *Sl.* 1344.

the institutions of caste, order, and purificatory practices: no other path is the way to please him. He who offers sacrifices sacrifices to him; he who murmurs prayer prays to him; he who injures living creatures injures him: for Hari is all beings. Janárdana, therefore, is propitiated by him who is attentive to established observances, and follows the duties prescribed for his caste. The Brahman, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya, and the Śúdra, who attends to the rules enjoined his caste,\* best worships Vishnú. Keśava is most pleased with him who does good to others; who never utters abuse, calumny, or untruth;† who never covets another's wife or another's wealth, and who bears ill-will towards none; who neither beats nor slays any animate or inanimate thing; who is ever diligent in the service of the gods, of the Brahmans, and of his spiritual preceptor; who is always desirous of the welfare of all creatures, of his children, and of his own soul; in whose pure heart no pleasure is derived from the imperfections of love and hatred. The man, O monarch, who conforms to the duties enjoined, by scriptural authority, for every caste and condition of life is he who best worships Vishnú: there is no other mode."

Aurva having thus spoken, Sagara said to him: "Tell me, then, venerable Brahman, what are the duties of caste and condition:<sup>1</sup> I am desirous of know-

---

<sup>1</sup> Most of the Purāṇas—especially the Kúrma, Padma, Vámana, Agni, and Garúda,—contain chapters, or sections, more or

---

\* *Dharma*, in the original.

† परापवादपैशुन्यमनृतं च न भाषते ।

अन्योद्वेगकरं चापि तोषते तेन केशवः ॥



ing them." To which Aurva answered and said: "Attentively listen to the duties which I shall describe, as those, severally, of the Brahman, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya,\* and the Sūdra. The Brahman should make gifts, should worship the gods with sacrifices, should be assiduous in studying the Vedas, should perform ablutions and libations with water, and should preserve the sacred flame. For the sake of subsistence, he may offer sacrifices on behalf of others, and may instruct them in the Śāstras; and he may accept presents, of a liberal description, in a becoming manner (or, from respectable persons, and at an appropriate season). He must ever seek to promote the good of others, and do evil unto none; for the best riches of a Brahman are universal benevolence. He should look upon the jewels of another person as if they were pebbles, and should, at proper periods, procreate offspring by his wife. These are the duties of a Brahman.

"The man of the warrior-tribe should cheerfully

---

less in detail, upon the moral and ceremonial duties of the Hindus; and a considerable portion of the Mahābhārata, especially in the Moksha Dharma Parvan, is devoted to the same subject. No other Paurāṇik work, however, contains a series of chapters exactly analogous to those which follow, and which contain a compendious and systematic description of the Āchāras, or personal and social obligations of the Hindus. The tenour of the whole is conformable to the Institutes of Manu; and many passages are the same.

---

\* The Sanskrit has the shorter form, Viś.

give presents to Brahmans, perform various sacrifices, and study the scriptures. His especial sources of maintenance are arms and the protection of the earth. The guardianship of the earth is, indeed, his especial province. By the discharge of this duty a king attains his objects, and realizes a share of the merit of all sacrificial rites. By intimidating the bad, and cherishing the good, the monarch who maintains the discipline of the different castes secures whatever region he desires.

"Brahmá, the great parent of creation,\* gave to the Vaisya the occupations of commerce and agriculture, and the feeding of flocks and herds,† for his means of livelihood: and sacred study, sacrifice, and donation are, also, his duties, as is the observance of fixed and occasional rites.

"Attendance upon the three regenerate castes is the province of the Śúdra; and by that he is to subsist, or by the profits of trade, or the earnings of mechanical labour. He is, also, to make gifts; and he may offer the sacrifices in which food is presented, as well as obsequial offerings.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Pákayajna,‡ or sacrifice in which food is offered, implies either the worship of the Viśwadevas, the rites of hospitality, or occasional oblations, on building a house, the birth of a child, or any occasion of rejoicing. It is to be understood, however, that this injunction intends his performing these ceremonies through the agency of a Brahman; as a Śúdra cannot repeat the

---

\* *Loka-pitámaha.*

† *Páśupálya.*

‡ *Vide infra*, p. 110, note §; and p. 112, note §.

"Besides these, their respective obligations, there are duties equally incumbent upon all the four castes.\* These are: the acquisition of property, for the support of their families; cohabitation with their wives, for the sake of progeny; tenderness towards all creatures, patience, humility, truth, purity, contentment, decency of deco-

Mantras, or prayers, that accompany them: and it might be a question how far he might be present; for he ought not even to hear such prayers repeated. The performance of funeral rites involves some personal share; and the Śūdra must present the cakes: but it must be done without Mantras; as the Mitāksharā:† 'This rite (the presentation of cakes) must be performed by the Śūdras, without formulæ, on the twelfth day:' शुद्राणामप्येतर्कतव्यममन्त्रकं द्वादशे हि । The Vāyu Purāṇa directs the performance of the five great sacrifices by Śūdras, only omitting the Mantras:

शूदेणापि प्रकर्तव्याः पञ्चैते मन्त्रवर्जिताः ।

It may be suspected, that the Purāṇas relaxed, in some degree, from the original rigour; for it may be inferred, that the great ceremonies were altogether withheld from Śūdras in the time of Manu, who declares, that none have any right or part (Adhikāra) in his code, except those who perform rites with Mantras,—or the three regenerate castes (II., 16‡),—and denounces, as heinous sins, teaching the Vedas to Śūdras, performing sacrifices for them, or

\* आश्रमाणां च सर्वेषामेते सामान्यलक्षणाः ।

This comes, in the original, immediately after the stanza quoted in note \*, p. 90.

† On the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 255.

‡ निषेकादिस्मशानान्तो मन्त्रैर्यस्योदितो विधिः ।

तस्य शास्त्रेऽधिकारोऽस्मिञ्ज्ञेयो नान्यस्य कस्यचित् ॥

"For him whose rites, from fecundation to the cemetery, are enjoined to be performed with mantras, a title to read this śāstra is to be recognized,—not for any one besides,"

ration, gentleness of speech, friendliness; and freedom from envy and repining, from avarice, and from de-

taking gifts from them: X., 109, 110, 111.\* Yājñavalkya,† however, allows them to perform five great rites with the Namaskāra, or the simple salutation:

नमस्कारेण मन्त्रेण पञ्च यज्ञान्न हापयेत् ।

which Gotama confirms.‡ Some restrict the sense of Mantra, also, to the prayers of the Vedas, and allow the Śūdras to use those of the Purāṇas; as Śūlapāṇi: न वेदेष्वधिकारी शूद्रस्य विद्यते पुराणेष्वधिकारः । And the Tithi Tattwa is cited, in the Śūdra Kamalākara, § as allowing them any Mantras except those of the Vedas: वैदिकेतरमन्त्रपाठे शूद्रस्याधिकारः ।

\* प्रतियहाद्याजनाद्वा तथैवाध्यापनादपि ।  
प्रतियहः प्रत्यवरः प्रेत्य विप्रस्य गर्हितः ॥  
याजनाध्यापने नित्यं क्रियते संस्कृतात्मनाम् ।  
प्रतियहसु क्रियते शूद्रस्याप्यन्यजात्मनः ॥  
जपहोमरपैत्येनो याजनाध्यापनैः छतम् ।  
प्रतियहनिमित्तं तु त्यागेन तपसैव च ॥

"Among these three acts, done against rule, namely, accepting gifts, assisting to sacrifice, and teaching the Veda, the accepting of gifts is especially base in this world, and, in the world to come, is, to a Brāhman, matter of condemnation:

"For that the acts of assisting to sacrifice and teaching the Veda always have reference to the initiated; whereas the act of accepting gifts has reference even to the Śūdra, most low of birth.

"The sin committed in *wrongfully* assisting to sacrifice or in *wrongfully* teaching the Veda is expiated by oblations in the form of silent prayer; but that consequent on *illegally* accepting gifts, by relinquishment of *what is given* and by mortification."

Medhātithi, at variance with Kullūka, but more concinnously, reads the second stanza as above. On the beginning of the third he says: जपेन होमेन च पापमपैति विनश्यति । In this interpretation of *japa-homa* I have not followed him.

† I., 121.

‡ अनुमतोऽस्य नमस्कारो मन्त्रः । Gotama is thus cited by Śūlapāṇi.

§ This is the popular title of the Śūdra-dharma-tattwa, by Kama-

traction. These, also, are the duties of every condition of life.\*

"In times of distress, the peculiar functions of the castes may be modified, as you shall hear.† A Brahman may follow the occupations of a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya; the Kshattriya‡ may adopt those of the Vaiśya; and the Vaiśya, those of the Kshattriya.§ But these two last should never descend to the functions of the Śūdra, if it be possible to avoid them¹; and, if

¹ This last clause reconciles what would, else, appear to be an incompatibility with Manu, who permits the Vaiśya, in time

lākera Bhaffa. The passages which the Translator refers to Śūlapāñi and to the *Tīthi-tattva* occur there in these words, according to two manuscripts, with which agrees the Bombay edition of *Śaka* 1783, fol. 7 b: अच केचिद्विप्रो मन्त्रेण गृह्यते इत्यत्र वैदिको मन्त्रो विप्रस्य । पौराणसु गूढैः पठनीयः ।

न वेदेष्वधिकारो हि कश्चिच्छूद्रस्य विद्यते ।

पुराणेष्वधिकारो मे दर्शितो ब्राह्मणैरिह ॥

इति शूलपाणी पात्तोक्तेः । श्रीदत्तोऽप्येवम् । तिथितत्त्वे स्मार्तसु वैदिकेतरमन्त्रपाठे शूद्रस्यायधिकारः ।

Śūlapāñi's own words, in his *Dīpakalikā*, a commentary on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, are: नमस्कारेण मन्त्रेण न वैदिकेन पौराणिकेन । Kamalākara considers them as based on the enunciation of the *Padma-purāṇa* which he adduces. It is a broken fragment of the Paurāṇik stanza which the Translator gives as the words of Śūlapāñi.

\* मन्त्र्यसृष्टा तथा तद्वदकार्ष्णं नरेश्वर ।

अनसूया च सामान्या वर्णानां कथिता गुणाः ॥

† गुणास्तथापद्धमींश्च विप्रादीनामिमाञ्छृणु ।

‡ *Rājanya*, in the original.

§ My MSS. contain nothing corresponding to the words "and the Vaiśya, those of the Kshattriya." Witness the original:

चात्रं कर्म द्विजस्योक्तं वैश्वकर्म तथापदि ।

राजन्यस्य च वैश्वोक्तं शूद्रकर्म न चैतयोः ॥

that be not possible, they must, at least, shun the functions of the mixed castes. I will now, Rájá, relate to you the duties of the several Ásramas, or conditions of life."

---

of distress, to descend to the servile acts of a Śúdra. X., 98.\*

---

\* वैश्योऽजीवन्स्वधर्मेण शूद्रवृत्त्यापि वर्तयेत् ।

अनाचरन्नकार्याणि निवर्तेत च शक्तिमान् ॥

"A Vaiśya who does not derive subsistence from his proper duties may occupy himself with the functions even of a Śúdra; he not engaging in what ought not to be done: and, *when* possessed of a competency, let him desist."

---

## CHAPTER IX.

Duties of the religious student, householder, hermit, and mendicant.

AURVA continued.—“When the youth has been invested with the thread (of his caste), let him diligently prosecute the study of the Vedas, in the house of his preceptor, with an attentive spirit, and leading a life of continence. He is to wait upon his Guru, assiduously observant of purificatory practices; and the Veda is to be acquired by him, whilst he is regular in the performance of religious rites. In the morning Sandhyá, he is first to salute the sun; in the evening, fire;\* and, then, to address his preceptor with respect. He must stand, when his master is standing; move, when he is walking; and sit beneath him, when he is seated: he must never sit, nor walk, nor stand, when his teacher does the reverse. When desired by him, let him read the Veda attentively, placed before his preceptor; and let him eat the food he has collected as alms, when permitted by his teacher.<sup>1</sup> Let him bathe in water which has first been used for his preceptor’s ablutions; and, every morning, bring fuel, and water, and whatsoever else may be required.

“When the scriptural studies appropriate to the

---

<sup>1</sup> These directions are the same as those prescribed by Manu, though not precisely in the same words: II., 175, et seq.

---

\* उभे संधे रविं भूप तथैवाग्निं समाहितः ।

This seems to imply, that, alike morning and evening, he is to address the sun and fire. The commentary is here silent.

student have been completed, and he has received dismissal from his Guru, let the regenerate man enter into the order of the householder, and, taking unto himself, with lawful ceremonies, house, wife, and wealth, discharge, to the best of his ability, the duties of his station;<sup>1</sup> satisfying the manes with funeral cakes;\* the gods, with oblations; guests, with hospitality; the sages, with holy study; the progenitors of mankind,† with progeny; the spirits, with the residue of oblations;‡ and all the world, with words of truth.<sup>2</sup> A householder secures heaven by the faithful discharge of these obligations. § There are those who subsist upon alms, and lead an erratic life of self-denial, at the end of the term during which they have kept house. They wander over the world, to see the earth,

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, III., 4, &c.

<sup>2</sup> The great obligations, or, as Sir William Jones terms them, sacraments,—the Maháyajnas, or great sacrifices,—are, according to Manu, but five: Brahmáyajna, sacred study; Pitriyajna, libations to the manes; Devayajna, burnt-offerings to the gods; Baliyajna, offerings to all creatures; and Nriyajna, hospitality: III., 70, 71. || The Prajapatiyajna, or propagation of offspring, and Satyayajna, observance of truth, are, apparently, later additions.

\* Nivápa.

† My MSS. have Prajapati, namely, Brahmá.

‡ Bali-karman, 'an offering of food'.

§ प्राप्नोति लोकान्युषो निजकर्मसमर्जितान् ।

॥ अध्यापनं ब्रह्मयज्ञः पितृयज्ञस्तु तर्पणम् ।

होमो देवो बलिर्भौतो नृयज्ञोऽतिथिपूजनम् ॥

पश्चैतान्यो महायज्ञान्न ह्यापयति शक्तिः ।

स गृहेऽपि वसन्नित्यं सूनादोषैर्न लिप्यते ॥

See p. 40, note §, *supra*; and p. 112, note §, *infra*.



and perform their ablutions, with rites enjoined by the Vedas, at sacred shrines,—houseless, and without food, and resting, for the night, at the dwelling at which they arrive in the evening. The householder is, to them, a constant refuge and parent:\* it is his duty to give them a welcome, and to address them with kindness, and to provide them, whenever they come to his house, with a bed, a seat, and food. A guest disappointed by a householder, who turns away from his door, transfers to the latter all his own misdeeds, and bears away his religious merit.<sup>1</sup>† In the house of a good man, contumely, arrogance, hypocrisy, repining,‡ contradiction,§ and violence are annihilated: and the householder who fully performs this, his chief duty of hospitality, is released from every kind of bondage, and obtains the highest of stations, (after death).

“When the householder, after performing the acts incumbent on his condition, arrives at the decline of life, let him consign his wife to the care of his sons, and go, himself, to the forests.<sup>2</sup> Let him there subsist

<sup>1</sup> This is, also, the doctrine of Manu: III., 100. ||

<sup>2</sup> Manu, VI., 3, &c.

\* To translate *yoni*.

† अतिथिर्यस्य भग्नशो गृहात्प्रतिनिवर्तते ।

स तस्यै दुष्कृतं दत्त्वा पुण्यमादाय गच्छति ॥

This stanza is quoted in the *Hitopadesa*: Book I., *sl.* 64. See Professor Johnson's second edition (1864), pp. 12, 13.

‡ *Paritāpa*.

§ *Upaghāta*.

॥ शिलानप्युच्छतो नित्यं पद्माग्नीनपि जुह्वतः ।

सर्वं सुकृतमादत्ते ब्राह्मणोऽनर्चितो वसन् ॥

upon leaves, roots, and fruit; and suffer his hair and beard to grow, and braid the former upon his brows; and sleep upon the ground. His dress\* must be made of skin, or of Kása or Kuśa grasses; and he must bathe thrice a day; and he must offer oblations to the gods and to fire, and treat all that come to him with hospitality. He must beg alms, and present food to all creatures; he must anoint himself with such unguents as the woods afford; and, in his devotional exercises,† he must be endurant of heat and cold. The sage who diligently follows these rules, and leads the life of the hermit (or Vánaprastha), consumes, like fire, all imperfections, and conquers, for himself, the mansions of eternity.

"The fourth order of men is called that of the mendicant; the circumstances‡ of which it is fit, O king, that you should hear from me. Let the unimpassioned§ man, relinquishing all affection for wife, children, and possessions, enter the fourth order.<sup>1</sup> Let him forego the three objects of human existence (pleasure, wealth, and virtue), whether secular or religious, and, indifferent to friends, be the friend of all living beings. Let him, occupied with devotion, abstain from wrong—in act, word, or thought,—to all creatures, human or brute; and equally avoid attachment

<sup>1</sup> Manu, VI., 33, &c.

\* The original specifies his lower garment and his upper, *paridhāna* and *uttariyaka*.

† This expression is to render *tapas*.

‡ *Svarūpa*.

§ *Nirdhūtamatsara*.

to any. Let him reside but for one night in a village, and not more than five nights, at a time, in a city; and let him so abide, that good-will, and not animosity, may be engendered.\* Let him, for the support of existence, apply, for alms, at the houses of the three first† castes, at the time when the fires have been extinguished, and people have eaten. Let the wandering mendicant‡ call nothing his own, and suppress desire, anger, covetousness, pride, and folly. The sage who gives no cause for alarm to living beings need never apprehend any danger from them. Having deposited the sacrificial fire in his own person, the Brahman feeds the vital flame, with the butter that is collected as alms, through the altar of his mouth; and, by means of his spiritual fire, he proceeds to his own proper abode. But the twice-born man¹ who seeks

¹ The text uses the term *Dwijāti*, which designates a man of the three first castes. The commentator cites various authorities, to prove that its sense should be Brahman only, who, alone, is permitted to enter the fourth order.—

गतिस्तुर्याश्रमे नास्ति बाहुजोरजयोः क्वचित् ।

तुर्याश्रमे गतिः प्रोक्ता मुखजानां स्वयंभुवः ॥

इति दत्तात्रेयोक्तेः । ब्राह्मणः प्रव्रजेद्गृहादिति यमसंवर्तबीधायनवचनाच्च । “Entrance into the fourth order is never for the Kshatriya and Vaiśya. Entrance into the fourth order is for Brahmins, according to Swayambhū:” so says Dattātreyā. ‘Let the Brahman proceed from his dwelling’ is, also, the expression of Yama, Saṁvarta, and Baudhāyana.” But this is not the general understand-

\* तथा तिष्ठेद्यथा प्रीतिर्द्वेषो वास्य न जायते ।

† Explanatory of the original, *prāsasta*.

‡ *Parivraj*.

for liberation, and is pure of heart, and whose mind is perfected by self-investigation, secures the sphere of Brahmá, which is tranquil, and is as a bright flame that emits not smoke.”\*

---

ing of the law; nor was it, originally, so restricted, apparently. Manu does not so limit it.

---

\* मोक्षायमं यश्चरते यथोक्तं  
शुचिः स्वसंकल्पितबुद्धियुक्तः ।  
अनिन्द्यं ज्योतिरिव प्रशान्तं  
स ब्रह्मलोकं जयति द्विजातिः ॥

---

## CHAPTER X.

Ceremonies to be observed at the birth and naming of a child.

Of marrying, or leading a religious life. Choice of a wife.  
Different modes of marrying.

SAGARA then (addressed Aurva, and) said: "You have described to me, venerable Brahman, the duties of the four orders and of the four castes. I am now desirous to hear from you the religious institutes which men should individually observe, whether they be invariable, occasional, or voluntary. Describe these to me; for all things are known, chief of Bhṛigu's race, unto you." To this Aurva replied: "I will communicate to you, O king, that which you have asked,—the invariable and occasional rites which men should perform. Do you attend.

"When a son is born, let his father perform, for him, the ceremonies proper on the birth of a child, and all other initiatory rites, as well as a Śráddha, which is a source of prosperity.\* Let him feed a couple of Brahmans, seated with their faces to the east; and, according to his means, offer sacrifices to the gods and progenitors. Let him present to the manes<sup>1</sup> balls

---

<sup>1</sup> To the Nándimukhas. The Pittis, or progenitors,† are so termed, here, from words occurring in the prayer used on the occasion of a festive Śráddha. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 270.‡

---

\* *Abhyudayatmaka*.

† The Nándimukhas are a special class of manes.

‡ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 187.

of meat mixed with curds, barley, and jujubes, with the part of his hand sacred to the gods, or with that sacred to Prajāpati.<sup>1</sup> Let a Brahman perform such a Śrāddha, with all its offerings and circumambulations, on every occasion of good fortune.<sup>2</sup>

"Next, upon the tenth day (after birth), let the father give a name to his child,—the first term of which shall be the appellation of a god; the second, of a man; as Śarman or Varman: the former being the appropriate designation of a Brahman; the latter, of a warrior; whilst Gupta and Dása are best fitted for the

---

<sup>1</sup> With the Daiva tīrtha, the tips of the fingers; or with the Prajāpatya tīrtha, the part of the hand at the root of the little finger. Manu, II., 58, 59.\* The second is called, by Manu, the Kāya tīrtha, from Ka, a synonym of Prajāpati.

<sup>2</sup> The Śrāddha is, commonly, an obsequial or funeral sacrifice; but it implies offerings to the progenitors of an individual and of mankind, and always forms part of a religious ceremony, on an occasion of rejoicing, or an accession of prosperity; this being termed the Abhyudaya or Vṛiddhi Śrāddha. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 270.†

---

\* ब्राह्मेण विप्रस्तीर्थेन नित्यकालमुपसृशेत् ।  
कायचैदशिकाभ्यां वा न पित्र्येण कदाचन ॥  
अङ्गुष्ठमूलस्य तले ब्राह्मं तीर्थं प्रचक्षते ।  
कायमङ्गुलिमूलेऽथैवैव पित्र्यं तथोरधः ॥

And we read, in the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 18, 19:

अन्तर्जानुः शुची देश उपविष्ट उदङ्मुखः ।  
प्राग्वा ब्राह्मेण तीर्थेन द्विजो नित्यमुपसृशेत् ॥  
कनिष्ठादेशिन्यङ्गुष्ठमूलान्ययं करस्य च ।  
प्रजापतिपितृब्रह्मदेवतीर्थान्यनुक्रमात् ॥

† Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 187.

names of Vaiśyas and Śūdras.<sup>1</sup> A name should not be void of meaning; it should not be indecent, nor absurd, nor ill-omened, nor fearful; it should consist of an even number of syllables; it should not be too long, nor too short, nor too full of long vowels, but contain a due proportion of short vowels, and be easily articulated.\* After this and the succeeding initiatory rites,<sup>2</sup> the purified youth is to acquire religious knowledge, in the mode that has been described, in the dwelling of his spiritual guide.

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, II., 30, 31, 32. † The examples given, in the comment, are Somaśarman, Indravarman, Chandragupta, and Śivadāsa,—respectively, appropriate appellations of men of the four castes.

<sup>2</sup> Or Saṁskāras; initiatory ceremonies, purificatory of the individual at various stages.

\* नार्थहीनं न चाश्ली नापशब्दयुतं तथा ।  
 नामङ्गल्यं जुगुप्सं वा नाम कुर्यात्समाचरम् ॥  
 नातिदीर्घं न ह्रस्वं वा नातिगुर्वचरान्वितम् ।  
 सुखोच्चार्यं तु तन्नाम कुर्याद्वत्प्रवणाचरम् ॥  
 † नामधेयं दशम्यां तु द्वादश्यां वास्य कारयेत् ।  
 पुण्ये तिथौ मुहूर्ते वा नक्षत्रे वा गुणान्विते ॥  
 मङ्गल्यं ब्राह्मणस्य स्वात्बत्तियस्य वलान्वितम् ।  
 वैश्यस्य धनसंयुक्तं शूद्रस्य तु जुगुप्सितम् ॥  
 शर्मवद्ब्राह्मणस्य स्वाद्राज्ञो रचासमन्वितम् ।  
 वैश्यस्य पुष्टिसंयुक्तं शूद्रस्य प्रियसंयुतम् ॥

Kullūka gives, as typical designations of persons of the four castes, Śubhaśarman, Balavarman, Vasubhūti, and Dinadāsa. The endings *śarman* and *deva* for names of Brāhmins, *varman* and *trāṭi* for those of Kṣhattriyas, *bhūti* and *datta* for those of Vaiśyas, and *dāsa* for those of Śūdras, are expressly sanctioned by the stanza which he cites from the lawgiver Yama:

शर्मा देवश्च विप्रश्च वर्मा चाता च भूभुजः ।  
 भूतिर्दत्तश्च वैश्यश्च दासः शूद्रश्च कारयेत् ॥

"When he has finished his studies, and given the parting donation to his preceptor, the man who wishes to lead the life of a householder must take a wife. If he does not propose to enter into the married state, he may remain, as a student, with his teacher,—first making a vow to that effect,—and employ himself in the service of his preceptor and of that preceptor's descendants; or he may, at once, become a hermit,\* or adopt the order of the religious mendicant, according to his original determination.<sup>1</sup>

"If he marry, he must select a maiden who is of a third of his age;<sup>2</sup> one who has not too much hair, but

<sup>1</sup> Or the vow or pledge he has taken, that he will follow, for life, the observances of the student, or ascetic; both of which are enumerated, in the *Nirñaya Sindhu*, as acts prohibited in the Kali age. A man is not to continue a student or *Brahmachárin*, i. e., a *cænobite*, for life; nor is he to become a mendicant, without previously passing through the order of householder. In practice, however, the prohibition is, not unfrequently, disregarded.

<sup>2</sup> By this is to be understood, according to the commentator, merely a young girl, but, at the same time, one not immature; for, otherwise, he observes, a man of thirty—by which age he completes his sacred studies,—would espouse a girl of but ten years of age.† According to *Manu*,‡ however, the period of religious study does not terminate until thirty-six; and, in the East, a girl of twelve would be marriageable. The text of *Yájñaval-*

\* *Vaikhánasa*. This term is synonymous with *vánaprastha*. Vide p. 95, *supra*.

† On the contrary, the commentator disallows, absolutely, even where the bridegroom is eight and forty, the marriage of a girl above ten years of age; on the ground that, after that period, she has her catamenia, &c. &c.

‡ III., 1.



is not without any; one who is not very black, or  
kya\* has merely the word Yaviyāsī, 'a very young woman.' It

\* I., 52:

अविभूतब्रह्मचर्यो लक्षणां स्त्रियमुदहेत् ।

अनन्यपूर्विकां कान्तामसपिण्डां यवीयसीम् ॥

Vijñāneshwara, Aparāditya, and Śūlapāṇi, commentators on Yājñavalkya, leave his term *yaviyāsī* unexplained.

The following dicta on the time when a female should marry are cited, by Jīmūtavāhana, in the *Dāyabhāga*; pp. 272, 273, Calcutta edition of 1829. The first extract is from the *Vasishṭha-smṛiti*, Chapter XVII.:

यावत्तु कन्यामृतवः स्पृशन्ति

तुल्यैः सकामामपि याच्यमानाम् ।

तावन्ति भूतानि हतानि ताभ्यां

मातापितृभ्यामिति धर्मवादः ॥

"So many seasons of menstruation as overtake a maiden feeling the passion of love and sought in marriage by persons of suitable rank, even so many are the beings destroyed by both her father and her mother: this is a maxim of the law."

Paithinasi is alleged as declaring: यावन्नोद्भिद्येते स्तनौ तावदेव देया । अथ चतुमती भवति तदा दाता प्रतियहीता च नरकमाप्नोति पितृपितामहप्रपितामहाश्च विष्टायां जायन्ते । तस्मान्नपिका दातव्या ।

"A damsel should be given in marriage, before her breasts swell. But, if she have menstruated [before marriage], both the giver and the taker fall to the abyss of hell; and her father, grandfather, and great-grandfather are born [insects] in ordure. Therefore she should be given in marriage while she is yet a girl."

The preceding translations are taken from the *Two Treatises on the Hindu Law of Inheritance*, by Colebrooke, p. 186. His earlier renderings of the passages will be found in his *Digest of Hindu Law*, &c., London edition, Vol. II., p. 387.

In the *Panchatantra*,—III., *sl.* 213; p. 189, ed. Kosegarten,—we find the ensuing stanza:

असंप्राप्तं रजा गौरी प्राप्ते रजसि रोहिणी ।

अव्यञ्जना भवेत्कन्या कुचहीना च नपिका ॥

*Nagnikā* is here vaguely said to signify a girl without breasts. This word, which Colebrooke renders by "yet a girl", is understood, by Valabhagaṇi, to intend a maiden of eight years. If he be right, it is a synonym of *gaurī*. No ordinary lexicographical authority seems to make the *nagnikā* more than ten: see Colebrooke's *Amarakośa*, *sub voce*. But,

yellow-complexioned, and who is not, from birth, a

is worthy of remark, here, that neither that text, nor the text of Manu, nor the interpretation of our text, authorizes the pre-

to judge from my next extract, the term appears to be, in some instances, as comprehensive as *kanyā*, 'virgin.'

In the *Nirṇayasindhu* of Kamalākara,—Bombay edition of 1857, III. A, fol. 31 v and 32 r,—occurs the following extract, credited to the *Mahābhārata*:

त्रिंशद्वर्षः षोडशाब्दां भार्यां विन्देत् नयिकाम् ।

दशवर्षोऽष्टवर्षां वा धर्मे सीदति सत्वरः ।

अतो प्रवृत्ते रजसि कन्यां दद्यात्पिता सद्यत् ॥

Whence came these lines? The first two look like a mixing up, from misrecollection, of the stanza cited in p. 104, note †, *infra*, with the *Anuśāsana-parvan*, XLIV., 14, (Bombay edition), which runs thus:

त्रिंशद्वर्षो दशवर्षां भार्यां विन्देत् नयिकाम् ।

एकविंशतिवर्षो वा सप्तवर्षामवाप्नुयात् ॥

"Let a man of thirty years marry, for wife, a damsel of ten years; or let a man of twenty-one years secure a damsel of seven years."

The next quotation, also, is referred to the *Mahābhārata*:

सप्तसंवत्सरादूर्ध्वं विवाहः सार्ववर्णिकः ।

कन्यायाः शस्यते राजन्नन्यथा धर्मेगर्हितः ॥

"The marriage, for all the castes, of a girl after *her* seventh year is commended, O king. *Her* marriage otherwise is reprobated by the law."

Of the first of the last three passages the first line is quoted,—immetrically, incorrectly, and, probably, from memory,—and without mention of its source, in Jagannātha Tarkapanchānana's *Vivādhahangārāva*. See Colebrooke's *Digest of Hindu Law, &c.*, London edition, Vol. III., p. 328.

Mādhava says, in his commentary on the *Parāśara-smṛiti*:

जन्मतो गर्भाधानाद्वा पञ्चमाब्दात्परं शुभम् ।

कुमारीवरणं दानं मेखलाबन्धनं तथा ॥

This approves the selection of a girl, for matrimony, at an interval of five years from the time she was born or conceived.

An extract from the *Jyotiṛ-nibandha* may be added, for its superstitious oddity:

षडब्दमध्ये नोद्वाह्या कन्या वर्षद्वयं यतः ।

सोमो भुङ्क्ते तत्सद्वन्धर्वस्य तथानलः ॥

"A maiden should not be married within *her* sixth year: because Soma

cripple or deformed.\* He must not marry a girl who is vicious, or unhealthy, of low origin, or labouring

sent practice of the nuptials of children.† The obligation imposed upon a man, of a life of perfect continence, until he is more than thirty, is singularly Malthusian.

[the Moon?] enjoys *her* for two years; then, in like manner, a *gandharva* and, similarly, Fire."

She has, thus, three unhuman husbands, before she is wived by a man.

In the *Vājnavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 71, we read:

सोमः शीचं ददौ स्त्रीणां गन्धर्वश्च शुभां गिरम् ।

पावकः सर्वमेध्यत्वं मेध्या वै योषितो ह्यतः ॥

"On women Soma bestowed brilliancy; a *gandharva*, a pleasant voice; Fire, universal purity. Therefore are women truly pure."

The author of the *Mitāksharā*, in commenting on this stanza, expresses himself much to the effect of the *Jyotir-nibandha*. His words are: परिणयनात्पूर्वं सोमगन्धर्ववह्नयः स्त्रियो भुक्ता यथाक्रमं तासां शी-चमधुरवचनसर्वमेध्यत्वानि दत्तवन्तः ।

For similar ideas, see the *Panchatantra*, ed. Kosegarten, pp. 188, 189. An anonymous stanza is there given, authorizing the nuptials of a damsel of eight years of age.

\* The original has *adhikāṅgi*, "possessing superfluous limbs."

† Professor Wilson must have overlooked "*Manu*", IX., 94:

विंशद्वर्षो वहेत्कन्यां ह्यष्टां द्वादशवार्षिकीम् ।

अष्टवर्षोऽष्टवर्षा वा धर्मं सीदति सत्वरः ॥

"Let a man of thirty years wed a lovely maid of twelve; or a man of twenty-four, a *maid* of eight. If his virtue is being impaired, let him be expeditious."

The meaning seems to be, according to Kullūka, that, in case a young man is disposed to usurp on the rights of the married state, he should lose no time in taking a wife; provided, always, that his proficiency in scriptural knowledge is satisfactory.

In the *Nirṇayasindhu's* citation of the preceding stanza, द्वादशवर्षः, 'of sixteen years', is read for अष्टवर्षः, 'of twenty-four years.' But Medhātithi and Kullūka know nothing of this lection.

It has just been evinced, that, as to the marriage of an immature girl, venerable warrant is adducible for it, beyond the pages of the *Vishnu-purāṇa*. The point, whether this work does not constructively furnish justification of such a practice, is discussed in a note near the end of Chapter XVI. of the present Book.

under disease;\* one who has been ill brought up; one who talks improperly; one who inherits some malady from father or mother; one who has a beard, or who is of a masculine appearance; one who speaks thick, or thin, or croaks like a raven; one who keeps her eyes shut, or has the eyes very prominent; one who has hairy legs, or thick ankles; or one who has dimples in her cheeks, when she laughs.<sup>1</sup> Let not a wise and prudent man marry a girl of such a description: nor let a considerate man wed a girl of a harsh skin; or one with white nails; or one with red eyes, or with very fat hands and feet; or one who is a dwarf, or who is very tall; or one whose eyebrows meet, or whose teeth are far apart and resemble tusks. Let a householder marry a maiden† who is, in kin, at least five degrees remote from his mother, and seven from his father, with the ceremonies enjoined by law.<sup>2</sup>

"The forms of marriage are eight,—the Bráhma, Daiva, Ársha, Prájápatya, Ásura, Gándharva, Rákshasa, and Paisácha; which last is the worst:<sup>3</sup> but

<sup>1</sup> For the credit of Hindu taste, it is to be noticed, that the commentator observes, the hemistich in which this last clause occurs is not found in all copies of the text.

<sup>2</sup> See Manu, III., 5, &c.

<sup>3</sup> These different modes of marriage are described by Manu, III., 27, &c.

\* If only as doing away with something like tautology, the reading *atiroshīṁ*, 'very irascible,' is to be preferred to *atirogīṁ*. Just before we have *arogām*, rendered "unhealthy".

† The term used hereabouts is *kanyā*.

the caste to which either form has been enjoined, as lawful, by inspired sages, should avoid any other mode of taking a wife. The householder who espouses a female connected with him by similarity of religious and civil obligations, and along with her discharges the duties of his condition, derives, from such a wife, great benefits."

---

## CHAPTER XI.

Of the *Sadácháras* or perpetual obligations of a householder. Daily purifications, ablutions, libations, and oblations: hospitality: obsequial rites: ceremonies to be observed at meals, at morning and evening worship, and on going to rest.

SAGARA (again) said (to Aurva): "Relate to me, Muni, the fixed observances\* of the householder, by attending to which he will never be rejected from this world or the next."

Aurva replied to him thus: "Listen, prince, to an account of those perpetual observances by adhering to which both worlds are subdued. Those who are called *Sádhus* (saints) are they who are free from (all) defects; and the term *Sat* means the same, or *Sádhu*. Those practices or observances (*Ácháras*†) which they follow are, therefore, called *Sadácháras*, 'the institutions or observances of the pious.'<sup>1</sup> The seven *Rishis*,

<sup>1</sup> Sir William Jones renders *Áchára* (आचार), 'the immemorial customs of good men'; (Manu, II., 6); following the explanation of Kullúka Bhaṭṭa, which is much the same as that of our text: आचारः कम्बलवल्कलाद्याचरणरूपः। साधूनां धार्मिकाणाम्। 'Áchára means the use of blankets, or bark, &c., (for dress). *Sádhus* are pious (or just) men.' *Ácháras* are, in fact, all ceremonial and

\* *Sadáchára*.

† My MSS. have *ácharana*.

‡ It is आचारः • • साधूनां that Sir William Jones thus renders. Colebrooke expresses *áchára* by "law", "conduct", "received usage", "established usage", "immemorial good customs", &c. &c. Medhātithi explains it by *vyavahára*, 'practice'.

the Manus, the patriarchs, are they who have enjoined and who have practised these observances. Let the wise man awake in the Muhūrta of Brahmā (or, in the third Muhūrta,—about two hours before sunrise\*), and, with a composed mind, meditate on two of the objects of life (virtue and wealth), and on topics not incompatible with them. Let him, also, think upon desire, as not conflicting with the other two, and, thus, contemplate, with equal indifference, the three ends of life, for the purpose of counteracting the unseen consequences of good or evil acts. Let him avoid wealth and desire, if they give uneasiness to virtue; and abstain from virtuous or religious acts, if they involve misery, or are censured by the world.<sup>1</sup>† Having risen,

purificatory observances, or practices, not expiatory, which are enjoined either by the Vedas or the codes of law.

<sup>1</sup> That is, he may omit prescribed rites, if they are attended with difficulty or danger: he may forego ablutions, if they dis-

\* Part of this is the commentator's explanation: ब्राह्मे मुहूर्ते । सूर्यो-  
दयात्पूर्वं तृतीये मुहूर्ते । Pītāmaha is cited, in the *Śabdakalpadrūma*,  
as ruling:

रात्रिश्च पश्चिमे यामे मुहूर्तो ब्राह्म उच्यते ।

† परित्यजेदर्थकामौ धर्मपीडाकरी नृप ।

धर्ममप्यसुखोदकं लोकविकृष्टमेव च ॥

We read, to the same effect, and almost in the same words, in the  
*Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 176:

परित्यजेदर्थकामौ यौ स्यातां धर्मवर्जितौ ।

धर्मं चाप्यसुखोदकं लोकविकृष्टमेव च ॥

This stanza Sir William Jones thus translates: "Wealth and pleasures, repugnant to law, let him shun, and even lawful acts which may cause future pain or be offensive to mankind."

Kullūka instances, as illustrative of the "lawful acts," etc., the giving away, in charity, of his entire possessions by a man on whom a large

he must offer adoration to the sun,\* and then, in the south-west† quarter, at the distance of a bow-shot or more, or any where remote from the village,‡ void the impurities of nature. The water that remains after washing his feet he must not§ throw away into the court-yard of the house. A wise man will never void

agree with his health; and he may omit pilgrimage to holy shrines, if the way to them is infested by robbers.¶ Again, it is enjoined, in certain ceremonies, to eat meat, or drink wine:‡ but these practices are generally reprehended by pious persons; and a man may, therefore, disregard the injunction.

family depends for subsistence, and the immolation of a cow on the *madhyamāshtakā* and other holydays. The *madhyamāshtakā*—sometimes called *mānśāstakā*—falls, according to one authority, on the eighth day after the full moon in Māgha.

One occasion on which it seems that a cow was formerly slain, and that for purposes of hospitality, was a marriage. See Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 203, 208.

\* "Rising at break of day, let him go to stool", says the Sanskrit:

ततः कब्जं समुत्थाय कुर्यान्नैवं नरेश्वर ।

The Translator mistook, for *mitra*, 'the sun', *maitra*, *n.*, 'alvine exoneration', which is said to come from *maitra*, *m.*, 'the anus', of which the Sun is the guardian deity. Ratnagarbha etymologizes *maitra*. Also see the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 152, and Kullūka's gloss thereon.

† I have corrected "south-east"; the original being *nairṭityām*. This is a compromise between the directions to be observed by day and by night, or north and south, respectively. See the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 50, and our text, just below.

‡ Thus, or by *grāma*, the commentator explains *bhū*, the word here used. The Sanskrit adds *दूरादवसथात्*, which means, according to the commentary, "or, if that be impracticable, at least away from the house."

§ I have inserted this word, translating *na*. Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 151.

¶ Or by tigers. The commentary has: व्याघ्रचोरादिसमाक्रान्ततीर्थ-गमनादि ।

¶ Drinking spirits at the *sautrāmāñi*, &c., says the commentator.



urine on his own shadow, nor on the shadow of a tree, nor on a cow, nor against the sun, nor on fire, nor against the wind,\* nor on his Guru, nor on men of the three first castes;† nor will he pass either excrement in a ploughed field, or pasturage, or in the company of men, or on a high road, or in rivers and the like which are holy,‡ or on the bank of a stream, or in a place where bodies are burnt, or anywhere quickly.§ By day, let him void them with his face to the north, and, by night, with his face to the south, when he is not in trouble. Let him perform these actions in silence, and without delay; covering his head with a cloth, and the ground with grass. Let him not take, for the purposes of cleanliness, earth from an ant-hill, or a rat-hole,|| or from water, or from the residue of what has been so used, nor soil that has been employed to plaster a cottage, nor such as has been thrown up by insects,¶ or turned over by the plough. All such kinds of earth let him avoid as means of purification. One handful is sufficient, after voiding urine; three, after passing ordure: then, ten handfuls are to be rubbed over the left hand, and seven over both hands.\*\* Let him, then, rinse his mouth with water

\* See p. 140, *infra*, text and note \*\*.

† *Dvijāti*.

‡ "Places of pilgrimage", *tīrtha*. Insert "or in water", *nāpsu*.

§ My MSS. give nothing corresponding to "or anywhere quickly." Probably the Translator read *nāsu* for *nāpsu*. See the last note.

|| Literally, "dug up by a rat", *mīshakotkhāta*.

¶ *अन्तःप्राणवपन्न*. *Antāḥprāṇin* signifies *kita*, "a worm", alleges the commentator. But he mentions a variant yielding *anuprāṇin*, "a minute animal."

\*\* एका लिङ्गे गुदे तिस्रो दश वामकरे तथा ।

हस्तद्वये च सप्तान्या मूदः शीचोपपादिकाः ॥

Compare, herabonts, the *Vasishṭha-smṛiti*, Chapter VI.

that is pure, neither fetid, nor frothy, nor full of bubbles, and again use earth to cleanse his feet, washing them well with water. He is to drink water, then, three times, and twice wash his face with it; and, next, touch, with it, his head, the cavities of the eyes, ears, and nostrils,\* the forehead,† the navel, and the‡ heart.¹§

¹ Many of these directions are given by Manu, IV.,

\* Instead of "his head, the cavities of the eyes, ears and nostrils," read "the orifices of the head." The original,—see note §, below,—*śirshanyāni khāni*, is thus glossed by the commentator: शीर्षस्थानि ।

शिरःस्थानि । खानि । इन्द्रियच्छिद्राणि ।

† Read "head" *mūrdhan*; and insert "arms", *bāhū*.

‡ I should render *hṛdaya* by "breast".

§ चिः पिबेत्सलिलं तेन तथा द्विः परिमार्जयेत् ।

शीर्षस्थानि ततः खानि मूर्धानं च समालभेत् ।

बाहू नाभिं च तोयेन हृदयं चापि संस्पृशेत् ॥

Of all the ancient Hindu legislators, Dakṣha is most minutiose on the subject of daily ablution. His injunctions, as incorrectly cited by Ratnagarbha, I have rectified by reference to two manuscripts and the Calcutta edition of the *Dakṣha-smṛiti*; and I have compared them as quoted in various ceremonial treatises, more particularly in an ancient copy of Āśvāditya's *Karmapradīpabhāṣya*. The passage, as I would read it, is as follows:

प्रचाक्ष्य हस्ती पादौ च चिः पिबेदम्बु वीक्षितम् ।

संवृत्याङ्गुष्ठमूलेन द्विः प्रमृज्यात्ततो मुखम् ॥

संहत्य तिसृभिः पूर्वमास्त्रमेवमुपस्पृशेत् ।

ततः पादौ समभ्युक्ष्य अङ्गानि समुपस्पृशेत् ॥

अङ्गुष्ठेन प्रदेशिन्या घ्राणं पश्चादनन्तरम् ।

अङ्गुष्ठानामिकाभ्यां च चक्षुःश्रोत्रं पुनः पुनः ॥

कनिष्ठाङ्गुष्ठयोर्नाभिं हृदयं तु तलेन वै ।

सर्वाभिस्तु शिरः पश्चाद्बाहू चाग्नेयं संस्पृशेत् ॥

"After bathing his hands and feet, let him thrice sip water in sight, i. e., any at hand. Then let him compress his mouth, and rub it twice with the root of his thumb. Let him, likewise, touch his face with three fingers joined, and, next, wet his feet again, and touch his limbs. Im-

Having, finally, washed his mouth, a man is to clean and dress his hair, and to decorate his person, before a glass, with unguents, garlands, and perfumes.\* He is, then, according to the custom† of his caste, to acquire wealth, for the sake of subsistence, and, with a lively faith, worship the gods.‡ Sacrifices with the acid juice, those with clarified butter, and those with offerings of food,§ are comprehended in wealth: wherefore, let men exert themselves to acquire wealth for these purposes.<sup>1</sup>

45, &c. ||

<sup>1</sup> That is, wealth is essential to the performance of religious rites; and it is, also, the consequence of performing them. A

mediately afterwards, *let him touch his nose with his thumb and fore-finger; and his eyes and ears, again and again, with his thumb and ring-finger; and his navel and breast, with the root of his little finger and thumb. Let him, afterwards, touch the crown of his head with all his fingers, and, finally, his arms.*"

The genuineness of the fourth line is open to suspicion. It is wanting in several places where these stanzas are adduced.

\* आचान्तश्च ततः कुर्यात्पुमान्केशप्रसाधनम् ।

आदर्शोज्जनमङ्गल्यदूर्वावालम्बनानि च ॥

Professor Wilson must have thought that he saw -माल्य°, instead of -मङ्गल्य°, in the original. For "garlands, and perfumes," read "saudal, *dūrvā*, &c." *Durvā* ordinarily means a certain sweet-scented grass. The oil expressed from it seems to be here denoted.

† *Dharma*, "duty".

‡ The original is simply *japet*, "let him pray inaudibly."

§ These sacrifices are called, in the original, *somasahsthā*, *haviṣahsthā*, and *pākasahsthā*. On the meaning of *pāka*,—"little", or 'good'—in *pākasahsthā*, see Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 203; or Dr. Stenzler's edition of Āśwālāyana's *Gṛihyasūtra*, Part II., p. 2, § 2, 2.

|| On the topic of ablution, see, particularly, *ibid.*, II., 60, 61; also, the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 20, etc.

"As preparatory to all established rites of devotion, the householder should bathe in the water of a river, a pond, a natural channel,\* or a mountain torrent; or he may bathe upon dry ground, with water drawn from

householder should, therefore, diligently celebrate them, that he may acquire property, and, thus, be enabled to continue to sacrifice. According to Gautama,† there are seven kinds of each of the three sorts of sacrificial rites particularized in the text,—or those in which the Soma juice, oiled butter, or food, are presented. Of the latter, according to Manu, there are four varieties,—the offering of food to the Viśwadevas, to spirits, to deceased

\* *Devakhātajala*.

† He is quoted, by the commentator, for his enumeration of sacrifices. These, as I find, on reference to the *Gautama-smṛiti*, are named as follows:

<i>Pākasamsthās.</i>	<i>Haviṣamsthās.</i>	<i>Somasamsthās.</i>
1. <i>Aṣṭakā.</i>	<i>Agnyādheya.</i>	<i>Agnishṭoma.</i>
2. <i>Pārvaia.</i>	<i>Agnihotra.</i>	<i>Atyagnishṭoma.</i>
3. <i>Śrāddha.</i>	<i>Darśapīrnamāsa.</i>	<i>Ukthya.</i>
4. <i>Śrāvāṇi.</i>	<i>Chāturmāsya.</i>	<i>Shoḍaśi.</i>
5. <i>Āgrahāyaṇi.</i>	<i>Āgrayāṇeshṭi.</i>	<i>Vājapeya.</i>
6. <i>Chaitri.</i>	<i>Nirādhapaśubandha.</i>	<i>Atirātra.</i>
7. <i>Āṣṭayujī.</i>	<i>Sautrāmāṇi.</i>	<i>Aptoryāma.</i>

They have almost identical names, throughout, but are somewhat otherwise arranged, in Nārāyaṇa's commentary on Śāṅkhāyana's *Gṛhiya-sūtra*, as adduced by Dr. Stenzler, in the *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, Vol. VII., p. 527, note 2. See, further, *ibid.*, Vol. IX., p. LXXIV. According to Āpastamba—see the *Taittirīya-saṁhitā and Commentary*, in the *Bibliotheca Indica*, Vol. I., p. 957,—several of the sacrifices of the first class bear appellations widely different from those given above. Baudhāyana, quoted in the same place, gives them all still different names.

In note § to p. 40, *supra*, a passage is cited from Ratnagarbha, comparable to which, as concerns its groupment of sacrifices,—an understanding of which demands further inquiry,—I here quote another from Śāṅkara's Commentary on the *Bṛihad-āraṇyaka Upanishad*, I., III., 1: न चाग्निहोत्रदशपूर्णमासचातुर्मास्यपशुबन्धसोमानां कर्मणां स्वतः काम्यनित्यत्वविवेकोऽस्ति ।

a well, or taken from a river, or other source, where there is any objection to bathing on the spot.<sup>1\*</sup> When bathed, and clad in clean clothes,† let him devoutly

ancestors, and to guests. II., 86.‡ The seven of Gautama§ are: offerings to progenitors on certain eighth days of the fortnight, at the full and change of the moon, at Śrāddhas generally, and to the manes on the full moon of four different months, or Śrāvaṇa, Agrahāyaṇa, Chaitra, and Āśvina.

<sup>1</sup> A person may perform his ablutions in his own house, if the weather, or occupation, prevents his going to the water. If he be sick, he may use warm water; and, if bathing be altogether injurious, he may perform the Mantra snāna, or repeat the prayers used at ablution, without the actual bath.

\* कूपेषूद्धृततोयेन स्नानं कुर्वीत वा भुवि ।  
स्नायीतोद्धृततोयेन अथवा भुव्यसंभवे ॥

The commentator adds,—somewhat as in note 1 in this page,—that he is permitted to take water to his house, for bathing, if he must; that he may substitute warm water, when necessary, for cold; and that, in exigency, it is lawful for him to make shift with a *mantra-snāna*,—in other words, to commute ablution for a prayer. Compare Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 124, 136.

† The commentator observes, that the bathing and worship here described belong to noon-day.

‡ Four *pākayajnas* are there spoken of; but their names are not specified in the text. Kullūka says they are the *vaiśvadevahoma*, *balikarman*, *nityaśrāddha*, and *atithibhojana*. These are four out of five *pākayajnas* which belong to a classification different from, and later than, that which Gautama recognizes. See p. 40, note §; and p. 93, notes 2 and 3, *supra*: also, Kullūka on the *Laws of the Mānavas*, III., 67; Dr. Stenzler's edition of Āśvalāyana's *Gṛihyasūtra*, Part II., p. 6, § 1; and Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 93.

§ The third and fourth *pākayajnas* or *pākasaṁsthās*, in Āpastamba, correspond with the first and second of Gautama. The remaining five are called *aupāsana-homa*, *vaiśvadeva*, *māsi śrāddham*, *sarpabali*, and *iśā-nabali*.

offer libations to the gods, sages,\* and progenitors, with the parts of the hand severally sacred to each. He must scatter water thrice, to gratify the gods; as many times, to please the *Āishis*; and once, to propitiate *Prajāpati*: he must, also, make three libations, to satisfy the progenitors. He must then present, with the part of the hand sacred to the manes, water to his paternal grandfather and great-grandfather, to his maternal grandfather, great-grandfather, and his father; and, at pleasure, to his own mother, and his mother's mother† and grandmother, to the wife of his preceptor, to his preceptor, his maternal uncle, and other relations,<sup>1</sup> to a dear friend, and to the king. Let him, also, after libations have been made to the gods and the rest, present others, at pleasure, for the benefit of all beings, reciting inaudibly this prayer: 'May the

---

<sup>1</sup> The whole series is thus given by Mr. Colebrooke: *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. V., p. 367.† Triple libations of *tila* (sesamum seeds) and water are to be given to the father, paternal grandfather, and great-grandfather; to the mother, maternal grandfather, great-grandfather, and great great-grandfather: and single libations are to be offered to the paternal and maternal grandmother and great-grandmother, to the paternal uncle, brother, son, grandson, daughter's son, son-in-law, maternal uncle, sister's son, father's sister's son, mother's sister, and other relatives. With exception of those, however, offered to his own immediate ancestors, which are obligatory, these libations are optional, and are rarely made.

---

\* *Āishis*.

† *Pramātri*. This word has escaped the lexicographers.

‡ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 145.

gods, demons,\* Yakshas, serpents, Gandharvas, Rákshasas, Piśáchas, Guhyakas,† Siddhas, Kúshmán-das,‡ trees, birds, fish,§ all that people the waters, or the earth, or the air, be propitiated by the water I have presented to them! This water is given, by me, for the alleviation of the pains of all those who are suffering in the realms of hell. May all those who are my kindred, and not my kindred, and who were my relations in a former life, all who desire libations from me, receive satisfaction from this water! May this water and sesamum, presented by me, relieve the hunger and thirst of all who are suffering from those inflictions, wheresoever they may be!¶ Presentations of water, given in the manner, O king, which I have described, yield gratification to all the world; and the sinless man who, in the sincerity of faith, pours out these voluntary libations obtains the merit that results from affording nutriment to all creatures.

“Having, then, rinsed his mouth, he is to offer water to the sun, touching his forehead with his hands joined, and with this prayer: ‘Salutation to Vivaswat, the radiant, the glory of Vishnú; to the pure illu-

\* The first part of this prayer is from the Sāma-veda, and is given by Mr. Colebrooke. *Asiatic Researches*, Vol. V., p. 367.¶

\* *Asura*.

† Servants of Kubera. Colebrooke calls them “unmelodious guardians of the celestial treasure.” *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 146.

‡ See Vol. I., p. 166.

§ There is no word for this, in the original.

¶ Several of my MSS. omit the stanza which this sentence translates.

¶ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 146.



minator of the world; to Savitrī, the granter of the fruit of acts!'<sup>\*</sup> He is, then, to perform the worship of the house, presenting to his tutelary deity† water, flowers, and incense. He is, next, to offer oblations with fire, not preceded by any other rite, to Brahmá.<sup>1</sup> Having invoked Prajāpati, let him pour oblations,§ reverently, to his household gods,|| to Káśyapa, and to Anumati,<sup>2</sup> in succession. The residue of the obla-

<sup>1</sup> The rite is not addressed to Brahmá, specially; but he is to be invoked to preside over the oblations offered to the gods and sages, subsequently particularized.

<sup>2</sup> Káśyapa, the son of Kaśyapa, is Áditya,¶ or the Sun. Anumati\*\* is the personified moon, wanting a digit of full. The objects and order of the ceremony here succinctly described differ from those of which Mr. Colebrooke gives an account (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VII., p. 236††), and from the form of oblations given by Ward (*Account of the Hindus*, Vol. II., p. 477); but, as

\* नमो विवस्वते ब्रह्मभास्वते विष्णुतेजसे ।  
जगत्सवित्रे शुचये सवित्रे कर्मदायिने ॥

The commentator prefers the reading ब्रह्मभास्वते, but notes ब्रह्मभास्वते.

† *Abhishta-sura*.

‡ अपूर्वमग्निहोत्रं च कुर्यात्प्राग्वह्ये ततः ।

*Apūrva* the commentator elucidates by *ananyaprakṛitika*: vide *supra*, p. 40, notes 1 and ‡. A variant, he says, is *appūrva*, 'previously sprinkled.' For the *agnihotra*, here spoken of, see p. 40, note 1; and p. 113, note †, *supra*.

§ *Āhuti*.

|| *Gṛihya*.

¶ For the twelve Ádityas, see Vol. II., p. 27, and pp. 284 *et seq.*

\*\* See Vol. I., p. 153; and Vol. II., p. 261: also, Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce*.

†† Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 152.



tion let him offer to the earth, to water, and to rain,\* in a pitcher at hand; and to Dhātṛi and Vidhātṛi, at the doors of his house; and, in the middle of it, to Brahmá. Let the wise man also offer the Bali, consisting of the residue of the oblations, to Indra, Yama,† Varuṇa, and Soma,‡ at the four cardinal points of his dwelling,§ the east and the rest; and, in the north-east quarter, he will present it to Dhanwantari.<sup>1</sup> After having thus worshipped the domestic deities, he will, next, offer part of the residue to all the gods (the Viśwadevas); then, in the north-west quarter, to Váyu

---

observed by Mr. Colebrooke, oblations are made "with such ceremonies, and in such form as are adapted to the religious rite which is intended to be subsequently performed." Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 237. ||

<sup>1</sup> See, also, Manu, III., 84, &c., and the Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 275. ¶

---

\* The ordinary reading is:

तच्छेषं मणिकेऽद्भ्योऽथ पर्जन्याय क्षिपेत्ततः ।

But the commentator notes a variant, पृथ्वीपर्जन्याद्भ्यः, which Professor Wilson seems to have preferred. And he explains मणिके — above rendered "in a pitcher at hand",—by जलाधारसन्निधी, 'near a pond.'

Personifications are, of course, intended here. The commentator calls these offerings the *bhūtayajna*. This is the same as the *baliyajna*. See p. 93, notes 2 and ||, *supra*.

† *Dharmarāja*, in the original.

‡ Substituted for Indu.

§ The Sanskrit of this sentence begins:

गृहस्य पुरुषव्याघ्र दिग्देवानपि मे शृणु ।

"Hear from me, man-tiger, the house's gods of the quarters, also."

The Translator rarely renders the vocative epithets with which this work abounds; and these constitute one of its quaintest features.

|| Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 153.

¶ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 191.

(wind); then, in all directions, to the points of the horizon,\* to Brahmá, to the atmosphere,† and to the sun; to all the gods,‡ to all beings, to the lords of beings, to the Pitris, to twilight.§ Then, taking other rice,<sup>1</sup> || let the householder, at pleasure, cast it upon a clean spot of ground, as an offering to all beings; repeating, with collected mind, this prayer: ‘May gods, men, animals, birds, saints,¶ Yakshas, serpents, demons, ghosts, goblins,\*\* trees, all that desire food given by me; may ants,†† worms, moths,‡‡ and other insects, hungered, and bound in the bonds of acts; may all obtain satisfaction from the food left them by me, and enjoy happiness! May they who have neither mother, nor father, nor relations, nor food, nor the means of preparing it, be satisfied and pleased with the food presented for their contentment!’<sup>2</sup> Inasmuch

<sup>1</sup> Or this ceremony may be practised instead of the preceding.

<sup>2</sup> This prayer is said, by Mr. Colebrooke, to be taken from the Puráṇas (Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 275).§§ He translates

\* निर्वपेद्विश्वदेवं च कर्म कुर्यादतः परम् ।

वायवे वायवे दिक्षु समस्तासु ततो दिशाम् ॥

† *Antariksha.*

‡ *Vishve devāḥ.*

§ My MSS. concur in reading:

यक्ष्माणं च समुद्दिश्य बलिं दद्यान्नरेभ्यः ।

There is nothing, here, of “twilight”. *Yakshman*, in this passage, may be Consumption, personified as a divinity. The commentary is silent. || *Anna*, ‘food’, as just below; not, necessarily, ‘rice’.

¶ *Siddha.*

\*\* *Daitya, preta, and pisācha.*

†† *Pipilika*, ‘termites’.

‡‡ *Patangaka.*

§§ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 192.

as all beings, and this food, and I, and Vishnú, are not different, I, therefore, give, for their sustenance, the food that is one with the body of all creatures. May all beings that are comprehended in the fourteen orders of existent things<sup>1</sup> be satisfied with the food bestowed, by me, for their gratification, and be delighted! Having uttered this prayer, let the devout believer cast the food upon the ground, for the nourishment\* of all kinds of beings: for the householder is, thence, the supporter of them all. Let him scatter food upon the ground, for dogs, outcasts,† birds, and all fallen and degraded‡ persons.

"The householder is then to remain, at eventide, in his court-yard, as long as it takes to milk a cow,<sup>1</sup>—or

the last clause: "May they, who have neither \* \* \* \* \* food, nor means of obtaining it." In our text, the phrase is

येषां \* \* \* \* \*  
नैवान्नसिद्धिर्न तथान्नमस्ति ।

which the commentator explains by येषामन्नं नास्ति येषां च सत्यन्ने नात्र सिद्धिः पाकसाधनं नास्तीत्यर्थः; understanding *Anna siddhi* to mean 'means of dressing food,' *Pāka sādhana*. The following passages of the prayer are, evidently, peculiar to the Vishnú Purāṇa.

<sup>1</sup> Either fourteen classes of Bhútas (or spirits); or the same number of living beings,—or eight species of divine, one of human, and five of animal, creatures.

<sup>2</sup> This, according to the commentator, is equal to the fourth part of a *Ghatiká*, which, considering the latter synonymous with

\* *Upakāra*.

† *Chandála*.

‡ *Apātra*. Some MSS. have *aputra*, 'sonless'. The former term imports 'undeserving of exequial offerings',—*śrāddhāyogya*,—says commentary B.

longer, if he pleases,—to await the arrival of a guest. Should such a one arrive, he is to be received with a hospitable welcome; a seat is to be offered to him, and his feet are to be washed, and food is to be given him with liberality,\* and he is to be civilly and kindly spoken to; and, when he departs, to be sent away, by his host, with friendly wishes.† A householder should ever pay attention to a guest who is not an inhabitant of the same village, but who comes from another place, and whose name and lineage are unknown. He who feeds himself, and neglects the poor and friendless stranger in want of hospitality, goes to hell. Let a householder who has a knowledge of Brahmá‡ reverence a guest, without inquiring his studies, his school, his practices, or his race.<sup>1</sup> §

---

Muhūrta, or one thirtieth of the day and night, would be twelve minutes. ||

<sup>1</sup> These precepts, and those which follow, are of the same tenour as those given by Manu, on the subject of hospitality (III., 99, &c.), but more detailed.

---

\* *Śraddhā*. Elsewhere the Translator renders this word by "faith".

† गच्छतश्चानुयानेन प्रीतिमुत्पादयेद्गृही ।

It is, thus, directed, that, when the guest departs, his host should bear him company,—for a short distance, only, of course. The less common reading *anuyātena* must yield the same senso. The unique lection *anupānena* might move an imaginative speculator to attribute the idea of the stirrup-cup to the ancient Hindus.

‡ The Sanskrit directs the householder to reverence his guest 'by regarding him as if he were Hiraṇyagarbha,'—*hiraṇyagarbha-buddhyā*.

§ "School," "practices," and "race" here render *gotra*, *charaṇa*, and *kula*, 'stock,' 'school', and 'family'. The commentator gives *charaṇa* two meanings,—*vedāvāntaraśākhā* and *āchāra*.

|| See Vol. I., p. 47, note 2.

"A householder should, also, at the perpetual Śrāddha,\* entertain another Brahman who is of his own country, whose family and observances are known, and who performs the five sacramental rites.† He is, likewise, to present, to a Brahman learned in the Vedas, four handfuls of food, set apart with the exclamation *Hanta*;‡ and he is to give, to a mendi-

\* *Pitrartham*, 'for the sake of the manes'. It is explained by *nitya-śrāddhārtham*, in the commentary.

† *Vide supra*, p. 93, note 2.

‡ अन्नायं च समुद्धृत्य हन्तकारोपकल्पितम् ।  
निर्वापभूतं भूपाल श्रीचियायोपपादयेत् ॥

"Let him, O king, also set apart the choicest of food, and present it, by way of appropriation, hallowed by the utterance *hanta*, to a Brāhman versed in holy writ."

The commentator says: अन्नायं भोजनाद्यनवशिष्टम् । अत्र चोक्तम् ।

यासमात्रा भवेद्विज्ञा अयं यासचतुष्टयम् ।  
अयाखिव तु चत्वारि हन्तकारं प्रचक्षते ॥

मनुष्येभ्यो हन्तेति मन्त्रेणोपकल्पितमन्नं हन्तकारोपकल्पितम् । निर्वापभूतं पृथक्कृत्य स्थापितम् ।

A stanza, the same in meaning as the one here quoted, is adduced, from Hemachandra's scholiast, in Messrs. Boehtlingk and Riou's edition of the *Abhidhānuchintāmāli*, p. 366:

यासप्रमाणं भिक्षा स्वादयं यासचतुष्टयम् ।  
अयं चतुर्गुणं प्राङ्महन्तकारं द्विजोत्तमाः ॥

*Annāgra* and *hantakāra*, rendered by 'the choicest of food' and 'the utterance *hanta*', have, thus, denoted specific quantities,—four mouthfuls and sixteen. But neither of these acceptations—which are, probably, of late date,—seems to be intended in the passage under annotation. One or other of them is there impossible.

The following is taken from the *Bṛihad-āraṇyaka Upanishad*,—V., VIII.:

वाचं धेनुमुपासीत । तस्याश्चत्वारः स्तनाः स्वाहाकारी वषट्कारी हन्तकारः स्वधाकारः । तस्यो द्वौ स्तनी देवा उपजीवन्ति स्वाहाकारं च वषट्कारं च हन्तकारं मनुष्याः स्वधाकारं पितरः । तस्याः प्राणं ऋषभो मनो वत्सः । "One should reverence speech as a cow. Hers are

cant\* religious student, three handfuls† of rice, or according to his pleasure, when he has ample means.‡ These, with the addition of the mendicant before described, are to be considered as guests; and he who treats these four descriptions of persons with hospitality acquits himself of the debt due to his fellow-men. § The guest who departs, disappointed, from any house, and proceeds elsewhere, transfers his sins to the owner of that mansion, and takes away with him such a householder's merits. || Brahmá, ¶ Prajapati, Indra,\*\* fire, the Vasus, the Sun, are present in the person of

four dugs: the utterance *swáhá*, the utterance *vashat*, the utterance *hanta*, the utterance *swadhá*. By two of her dugs, the utterance *swáhá* and the utterance *vashat*, the gods are sustained; by the utterance *hanta*, men; by the utterance *swadhá*, the manes. Life is her bull; the organ of imagination, her calf."

Of *swáhá* and *vashat* Śrīdhara says: आभ्यां हविर्दयिते देवेभ्यः; of *hantu*, हन्त इति मनुष्येभ्योऽन्नं प्रयच्छन्ति; of *swadhá*, स्वधाकारिण हि पितृभ्यः स्वधां प्रयच्छन्ति ।

For *Swáhá* and *Swadhá*, see Vol. I., p. 109; for *Vashat*, Vol. II., p. 29, notes 3 and §.

\* *Parivraj*.

† *Grāsa*, 'mouthfuls'.

‡ इच्छया च नरो दद्याद्विभवे सत्त्ववारितम् ।

§ इत्येतेऽतिथयः प्रोक्ताः प्रागुक्ता भिन्नवच्च ये ।

चतुरः पूजयन्नेतान्नृयज्ञर्णात्प्रमुच्यते ॥

"These are called guests: and one showing honour to the four above-mentioned eleemosynaries acquits," &c.

The commentator says that these persons are: the unknown Bráhman, the known Bráhman, the Bráhman versed in holy writ, and the mendicant religious student.

|| This is almost a verbal repetition of what we have had before. *Vide supra*, p. 94, text and note †. The Sanskrit here runs thus:

अतिथिर्यस्य भग्नशो गृहाद्यात्यन्यतोमुखः ।

स दत्त्वा दुष्कृतं तस्मै पुण्यमादाय गच्छति ॥

¶ Dhātī, in the original.

\*\* Substituted for Śakra.

a guest, and partake of the food (that is given to him). Let a man, therefore, be assiduous in discharging the duties of hospitality: for he who eats his food, without (bestowing any upon) a guest, feeds only upon iniquity.

"In the next place, the householder must provide food for a married damsel remaining in her father's dwelling;\* for any one who is ill; for a pregnant woman; for the aged, and the infants (of his house); and then he may eat, himself. He who eats, whilst these are yet unfed, is guilty of sin (in this life), and, when he dies, is condemned, in hell, to feed upon phlegm. So, he who eats without performing ablutions is fed, (in hell), with filth; and he who repeats not his prayers,† with matter and blood; he who eats unconsecrated food, with urine; and (he who eats) before the children and the rest (are fed, is stuffed, in Tartarus), with ordure. Hear, therefore, O king of kings, how a householder should feed, so that, in eating, no sin may be incurred, that invariable health and increased vigour may be secured, and all evils and hostile machinations may be averted.‡ Let the householder, having bathed, and offered libations to the gods§ and manes, and decorated his hand with jewels, proceed to take his meal, after having repeated the

\* *Suvāsini*.

† The *gayatri* and so forth, the commentator says.

‡ भवत्वरिष्टशान्तिश्च वैरिपक्षाभिचारिका ।

The gloss on this line is as follows: अरिष्टमशुभादृष्टं तस्य शान्तिः । वैरिपक्षाणामुत्पन्नरोगाणामभिचारिका विनाशशीलाः ।

§ Insert 'Rishis'.

(introductory) prayers, and offered oblations with fire, and having given food to guests, to Brahmans, to his elders, and to his family. He must not eat with a single garment on, nor with wet hands and feet, but dressed in clean clothes, perfumed, and wearing garlands of flowers: he must not eat with his face to any intermediate point of the horizon, but fronting the east or the north:\* and thus, with a smiling countenance, happy and attentive, let him partake of food, of good quality, wholesome, boiled with clean water,† procured from no vile person, nor by improper means, nor improperly cooked.‡ Having given a portion to his hungry companions, let him take his food, without reproach,§ out of a clean handsome vessel, which must not be placed upon a low stool|| (or bed). He must not eat in an unfit place, or out of season,¶ or in an incommodious attitude;\*\* nor must he first cast any of his meal into the fire. Let his food be made holy with suitable texts; let it be good of its kind: and

\* The directions he must face when bathing. See the *Laws of the Mānavas*, II., 61: and compare VIII., 37. Also *vide infra*, p. 127.

† "Boiled with clean water" translates प्रोक्षितं प्रोक्षणीदकैः, "sprinkled with water for sprinkling,"—with a view to ceremonial purification.

‡ नैव जुगुप्सावदसंस्कृतं, "not disgusting, nor unhallowed." This is to be substituted for "nor by improper means, nor improperly cooked." I find but one reading.

§ *Akupaṭa*, 'undisturbed by wrath.'

|| *Āsandi*; 'wooden, three-legged, &c.' says the commentary: दाहमयं

चिपदादि ।

¶ *Nakāle*: as at noon, or either of the twilights, it is said. The commentator adds a variant, *nikāśe*, 'not in the open air.'

\*\* *Atisankirṇe*, "in a place much littered over", I should think. The commentator says nothing.



it must not be stale, except in the case of fruit or meat;<sup>1</sup> nor must it be of dry vegetable substances, other than jujubes<sup>2</sup> or preparations of molasses; but never must a man eat of that of which the juices have

<sup>1</sup> By stale, \* as applied to meat, is intended, in this place, probably, meat which has been previously dressed, as part of an offering to the gods or manes; meat which is dressed in the first instance for an individual being prohibited; as by Yājñavalkya:† वृथामांसं वर्जयेत् । 'Let him avoid flesh killed in vain;' or, 'that which is not the residue of an offering to the gods, &c.': देवाद्यर्चनावशिष्टं यन्न भवति ।‡ So, also, Manu, V., 7. §

<sup>2</sup> By dried vegetables, &c., (शुष्कशकादिकं), is to be understood unboiled vegetables, or pot-herbs dressed without being sprinkled with water: जलोपसेकं विना पक्कम् ॥ Instead of बदरिकेभ्यः, § 'jujubes,' the reading is, sometimes, हरितिकेभ्यः, \*\* myro-

\* Paryushita means 'kept over night'. See the *Mitāksharā* on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 167; and Śrīdhara on the *Bhagavad-gītā*, XVII., 10.

† I., 167, 168.

‡ This is the *Mitāksharā*'s elucidation of the words of Yājñavalkya.

§ Add IV., 212. But V., 34, is most explicit on the enormity of the offence here denounced:

न तादृशं भवत्येनो मृगहन्तुर्धनार्थिनः ।

यादृशं भवति प्रेत्य वृथामांसानि खादतः ॥

"The sin of him who kills deer for gain is not so heinous, with respect to the punishment in another life, as that of him who eats flesh-meat in vain, or, not previously offered as a sacrifice." Sir William Jones's Translation.

|| The commentary further says, that the bare mention of 'pot-herbs, &c.' implies, that they are unaccompanied by fried grain and the like: शकादिकं सत्त्वादिकं विनैति शेषः ।

¶ I nowhere find this reading, but बादरिकेभ्यः, 'preparations of jujubes,' according to the gloss, बदरविकारिभ्यः.

\*\* The reading preferred by the commentator, and explained by अपक्वलेह्यादिभ्यः, "things to be licked, and the like, uncooked."

been extracted.<sup>1</sup> Nor must a man eat so as to leave no residue (of his meal), except in the case of flour-cakes,\* honey, water, curds, and butter.† Let him, with an attentive mind, first taste that which has a sweet flavour: he may take salt and sour things, in the middle course, and finish with those which are pungent and bitter. The man who commences his meal with fluids, then partakes of solid food, and finishes with fluids again, will ever be strong and healthy. In this manner, let him feed without fault, silent, and contented with his food; taking, without uttering a word, to the extent of five handfuls, for the nutriment of the vital principle.‡ Having eaten sufficiently, the householder is, then, to rinse his mouth, with his face turned towards the east or the north;§ and, having again sipped water, he is to wash his hands, from the wrist downwards.|| With a pleased and tranquil spirit, he is, then, to take a seat,¶ and call to memory his tutelary deity;\*\* and then he is thus to pray: 'May fire, excited by air, convert this food into the earthly ele-

---

balans.' The other term, गुडपक्केभ्यः, is explained 'sweetmeats.'†† The construction here, however, is somewhat obscure.

<sup>1</sup> As oil-cake, or the sediment of anything after expression.

---

\* The first edition exhibits "flour, cakes"; a typographical oversight. The Sanskrit word is *saktu*. † *Sarpis*, 'clarified butter.'

‡ *Prājādi*.

§ *Vide supra*, p. 125, note \*.

|| "From the wrist downwards" is to render *mūlatas*, which the commentary explains by *kaphonī-paryantam*, 'as far as the elbow.'

¶ *Kṛtāsana-parigrahaḥ*, 'his wife being seated.'

\*\* *Abhishta-devatā*, in the plural.

†† लड्डुकादिभ्यः । गुडभक्षेभ्य इति पाठे स एवार्थः । Commentary.

ments of this frame, and, in the space afforded by the ethereal atmosphere, cause it to digest, and yield me satisfaction!\* May this food, in its assimilation, contribute to the vigour of the earth, water, fire, and air of my body, and afford unmixed† gratification!‡ May Agasti, Agni, and submarine fire effect the digestion of the food of which I have eaten! May they grant me the happiness which its conversion into nutriment engenders; and may health (ever) animate my form! May Vishnu, who is the chief principle of all invested with bodily structure and the organs of sense, be propitiated by my faith in him, and influence the assimilation of the invigorating food which I have eaten! For, verily, Vishnu is the eater, and the food, and the nutriment:§ and, through this belief, may that which

\* अग्निराष्याययत्वन्नं पार्थिवं पवनेरितः ।

दत्तावकाशं नभसा जरयत्वस्तु मे सुखम् ॥

The comment on this runs thus: पवनेरितो वह्निर्नभसा दत्तावकाशं मया भुक्तमन्नं जरयतु । ततश्चान्नरसेन पार्थिवं देहधातुमाष्याययत्विति । According to this, the stanza signifies: "May fire, excited by air, effect the digestion of any food under heaven, eaten by me; and then may it, viz., fire, by the juices of food, prosper the earthy elements of my body: may there be happiness to me!" Independently of the scholiast, however, one would feel inclined to translate as follows: "May fire, excited by air, prosper all earthy food under heaven, and cause it to be digested: may there be happiness to me!"

† *Ayāhata*, 'uninterrupted.'

‡ Nearly all my MSS. here interpolate, if they do not substitute for what just precedes, as follows:

प्राणापानसमानानामुदानव्यानथीस्तथा ।

अन्नं पुष्टिकरं चास्तु ममास्त्वव्याहृतं सुखम् ॥

The copies containing the commentary give this unimportant stanza, but in such a way, in some, that it is doubtful as to its genuineness. It is left unexplained. For अपान, &c., see Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce*.

§ Read "digestion", *pariśāma*.

I have eaten be digested!"\*

"Having repeated this prayer, the householder should rub his stomach with his hand, and, without indolence, perform such rites as confer repose; passing the day in such amusements as are authorized by holy writings and are not incompatible with the practices of the righteous, until the Sandhyá, when he must engage in pious meditation.† At the Sandhyá at the close of the day, he must perform the usual rites before the sun has quite set; and, in the morning, he must perform them before the stars have disappeared.‡ The morning and evening rites must never

\* So Manu, II., 101, § and IV., 93. ||

\* विष्णुः समस्तेन्द्रियदेहदेहि-  
प्रधानभूतो भगवान्यथैकः ।  
सत्येन तेनान्नमशेषमेत-  
दारोग्यदं मे परिणाममेतु ॥

विष्णुरत्ता तथैवान्नं परिणामश्च वै यथा ।  
सत्येन तेन वै भुक्तं जीर्यत्वन्नमिदं तथा ॥

The first stanza should, rather, be rendered: "Just as the holy Vishnú, the ultimate source of all the organs of sense, bodies, and embodied souls, is one, so, by this truth, may all this food, health-giving, be digestible to me." For *pradhána*, see Vol. I., p. 20, note \*.

† ततः संध्यामुपतिष्ठेत्समाहितः ।

‡ दिनान्तसंध्यां सूर्येण पूर्वामृचैर्युतां बुधः ।

उपतिष्ठेद्यथान्यायं सम्यगाचम्य पार्थिव ॥

As bearing on this, the commentator adduces a couplet from some *Smṛiti*:

प्रातः संध्यां सनच्चामुपासीत यथाविधि ।

सादित्यां पश्चिमां संध्यामर्धास्तमितभास्कराम् ॥

§ पूर्वां संध्यां जपंस्तिष्ठेत्सावित्रीमार्कदर्शनात् ।

पश्चिमां तु समासीनः सम्यगुच्चविभावनात् ॥

॥ उत्थायावश्यकं कृत्वा कृतशौचः समाहितः ।

पूर्वां संध्यां जपंस्तिष्ठेत्स्वकाले चापरां चिरम् ॥

be neglected, except at seasons of impurity, \* anxiety, sickness, or alarm. He who is preceded by the sun, in rising, or sleeps when the sun is setting,—unless it proceed from illness and the like,—incurs guilt which requires atonement;† and, therefore, let a man rise before the sun, in the morning, and sleep not until after he has set.‡ They who sinfully omit both the morning§ and the evening service go, after death, to the hell of darkness.|| In the evening, then, having again dressed food, let the wife (of the householder), in order to (obtain the fruit of) the Vaiśwadeva rite, give food, without prayers,¶ to outcasts and unclean spirits.\*\* Let the householder himself, according to his means, again show hospitality to any guest who may arrive; welcoming him with the salutation of evening,†† water for his feet, a seat, a supper, and a bed. The sin of want of hospitality to a guest who comes after sunset is eight times greater than that of turning away one

\* *Sūtakāśaucha*. *Sūtaka* is ceremonial uncleanness resulting from the birth of a child; *āśaucha*, that resulting from death. Commentary.

† Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, II., 221:

सूर्येण ह्यभिनिर्मुक्तः शयानोऽभ्युदितश्च यः ।

प्रायश्चित्तमकुर्वीणो युक्तः स्थान्महतेनसा ॥

‡ तस्मादनुदिते सूर्ये समुत्थाय महीपते ।

उपतिष्ठन्नरः संध्यामखपंश्च दिनान्तजाम् ॥

§ See, on the sinfulness of this omission, Vol. II., p. 252.

|| *Tāmīra*. See Vol. II., p. 215, notes || and ¶.

¶ Instead of पत्न्यमन्तं, “wife”, “without prayers”, some MSS. read पत्न्या सार्धं, ‘with his wife.’ The commentator notices this variant.

\*\* In the original, अपचादिभ्यः. *Ādi*, ‘etc.’, is here rendered by “unclean spirits.”

†† *Prahwa-svāgatokti* means ‘a salutation and a welcome’; *prahwa* being explained by *prahwatwa*, i. e., *prāṇāma*. But, in several MSS., the reading is *prahwaṅ*, ‘complaisant.’

who arrives by day. A man should, therefore, most especially show respect to one who comes to him in the evening, for shelter; as the attentions that gratify him will give pleasure to all the gods. Let the householder, then, according to his ability, afford a guest food, pot-herbs, water, a bed, a mat, or, if he can do no more, ground on which to lie.\*

"After eating his evening meal, and having washed his feet, the householder is to go to rest. His bed is

\* शयनस्रस्तारमहीप्रदानैरथवापि तम् ।

So read most of my MSS. The commentary says: शयनं कम्बलादि । स्रस्तारः कटतुणादिः । मही स्थलमात्रमपि । Several MSS. of the text, and one of the commentary, have *prastara*, for *srastara*; one MS. has *srastara* altered into *sahistara*, 'a couch'; and one has *svastara*. "Bed" denotes, then, 'a blanket, &c.'; and the *srastara*, which the Translator calls "mat", consists of 'a mat, straw, etc.' In the *Laws of the Mānavas*, II., 204, the reading, according to Kullūka, is *srastara*; but he does not explain it. Sir William Jones gives "a pavement of stones." Medhātithi has the lection *prastara*, which he defines to be: दर्भादितुणाकीर्ण आस्रारः, 'a rug strewed with *darbha* or other grass.' In Gulzār Pandit's Hindi version of the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, *srastara* is rendered *chalāi*, 'mat'. In the unfinished Calcutta translation of the same Code,—made, I am told, by Tārāchandra Chakravartin,—this term is interpreted "a seat made of sprouts and leaves", with the following comment: "*Srastara* is a word which is not much in use. It is not found in the Sanskrita dictionaries commonly consulted, nor even in the voluminous compilation of Dr. Wilson; and yet, unaccountable as the thing must appear, the word is left unexplained by the commentator [Kullūka]. We have found it, however, with the meaning given above, in a dictionary which was compiled and published some years ago, and is entitled *Prānakṛishṇa-śabdāmbudhi*. These circumstances considered, it will not appear improbable, that Sir William Jones took it to be a mistake, in the manuscript, for *prastara*, 'stone'; or that he found the word to be *prastara*, in his manuscript, and gave the rendering accordingly." The *Śabdāmbudhi*, ed. of 1856, defines *srastara* 'seat', 'support for sitting.' Finally, *srastara*, on the faith of the *Śabdakalpādruma*, is found in the *Suddhitattva*, and is equivalent to *āsana*, 'seat.'

The word *prastara* recurs in p. 150, *infra*.

to be entire, and made of wood; \* it is not to be scanty, nor cracked, nor uneven, nor dirty, nor infested by insects, nor without a bedding: and he is to sleep with his head either to the east or to the south: any other position is unhealthy. In due season, a man should approach his wife, when a fortunate asterism† prevails, in an auspicious moment, and on even nights;‡ if she is not unbathed,§ sick, unwell,|| averse, angry,¶ pregnant,\*\* hungry, or over-fed. He should be, also, free from similar imperfections, should be neatly attired and adorned, and animated by tenderness and affection.†† There are certain days on which unguents, flesh, and women are unlawful; as the eighth and fourteenth lunar days, new moon and full moon,<sup>1</sup> and the

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, IV., 128.‡‡

\* This will do, in default of one of ivory, observes the commentator. A variant is *ekadārumāya*, 'made of a single pine', apparently. Oriental cots are light and easily portable.

† *Purnamāyāśhe*. The asterisms referred to are, according to the commentator, ten in number: Aśvini, Kṛttikā, Rohiṇi, Punarvasu, Pushya, Hasta, Anurādhā, Śravaṇa, Pūrvabhādrapadā, Uttarbhādrapadā.

: ज्येष्ठयुग्मासु रात्रिषु. Commentary: ऋतुकालमारभ्य षष्ठ्यष्टम्यादिषु रात्रिषु । तत्रापि ज्येष्ठासु वृद्धासु उत्तरोत्तरं शुभास्वित्यर्थः ।

§ After her courses. Commentary. || *Rajaswālā*, 'menstruous.'

¶ There is an omission, here, of "not an object of evil report," *nā-praśastām*; *apraśasta* meaning, the scholiast says, परिवादादिदूषित.

\*\* The original adds other epithets, besides the two, that follow in the translation:

नादक्षिणां नान्यकामां नाकामां नान्ययोषितम् ।

शुक्लामामतिभुक्तां वा स्वयं विभिर्गुणैर्युतः ॥

†† स्नातः स्रग्मन्धृक्स्त्रीतो नाध्मातः शुधितोऽपि वा ।

सकामः सानुरागश्च व्यवयं पुरुषो व्रजेत् ॥

:: अमावास्यामष्टमीं च पौर्णमासीं चतुर्दशीम् ।

ब्रह्मचारी भवेन्नित्यमप्युती स्नातको द्विजः ॥



entrance of the sun into a new sign. On these occasions, the wise will restrain their appetites, and occupy themselves in the worship of the gods, as enjoined by holy writ, in meditation, and in prayer: and he who behaves differently will fall into a hell where ordure will be his food.\* Let not a man stimulate his desires by medicines, nor gratify them with unnatural objects,† or in public or holy places. Let him not think incontinently of another's wife, much less address her to that end; for such a man will be born, in future life, as a creeping insect.‡ He who commits adultery is punished both here and hereafter: for his days, in this world, are cut short; and, when dead, he falls into hell. Thus considering, let a man approach his own wife in the proper season, or even at other times.”§

\* This clause about punishment is not found in my MSS.

† Two terms used in the original—for which see note § in the present page,—are thus expounded by the commentator: अन्ययोनी । अश्वदि-  
योनी । अयोनी । मुखादौ । See, further, Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dic-  
tionary*, article अयोनि.

‡ This explanation of the text is taken from the commentary.

§ The conclusion of this chapter is much abridged, as here translated.  
The original is as follows:

चतुर्दशष्टमी चैव अमावास्याय पूर्णिमा ।  
पक्षाष्टितानि राजेन्द्र रविसंक्रान्तिरेव च ॥  
तैलस्त्रोमांससंभोगी पर्वस्त्रितेषु वै पुमान् ।  
विण्मूत्रभोजनं नाम प्रयाति नरकं मृतः ॥  
अशेषपर्वस्त्रितेषु तस्मात्संयमिभिर्वर्धितः ।  
भाव्यं सक्कास्त्रदेवेज्याध्यानजपपरैर्नरैः ॥  
नान्ययोनावयोनी वा नोपयुक्तौषधस्तथा ।  
द्विजदेवगुरुणां च व्यवधी नायमे भवेत् ॥  
चैत्रचत्वरतीरेषु गोष्ठे नैव चतुष्पथे ।  
नैव रश्मिशानोपवनसलिलेषु महीपते ॥



प्रोक्तपर्वस्वशेषेषु नैव भूपाल संधयोः ।  
 गच्छेद्वावायं मतिमान्न मूत्रोच्चारपीडितः ॥  
 पर्वस्वभिगमोऽधन्यो दिवौ पापप्रदो नृप ।  
 भुवि रोगावहो नृणामप्रशस्तो जलाशये ॥  
 परदारान्न गच्छेच्च मनसापि कदाचन ।  
 किमु वाचास्त्रिवन्धोऽपि नास्ति तेषु व्यवयिनाम् ॥  
 मृतो नरकमभ्येति हीयतेऽत्रापि चायुषः ।  
 परदारगतिः पुंसामुभयत्रापि सीदति ॥  
 इति मत्वा स्वदारेषु ऋतुमत्सु बुधो व्रजेत् ।  
 यथोक्तदोषहीनेषु सकामेष्वनृतावपि ॥

---

## CHAPTER XII.

Miscellaneous obligations, purificatory, ceremonial, and moral.

AURVA continued.—“Let a respectable householder ever venerate the gods, kine, Brahmans, saints,\* aged persons, and holy teachers. Let him observe the two daily Sandhyás, and offer oblations to fire. Let him dress in untorn garments, use delicate herbs and flowers, wear emeralds and other precious stones, keep his hair smooth and neat, scent his person with agreeable perfumes, and always go handsomely attired, decorated with garlands of white flowers.† Let him never appropriate another's property, nor address him with the least unkindness. Let him always speak amiably, and with truth, and never make public another's faults. Let him not desire another's prosperity, nor seek his enmity. Let him not mount upon a crazy vehicle, nor take shelter under the bank of a river, (which may fall upon him). A wise man will not form a friendship, nor walk in the same path, with one who is disesteemed, who is a sinner, or a drunkard,‡ who has many enemies, or who is lousy,§ with a hariat, or her gallant, with a pauper,|| or a liar, with a prodi-

---

\* *Siddha*.

† सदानुपहृते वस्त्रे प्रशस्ताश्च तथौषधीः ।  
 गारुडानि च रत्नानि विभृयात्प्रयतो नरः ॥  
 प्रस्निग्धामलकेशश्च सुगन्धिशार्वेशधृक् ।  
 सिताः सुमनसो हृद्या विभृयाच्च नरः सदा ॥

‡ *Patita and unmatta*.

§ *Atikilaka*, 'very verminous.'

|| *Kshudra*. It is glossed अल्पलाभोत्पिक्त, 'elated by petty gain.'

gal, a slanderer, or a knave. Let not a man bathe against the strength of a rapid stream, nor enter a house on fire, nor climb\* to the top of a tree, nor (in company) clean his teeth or blow† his nose, nor gape without covering his mouth, nor clear his throat,‡ nor

\* As will be seen below, to climb a tree to any height, apparently, is considered to be objectionable. The heterogeneous collection of maxims dictated by prudence, propriety, and superstition, of which this chapter is, in good part, made up, may be fitly accompanied by the sub-joined extract from Varadarāja's *Girvāṇapadamānjari*, or, as the work is called, in one copy, Dhruvādhirāja's *Girvāṇavāgmanjari* or *Girvāṇa-labdapadamānjari*: सर्वत्र दुराचाराः सन्त्येव । तथा हि । दक्षिणदेशे कलौ मातुलकन्यापरिणयनं दुराचारः । \* \* \* \* \* आन्ध्रदेशे हलाचरणं दुराचारः । कर्णाटकदेशे स्नानं विना भोजनं दुराचारः । ताम्रपात्रे गव्यादिनिक्षेपणं दुराचारः । महाराष्ट्र उच्छिष्टभक्षणं दुराचारः । ज्येष्ठं परित्यज्य कनिष्ठस्य विवाहकरणं दुराचारः । \* \* \* \* \* द्रविडकेरलयोः सर्वासां कुचप्रदर्शनं दुराचारः । पथि पर्युषितान्नभक्षणं दुराचारः । केरलदेशे उपरिसुरतं दुराचारः । कोङ्कणदेशे वृचारोहणं दुराचारः । गुर्जरदेशे चर्मोदकपानं तृतीयदिने रजस्वलास्नानं दुराचारः । उत्तरदेशे कलौ मांसभक्षणं दुराचारः । पर्वतदेशे क्वचित्कलौ देवरेण सुतोत्पत्तिर्दुराचारः । क्वचिक्कुक्मांसभक्षणं दुराचारः । \* \* \* \* \* सिन्धिलगौडदेशे सदा तैललेपनं दुराचारः । गौडदेशे वेदत्यागो दुराचारः । कान्यकुब्जदेशे पण्यस्यघृतपक्कभक्षणं दुराचारः । विवाहादौ भोजनसमये परस्परस्पर्शनं दुराचारः । उत्कलदेशे मुखसुरतं दुराचारः । गौडद्रविडकेरलोत्कलमैथिलेषु पक्ककलमतण्डुलोदनभक्षणं दुराचारः । सर्वेषां पथि ताम्बूलभक्षणं दुराचारः । मगधे वर्णसंकरणं दुराचारः । चर्मवत्पादपाशो-गमनं दुराचारः । काश्मीरदेशीया द्विजा केवलं यवनप्रायाः । खलु तेषां दुराचाराणां गणनैव नास्ति । Thus read, in combination, my two MSS., so far as they are legible. The book from which this passage is taken emanated, at least in one of its two forms, from Mahārāṣṭra; and it imparts instructive hints as to the opinions, on the dark side, entertained, by certain Hindus, of certain others.

† The verb here used is *kush*, 'to scratch.' The commentary says न कुणीयात् । नोत्किरेत् ।

‡ Read 'nor sigh'. The substantive here used is *śvāsa*.

cough, nor laugh loudly, nor emit wind with noise, nor bite \* his nails, nor cut grass, nor scratch the ground,<sup>1</sup> nor put his beard into his mouth, nor crumble a clod of clay; nor look upon the chief planetary bodies,† when he is unclean.‡ Let him not express disgust at a corpse; for the odour of a dead body is the produce of the moon. Let (a decent man) ever avoid, by night, the place where four roads meet, the village-tree,§ the grove adjacent to the place where bodies are burnt, and a loose woman. Let him not pass across the shadow of a venerable person, of an image of a deity, of a flag,|| of a heavenly lumi-

<sup>1</sup> Manu, IV., 71. ¶ "He who breaks clay, or cuts grass, or bites his nails, will speedily fall to ruin."

\* *Khādayet*. But a common reading is *vādayet*. He is, then, not to snap his nails, apparently.

† *ज्योतीष्यमेधः शस्तानि* । But the commentator notes a variant, *ज्योतीष्यमेध्याशस्तानि*, which he takes to mean *ज्योतीषि चक्षुःप्रतिकूलानि अमेधानि पुरीषादीनि अशस्तानि अमङ्गलानि*; that is to say, "things injurious to the eyes, filthy, and inauspicious."

But compare the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, IV., 142:

न चापि पश्येदशुचिः सुख्यो ज्योतिर्गणान्दिवि ।

‡ Here follows the line:

नम्रां परस्त्रियं चैव सूर्यं चाक्षमनोदये ।

Other objects forbidden to be looked at are, thus, 'another's naked wife, and the sun at its setting or rising.'

According to the *Laws of the Mānavas*, IV., 53, a man may not see even his own wife in a state of nudity.

§ *Chaitya-taru*. I find a variant, *chaitya-tanu*, 'the interior of a temple', perhaps.

|| The original words, occurring in the midst of a compound, are *devadhwaṇṇa*, which may mean 'the banner of a god'.

In the former edition there was an unintentional comma after "image".

¶ लोटमर्दी तृणच्छेदी नखखादी च यो नरः ।

स विनाशं व्रजत्याशु सूचकोऽशुचिरेव च ॥

nary.<sup>1</sup> Let him not travel alone through a forest, nor sleep\* by himself in an empty house.<sup>2</sup> Let him keep remote from hair, bones, thorns, filth, remnants of offerings, ashes, † chaff, and earth<sup>3</sup> wet with water in which another has bathed. Let him not receive the protection of the unworthy, nor attach himself to the dishonest. Let him not approach a beast of prey; ‡ and let him not tarry long, when he has risen from sleep. Let him not lie in bed, when he is awake; nor encounter fatigue, when it is time to rest. § A prudent

<sup>1</sup> Manu, IV., 130. ||

<sup>2</sup> Ib., id., 57. ¶

<sup>3</sup> Ib., id., 78. \*\*

\* I find *vaset*, 'dwell.'

† *Balibhasma*.

‡ Preferably, 'a vicious beast'; *vyāla* being interpreted *dushta-mṛiga*.

§ अतीव जागरस्वप्ने तद्वत्स्थानासने बुधः ।

न सेवेत तथा शय्यां व्यायामं च न रेश्वर ॥

"Let the wise man shun excess as to watching and sleeping; likewise, as to standing and sitting; and so, as to his bed and as to labour, O King."

One MS. has *jāgarasvapnau*, which we should rather expect. Perhaps the writer preferred jingle to good grammar. Further, several MSS. read *snāna*, 'bathing', for *sthāna*, 'standing'; and one gives *chiram*, 'for a long time', instead of *tathā*, 'so.' The scholiast says: अतीव जागरादीन्न च सेवेत नाभ्यसेत् । स्थानं गतिनिवृत्तिम् । आसनमुपवेशनम् । शय्यामिति शयनव्यवाययोरुपलक्षणम् । व्यायामं श्रमम् ।

॥ देवतानां गुरो राज्ञः स्नातकाचार्ययोस्तथा ।

नाक्रामेत्क्रामतश्चायां बभ्रुणो दीक्षितस्तु च ॥

According to Kullūka and Medhātithi, idols are intended by the first word of this stanza.

¶ नैकः स्वप्याच्छून्यगेहि शयानं न प्रबोधयेत् ।

\*\* अधितिष्ठेन्न केशांसु न भस्मास्थिकपालिकाः ।

न कार्पासास्थि न तुषान्दीर्घमायुर्जिजीविषुः ॥

man will avoid, even at a distance, animals with tusks and horns; and he will shun exposure to frost, to wind,\* and to sunshine. A man must neither bathe, nor sleep, nor rinse his mouth,† whilst he is naked;‡ he must not wash his mouth, nor perform any sacred rite, with his waistband unfastened; and he must not offer oblations to fire, nor sacrifice to the gods, nor wash his mouth, nor salute a Brahman, nor utter a prayer,§ with only one garment on.¶ Let him never associate with|| immoral persons: half an instant is the limit for the intercourse¶ of the righteous with them. A wise man will never engage in a dispute with either his superiors or inferiors: controversy and marriage are to be permitted only between equals. Let not a prudent man enter into contention: let him avoid unprofitable enmity. A small loss may be endured; but he should shun the wealth that is acquired by hostility.

“When a man has bathed, he must not wipe his limbs with a towel or with\*\* his hands; nor shake his hair, nor rinse his mouth before he has risen.†† Let

\* Manu, IV., 45.††

\* Read ‘the east wind’, *puro-vāta*.

† *Upasprīṣet* is so explained by the commentator.

‡ As the original of “nor salute a Brahman, nor utter a prayer”, I find, with न • प्रवर्तेत in the context, द्विजवाचनके जपे, “nor engage in prayer which he has procured to be said by the twice-born.” The commentator explains द्विजवाचनके by पुण्याहवाचने. The prayer referred to is, thus, understood to be that at a ceremony for which the Brāhmins have pronounced a certain day to be lucky.

§ Compare p. 125, *supra*. || *Sahāsita*. ¶ *Sainnikarsha*. \*\* *Snānasāti*.

†† The Sanskrit has only *utthīṭak*, implying ‘after he has stood up’.

‡‡ नान्नमद्यादेकवासा न जपः स्नानमाचरेत् ।

him not (when sitting,) put one foot over another, nor stretch forth\* his foot, in the presence of a superior, but sit, with modesty, in the posture called *Vīrásana* (or, on his knees). He must never pass round a temple upon his left hand,† nor perform the ceremony of circumambulating any venerable object in the reverse direction. A decent man will not spit, nor eject any impurity, in front of the moon, fire, the sun, water, wind, or any respectable person;‡ nor will he void urine standing, nor upon the highway. He will never step over phlegm, ordure, urine, or blood: nor is the expectoration of the mucus of the throat: allowable at the time of eating, offering sacrifices or oblations, or repeating prayers,§ or in the presence of a respectable person.

“Let not a man treat women with disrespect; nor let him put entire|| faith in them. Let him not deal impatiently with them,¶ nor set them over matters of

\* *Manu*, IV., 52. \*\*

\* This—*prasārayet*—is the commentator's explanation of *na yet*.

† अपसव्यं न गच्छेच्च देवागारचतुष्पथान् ।

‡ Add 'or nose'. The original is *क्षेष्मसिंहानकोत्सर्गः*. Commentary A adds: सिंहानकं क्षुतम् । सिंहानो नासिकोद्भवः । सिंहानकं कठिनः क्षेष्मा । क्षुतमिति केचित् ।

§ बलिमङ्गलजप्यादौ न होमे ।

|| This all-important qualification is not in the original.

¶ न चैवैर्युर्भवेत् । The commentary gives *irshu* = *asahishnu*.

“ प्रथमं प्रति सूर्यं च प्रति सोमोदकद्विजान् ।

प्रति गां प्रति वातं च प्रज्ञा नश्नति मेहतः ॥

Compare p. 110, *supra*.

importance.\* A man who is attentive to the duties of his station will not go forth from his house without

\* The Hindus, in their literature, here and there manifest a due esteem for womankind. In the subjoined extract from the *Mahābhārata* it is to be hoped that their misogyny found its utmost limit. These verses—selected from a slanderous effusion of a member of the celestial *demimonde*, the *apsaras* Panchachūdā,—are to be met with in the *Anukāṣana-parvan*, *śl.* 2212—2230 (Chapter XXXVIII., *śl.* 11—29, in the Bombay edition of *Saka* 1784—5.).

कुलीना रूपवत्यश्च नाथवत्यश्च योषितः ।  
 मर्यादांसु न तिष्ठन्ति स दोषः स्त्रीषु नारद ॥  
 अनर्थित्वान्ननुष्याणां भयात्परिजनस्य च ।  
 मर्यादायाममर्यादाः स्त्रियस्तिष्ठन्ति भर्तृषु ॥  
 न भयान्नाप्यनुक्रोशान्नार्थहेतोः कथंचन ।  
 न ज्ञातिकुलसंबन्धात्स्त्रियस्तिष्ठन्ति भर्तृषु ॥  
 यौवने वर्तमानानां मृष्टाभरणवाससाम् ।  
 नारीणां स्त्रीरवृत्तीनां स्पृहयन्ति कुलस्त्रियः ॥  
 पङ्कज्य च देवर्षे ये चान्ये कुत्सिता नराः ।  
 स्त्रीणामगम्यो लोकेऽस्मिन्नास्ति कश्चिन्नहामुने ॥  
 यदि पुंसां गतिर्ब्रह्मन्कथंचिन्नोपपद्यते ।  
 अथन्योन्यं प्रवर्तन्ते न हि तिष्ठन्ति भर्तृषु ॥  
 अलाभात्पुरुषाणां हि भयात्परिजनस्य च ।  
 वधबन्धभयाच्चापि स्त्रियंगुप्ता भवन्ति ताः ॥  
 नाप्तिस्तृप्यति काष्ठानां नापगानां महोदधिः ।  
 नान्तकः सर्वभूतानां न पुंसां वामलोचनाः ॥  
 इदमन्यश्च देवर्षे रहस्यं सर्वयोषिताम् ।  
 इद्वैव पुरुषं ह्ययं योनिः प्रकृियते स्त्रियाः ॥  
 कामानामपि दातारं कर्तारं मनसां प्रियम् ।  
 रक्षितारं न मृष्यन्ति स्वभर्तारमलं स्त्रियः ॥  
 न कामभोगान्विपुलान्नलंकारान्न संश्रयान् ।  
 तथैव बह्व मन्यन्ते यथा रत्यामनुग्रहम् ॥  
 अन्तकः पवनो मृत्युः पातालं वडवामुखम् ।  
 सुरधारा विषं सर्पा वह्निरित्येकतः स्त्रियः ॥

“Women, though born in noble families, themselves beauteous, and married to worthy husbands, remain not within the bounds of duty: this, Nārada, is the fault of women.

“From the want of a motive for deviation, or through fear of the



saluting the chaplets, \* flowers, gems, clarified butter, and venerable persons in it. At proper seasons, he will salute, respectfully, the places where four roads meet, when engaged † in offering oblations with fire. Let him liberally relieve the virtuous who are poor, and reverence those who are learned in the Vedas. ‡

people or of their kindred, unbridled women may remain within the bounds of duty, *faithful* to their husbands.

"But neither through fear of *moral law*, nor through severe reprehension, nor from any motive of *regard for* wealth, nor on account of their connexion with kindred and family, are women constant to their husbands.

"Matrons envy women who live by prostitution the *bloom of* youth they possess, and the food and apparel they receive.

"Though men be lame, divine Sage! or otherwise contemptible, there is not any man, in this world, great Sage! insufferable to women.

"If they have no possible access to men, *O thou inspired by* Brahmā! they seduce each other: truly, they are not constant to their husbands.

"From not finding men, or through fear of their kindred, or apprehension of stripes or confinement, they guard themselves.

"But fire is not satiated with wood, nor the ocean with rivers, nor death with all beings, nor woman with man.

"This, divine Sage! is another hidden quality of all women: at the very sight of a handsome man, the heart of a woman melts with desire.

"Women bear not much *affection to* their husbands, though giving them what they desire, doing what they wish, and protecting them *from danger*.

"They do not so much value the gratification of their wishes, abundance of ornaments, or hoards of *wealth*, as they do sensual pleasures.

"Final destiny, wind, death, the infernal regions, the fire of the ocean, the edge of a razor, poison, venomous serpents, and *devouring* fire, all united, are *no worse than* women."

This translation is by Colebrooke, and may be found in his version of Jagannātha Tarkapanchānana's *Digest of Hindu Law*, Vol. II., pp. 393, 394, London edition.

\* *Mangalya*.

† Read "and will engage"; the Sanskrit being होमपरो भवेत्.

‡ दीनानभ्युदरेत्साधूनुपासीत बज्र्यतान् ।

"Let him aid the needy; and let him reverence the virtuous, if very learned."

This is in accord with the commentary, which says: साधूनेव बज्र्य-तानुपासीत नेतरान् ।

He who is a worshipper of the gods and sages, who gives cakes and water to the manes, and who exercises hospitality, obtains the highest regions, (after death). He who\* speaks wisely, moderately, and kindly, goes to those worlds which are the inexhaustible sources of happiness. He who is intelligent, modest, devout,† and who reverences wisdom, his superiors,‡ and the aged, goes to § heaven.

"On the days called Parvans, on periods of impurity, upon unseasonable thunder, and the occurrence of eclipses or atmospheric portents,|| a wise man must desist from the study of the Vedas.<sup>1</sup> The pious man who suppresses anger and envy, who is benevolent to all, and allays the fears of others, secures, as the least of his rewards, enjoyment in Swarga.¶ A man should carry an umbrella, as a defence against sun and rain; he should bear a staff, when he goes by night, or through a wood; and he should walk in shoes, if he desires to keep his body from harm. As he goes along, he should not look up, or about him,\*\* or

---

<sup>1</sup> Maun, IV., 101, &c. The legislator is much more copious, on this subject, than the author of the Purāṇa.

---

\* In the Sanskrit, काले वश्यात्मा यः, "the person of subdued affections who, at the proper time."

† *Kṣamāyukta*, 'forbearing.' Here follow two untranslated epithets, *āstika* and *vinayānvita*, 'pious' and 'meek'.

‡ *Abhijana*; his 'family', perhaps.

§ Insert 'the highest', *anuttama*.

|| "Or atmospheric portents" is to render *ādika*, 'etc.'

¶ शमं नयति यः कृद्धान्सर्वबन्धुरमत्सरी ।

भीताश्चासनकृत्साधुः स्वर्गस्तस्मात्फलम् ॥

\*\* *Tiryach*.

afar off, but keep his eyes upon the ground, to the extent of a couple of yards,\*

"The householder who expels all sources of imperfection is, in a great degree, acquitted of the three ordinary objects of existence,—desire, wealth, and virtue;† sinless amongst the sinful; speaking amicably to all men; his whole soul melting with benevolence; final felicity is in his grasp.‡ The earth is upheld by the veracity of those who have subdued their passions, and, following righteous practices, are never contaminated by desire, covetousness, and wrath.§ Let, therefore, a wise man (ever) speak the truth, when it is agreeable; and, when the truth would inflict pain, let him hold his peace. Let him not utter that which, though acceptable, would be detrimental; for it were better to speak that which would be salutary, although it should give exceeding offence.<sup>1</sup>|| A considerate

<sup>1</sup> So Manu, IV., 138. ¶ "Let him say what is true; but let him say what is pleasing. Let him speak no disagreeable truth; nor let him speak agreeable falsehood. This is a primeval rule."\*\*

\* *Yuga-mātra*, defined by *hasta-chatushtāya*.

† दोषहेतून्शेषांस्तु वञ्चात्मा यो निरस्यति ।  
तस्य धर्मार्थकामानां हानिर्नाल्यापि जायते ॥

‡ पापेऽप्यपापः परुषेऽप्यभिधत्ते प्रियाणि यः ।  
मैत्रीद्रवान्तःकरणस्तस्य मुक्तिः करे स्थिता ॥

§ ये कामक्रोधलोभानां वीतरागा न गोचरे ।  
सदाचारस्वितास्तेषामनुभावधृता मही ॥

|| प्रियं युक्तं हितं नैतदिति मत्वा न तद्वदेत् ।  
श्रेयस्तत्र हितं वाच्यं यद्यप्यत्यन्तमप्रियम् ॥

¶ सत्त्वं ब्रूयात्प्रियं ब्रूयान्न ब्रूयात्सत्यमप्रियम् ।

• प्रियं च नानृतं ब्रूयादेष धर्मः सनातनः ॥

\*\* This is Sir William Jones's rendering.

man will always cultivate, in act, thought, and speech, that which is good for living beings, both in this world and in the next."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> That the preceding chapter agrees, in many respects, very closely with the contents of the fourth book of the Institutes of Manu, on economics and private morals, will be evident from the instances cited of some of the parallel passages. Several others might have been adduced.

---

## CHAPTER XIII.

Of Śráddhas or rites in honour of ancestors, to be performed on occasions of rejoicing. Obsequial ceremonies. Of the Ekoddishá or monthly Śráddha, and the Sapindikána or annual one. By whom to be performed.

AURVA continued.—“The bathing of a father, without disrobing, is enjoined, when a son is born; and he is to celebrate the ceremony proper for the event,\* which is the Śráddha offered upon joyous occasions.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The offerings of the Hindus to the Pitris partake of the character of those of the Romans to the lares and manes, but bear a more conspicuous part in their ritual. They are said, indeed, by Manu (III., 203†), in words repeated in the Váyu and Matsya Purāṇas, and Hari Vahśa, to be of more moment than the worship of the gods:

**देवकार्यादपि सदा पितृकार्यं विशिष्यते ।**

These ceremonies are not to be regarded as merely obsequial; for, independently of the rites addressed to a recently deceased relative,—and, in connexion with him, to remote ancestors, and to the progenitors of all beings,—which are of a strictly obsequial or funeral description, offerings to deceased ancestors, and the Pitris in general, form an essential ceremony, on a great variety of festive and domestic occasions. The Nirṇaya Śindhu, in a passage referred to by Mr. Colebrooke (*Asiatic Researches*, Vol. VII. §), specifies the following Śráddhas: 1. The Nitya, or perpetual; daily offerings to ancestors in general: 2. The Naimittika, or occasional; as the Ekoddishá, or obsequial offerings

---

\* Expressed, in the original, by *jāta-karman*, for which see Colebrooke's *Digest*, &c., Vol. III., p. 104, note †.

† देवकार्यादपि जातीनां पितृकार्यं विशिष्यते ।

† *Harivamśa*, śl. 1005. § Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 180, note.

With composed mind, and thinking on nothing else, the Brahman should offer worship to both the gods and progenitors, and should respectfully circumambulate, keeping Brahmans on his left hand, and give them food.\* Standing with his face to the east,† he should present, with the parts of the hand sacred to the gods

on account of a kinsman recently deceased: 3. The Kámya, voluntary; performed for the accomplishment of a special design (अभिप्रेतसिद्धये): 4. The Vṛiddhi; performed on occasions of rejoicing or prosperity: 5. The Sapiúdana; offerings to all individual and to general ancestors: 6. The Párvaṇa Śráddha; offerings to the manes, on certain lunar days called Parvans, or day of full moon and new moon, and the eighth and fourteenth days of the lunar fortnight: 7. The Goshthí; for the advantage of a number of learned persons, or of an assembly of Brahmans, invited for the purpose: 8. The Śuddhi; one performed to purify a person from some defilement,—an expiatory Śráddha: 9. The Karmánga; one forming part of the initiatory ceremonies, or Saṁskáras, observed at conception, birth, tonsure, &c.: 10. The Daivika; to which the gods are invited: 11. The Yátrá Śráddha; held by a person going a journey: and, 12. The Pushpí Śráddha; one performed to promote health and wealth. Of these, the four which are considered the most solemn are the rite performed for a parent, or near relative, lately deceased; that which is performed for kindred, collectively; that observed on certain lunar days; and that celebrated on occasions of rejoicing: अत्र पार्वणिकोद्दिष्ट-वृद्धिसपिण्डीकरणात्मकं चतुर्विधमेव मुख्यम् । Nirāya Sindhu, p. 271.

\* युग्मान्देवांश्च पित्र्यांश्च सम्यक्सव्यक्रमाद्विजान् ।

पूजयेद्भोजयेच्चैव तन्मना नान्यमानसः ॥

"With mind intent thereon, i. e., on the son born, and on nothing else, let him duly circumambulate—keeping them on his left—Bráhmans, in couples, those set apart for the service of the gods and those set apart for the service of the manes; and let him worship and feed those same Bráhmans."

† Add "or to the north"; for the original has प्राङ्मुखोदङ्मुखोऽपि वा ।

and\* to Prajāpati, balls of food,<sup>1</sup> with curds, unbruised grain, and jujubes; and should perform, on every accession of good fortune, the rite by which the class of progenitors termed Nāndīmukha is propitiated.<sup>2</sup> A

<sup>1</sup> Manu directs the balls to be made from the remainder of the clarified butter constituting the previous oblation to the gods. III., 215.† Kullūka Bhaṭṭa explains, however, the oblation to consist partly of Anna (अन्न),—food, or boiled rice. The latter is the article of which the balls chiefly consist. Yājñavalkya; directs them to be made of rice and sesamum-seeds. The Vāyu Purāṇa adds, to these, two ingredients, honey and butter: but various kinds of fruit, of pulse, and of grain, and water, frankincense, sugar, and milk, are, also, mixed up in the Piṇḍas. Their size, also, differs; and, according to Angiras, as quoted by Hemādri, in the Śrāddha Mayūkha, § they may be of the dimension of the fruit of the jujube, or of the hog-plum, of the fruit of the Bel, or of the wood-apple, or of a fowl's egg. Some authorities direct Piṇḍas of a different size for different Śrāddhas; prescribing them no larger than the wood-apple, at the first or pure funeral ceremony, and as big as a cocoa-nut, at the monthly and annual Śrāddha. In practice, the Piṇḍa is, usually, of such a magnitude, that it may be conveniently held by the hand.

<sup>2</sup> We have, here, the authority of the text for classing the Nāndīmukhas amongst the Pitṛis (see p. 98, *supra*). The verse is:

नान्दीमुखः पितृगणक्षेत्रे आक्षेपेन पाथिर्व ।  
प्रीयते तत्तु कर्तव्यं पुरुषैः सर्ववृद्धिषु ॥

\* The original has *vá*, 'or'; the injunction allowing an option. The expressions here connected are *daivatīrtha* and *kāya*, on which *vide supra*, p. 99, notes 1 and \*. The *daivatīrtha* is sometimes called the *tīrtha* of the Rishis,—*ārsha*.

† त्रींस्तु तस्माद्विशेषात्पिण्डान्कृत्वा समाहितः ।  
औदकेनैव विधिना निर्वपेद्दक्षिणमुखः ॥

‡ ?

§ This work has Nīlakaṇṭha for its author. Hemādri wrote the *Śrāddha-kalpa*.

householder should diligently worship the Pitris so named, at the marriage of a son or daughter, on entering a new dwelling, on giving a name to a child, on performing his tonsure and other purificatory ceremonies,\* at the binding of the mother's hair during gestation, or on (first) seeing the face of a son, or the like. The Śrāddha on such occasions, however, has been briefly alluded to. Hear now, O king, the rules for the performance of obsequial rites.

"Having washed the corpse with holy water, decorated it with garlands, and burnt it without the village, the kinsmen, having bathed with their clothes on, are to stand with their faces to the south, and offer libations (to the deceased), addressing him by name, and adding, 'wherever thou mayest be.'<sup>1</sup> They then re-

And the same Gaṇa or class is presently again named :

**नान्दीमुखं पितृगणं पूजयेत्प्रयतो गृही ।**

The Mantra of the Vṛiddhi or festival Śrāddha is, also, said, in the Nirṇaya Sindhu, to be नान्दीमुखेभ्यः पितृभ्यः स्वाहा । According to the authorities, however, which are cited in that work, there seems to be some uncertainty about the character of the Nāndimukhas; and they are addressed both as Pitris and gods; being, in the former case, either the ancestors prior to the great-grandfather,—ancestors collectively, or a certain class of them; and, in the latter, being identified with the Viśwadevas, or a class of them called also Ūrdhwavaktra. The term Nāndimukha is, also, applied to the rite itself, or to the Vṛiddhi Śrāddha, and to one addressed to maternal ancestors. Nirṇaya Sindhu, pp. 268, &c.

<sup>1</sup> "An oblation of water must be next presented from the joined palms of the hand, naming the deceased and the family

\* *Chidākarmādika.*



turn, along with the cattle (coming from pasture), to the village, and, upon the appearance of the stars, retire to rest, sleeping on mats spread upon the earth.\* Every day (whilst the mourning lasts), a cake (or ball) of food<sup>1</sup> is to be placed on the ground, (as an offering) to the deceased; and rice,† without flesh, is to be daily‡ eaten. Brahmans are to be fed for as many days as the mourner pleases; for the soul of the defunct derives satisfaction accordingly as his relatives are content with their entertainment.§ On the first day, or the third, or seventh, or ninth (after the death

from which he sprung, and saying, 'May this oblation reach thee.'" Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 244. || The text has:

यच्च तच्च स्त्रितायैतद्मुकायेति वादिनः ।

<sup>1</sup> The proper period of mourning is ten days, on each of which, offerings of cakes and libations of water are to be made to the deceased, augmenting the number of cakes each day, so that, on the last day, ten cakes are presented. When the period is shorter, the same number of ten cakes must be distributed amongst the several days; or they may be, all, presented on one day. Nirriaya Sindhu, p. 429.

\* कटधर्मास्ततः कुर्युर्भूमौ स्रस्तारशायिनः ।

Here—compare p. 131, note, *supra*,—we encounter the unusual verb *srastara*, with the variants *prastara*, *sahstara*, and *swastara*. Commentary A has *srastara*; commentary B, *prastara*: but, as both give the same definition, तृणशय्या, it is presumable that one or other of them is sophisticated as to the term defined.

On the expression कटधर्मान् the commentator remarks प्रेतद्वयानि.

† So the commentator explains *bhakta*.

‡ *Divā*, 'by day.'

§ प्रेतस्मृतिं तथा याति बन्धुवर्गेण भुञ्जता ।

|| Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 159, 160.

of a person), his kinsmen should change their raiment,\* and bathe out of doors, and offer a libation of water, with (tila) sesamum-seeds. On the fourth day,<sup>1</sup> the ashes and bones should be collected; after which the body of one connected with the deceased by offerings of funeral cakes may be touched (by an indifferent person, without thereby incurring impurity); and those who are related only by presentation of water† are qualified for any occupation.<sup>2</sup> The former class of

<sup>1</sup> It should be, more correctly, on that day on which the mourning ceases, or, as previously mentioned, the first, third, seventh, or ninth: but the authorities vary; and, besides these, the second and fourth days, and certain days of the fortnight or month, are specified. *Nirṇaya Sindhu*, p. 492.

<sup>2</sup> They are no longer unclean. The *Sapīṇḍas*, or those connected by offerings of cakes to common ancestors, extend to seven degrees, ascending or descending; the *Samānodakas*, or those similarly connected by presentations of water, to fourteen degrees.‡

\* The words वस्त्रत्यागं \* कृत्वा imply that the clothes should be laid aside for the second funereal ablution. As we have seen just above, they are to be retained during the first. According to some MSS., however, which have

ततोऽनु बन्धुवर्गसु भुवि दद्यात्तिलोदकम् ।

instead of

वस्त्रत्यागं बहिः स्नानं कृत्वा दद्यात्तिलोदकम् ।

there is no bathing prescribed for this latter occasion.

† *Samānasalila*. It means the same as *samānodaka*.

‡ In the *Mitāksharā*, where it expatiates on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, II., 136, the following lines are quoted from *Bṛīhan-Manu*:

सपिण्डता तु पुरुषे सप्तमे विनिवर्तते ।

समानोदकभावसु निवर्ततेऽतश्चतुर्दशात् ।

जन्मनाम्नोः स्मृतेरेके तत्परं गोत्रमुच्यते ॥

"The relation of the *sapīṇḍas* (or, kindred connected by the funereal oblation,) ceases with the seventh person: and that of *samānodakas* (or,

relatives may use beds;\* but they must still refrain from unguents and flowers, and must observe continence, after the ashes and bones have been collected, (until the mourning is over). When the deceased is a child,† or one who is abroad,‡ or who has been degraded, or a spiritual preceptor,§ the period of uncleanness is but brief, || and the ceremonies with fire and water are discretionary. ¶ The food of a family in which a kinsman is deceased is not to be partaken of for ten days;<sup>1</sup> and, during, that period, gifts, acceptance, sacrifice, and sacred study are suspended. The

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, a mere guest, or stranger, is not to partake of it. The food directed to be given to Brahmans is given, in general, only to the relatives of the deceased who are already unclean. In this respect, our text and the modern practice seem to differ

---

those connected by a common libation of water,) extends to the fourteenth degree; or, as some affirm, it reaches as far as the memory of birth and name extends. This is signified by *gotra* (or, the relation of family-name)." Colebrooke's *Two Treatises on the Hindu Law of Inheritance*, pp. 351, 352.

Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, V., 60.

\* Add 'and seats', *āsana*.

† That has not yet cut its teeth, says the commentator.

‡ And has been so for upwards of a year, the commentary adds.

§ As explanatory of what is meant by "abroad", the following stanza is cited:

महानवन्तरं यच्च गिरिर्वा व्यवधायकः ।

वाचो यच्च विभिवन्ते तद्देशान्तरमिष्यते ॥

§ *Guru*. A common variant, and preferred by commentary A, is *muni*.

|| *Sadyas*. It is stated, by the scholiast, that it lasts only three nights, for one who dies abroad.

¶ बाले देशान्तरस्थे च पतिते च गुरौ मृते ।

सद्यः शौचं तथेच्छातो जलाग्न्युद्वन्धनादिषु ॥

After "brief" read: "likewise, optionally, as regards persons who die from water, fire, or hanging."

term of impurity for a Brahman is ten days;\* for a Kshattriya,† twelve; for a Vaiśya, half a month; and a whole month, for a Śūdra.<sup>1</sup> On the first day (after uncleanness ceases), the nearest relation of the deceased should feed Brahmans at his pleasure, but in uneven numbers, and offer to the deceased a ball of rice upon holy grass‡ placed near the residue of the food that has been eaten. After the guests have been fed, the mourner, according to his caste, is to touch water, a weapon, a goad, or a staff; as he is purified by such contact. He may then resume the duties prescribed for his caste, and follow the avocation ordinarily pursued by its members.

“The Śrāddha enjoined for an individual§ is to be repeated on the day of his death, (in each month, for a year),<sup>2</sup> but without the prayers and rites performed

from the primitive system, as described by Manu, III., 187. || The eleventh or twelfth day is the term on which the Śrāddha which crowns the whole of the funeral rites is to be performed, and when Brahmans are to be invited. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 437.

<sup>1</sup> The number of Piṇḍas, however, is, for each case, the same, or ten. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 429.

<sup>2</sup> So Manu, III., 251. ¶ It may be doubted if the monthly

\* The ceremonial uncleanness of the Brāhman lasts as long as that of the Kshattriya, according to my MSS., which here read:

विप्रस्येतद्वादशाहं राजन्यस्याप्यशौचकम् ।

But the Translator has the support of the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, V., 83.

† *Rājanya*, in the original.

‡ *Darbha*.

§ This phrase is to render *ekoddishṭa*.

॥ पूर्वेष्वपरिदुर्वा आह्नकर्मण्युपस्थिते ।

निमन्त्रयेत् अवरान्सम्यग्निप्रान्ययोदितान् ॥

¶ ?

on the first occasion, and without offerings to the Viśwadevas.\* A single ball of food is to be offered to the deceased, as the purification of one person; and Brahmans are to be fed.† The Brahmans are to be asked, by the sacrificer, if they are satisfied; and, upon their assent, the prayer 'May this ever satisfy such a one' (the deceased,) is to be recited.‡

"This is the Śrāddha called Ekoddishā, which is to be performed (monthly,) to the end of a twelve-month (from the death of a person); at the expiration of which, the ceremony called Sapiṇḍana§ is to be observed. The practices of this rite are the same as those of the monthly obsequies; but a lustration is to be made with four vessels of water, perfumes, and sesamum. One of these vessels is considered as dedicated to the deceased; the other three, to the progenitors in general; and the contents of the former are

Śrāddha was part of the ancient system, although Kullūka Bhāṭṭa supposes it to be referred to (v. 248), and supplies the fancied omission of the text.

\* मृताहनि च कर्तव्यमेकोद्दिष्टमतः परम् ।

आहुतानादिक्रियादैवनिर्योगरहितं हि तत् ॥

The commentator says that the Viśve devas are here intended; and the Translator has substituted his explanation.

† एकोऽर्घस्तत्र दातव्यस्तथैवैकं पवित्रकम् ।

प्रेताय पिण्डो दातव्यो भुक्तवत्सु द्विजातिषु ॥

‡ प्रश्नश्च तत्राभिरतिर्यजमानैर्द्विजव्यनाम् ।

अन्नव्यममुकस्येति वक्तव्यं विरती तथा ॥

§ The term here used, in the original, is *sapiṇḍikarāṇa*, as a little below.

to be transferred to the other three,\* by which the deceased becomes included in the class of ancestors, to whom worship is to be addressed, with all the ceremonies of the Śráddha. The persons who are competent to perform the obsequies (of relations connected by the offering of the cake) are the son, grandson, great-grandson, a kinsman of the deceased,† the descendants of a brother, or the posterity of one allied by funeral offerings. In absence of all these, (the ceremony may be instituted) by those related by presentations of water only, or those connected, by offerings of cakes or water, to maternal ancestors. Should both families (in the male line) be extinct, the last obsequies may be performed by women, or by the associates of the deceased in religious or social institutions,‡ or by any one who becomes possessed of the property of a deceased kinsman.§

"Obsequial rites are of three descriptions,—initiative, intermediate, and subsequent.<sup>1</sup> The first are those which are observed after the burning (of the corpse),

<sup>1</sup> Púrva, 'first'; Madhyama, 'middle'; and Uttara, 'last'.

\* पात्रं प्रेतस्य तत्रैकं पात्रत्रययुतं तथा ।  
सेचयेत्पितृपात्रेषु प्रेतपात्रं नृप चिषु ॥

† Bandhu. "Bandhu, cognate or distant kin, corresponding nearly to the Cognati of the Roman law." Colebrooke's *Two Treatises on the Hindu Law of Inheritance*, p. 352, note.

‡ The phrase "associates of the deceased," &c. is to represent *sanghātāntargata*, on which the commentator observes: संघातः सार्धो याचिकसमुदायः । तत्र मृतस्य तदन्तर्गतिः । प्रेतक्रियार्येत्यर्थः । समानप्रवरसमानशास्त्रादिरूपः संघात इति केचित् ।

§ Utsanna-bandhu.

until the touching of water, weapons, &c., (or, until the cessation of uncleanness); the intermediate ceremonies are the Śrāddhas called Ekoddishṭa, which are offered every month; and the subsequent rites are those which follow the Sapiṇḍikaraṇa, when the deceased is admitted amongst the ancestors of his race: and the ceremonies are, thenceforth, (general or) ancestral. The first set of rites (as essential) are to be performed by the kindred of the father or mother,—whether connected by the offering of the cake or of water,—by the associates of the deceased,\* or by the prince who inherits his property. The first and the last rites are, both, to be performed by sons and other relations, and by daughter's sons, and their sons; and so are the sacrifices on the day of the person's death. The last class, or ancestral rites, are to be performed annually, with the same ceremonies as are enjoined for the monthly obsequies; and they may be, also, performed by females. As the ancestral rights are, therefore, most universal, I will describe to you, O king, at what seasons, and in what manner, they should be celebrated.”†

---

\* *Saṅghātāntargata.*

† तस्मादुत्तरसंज्ञा या क्रिया तां शृणु पार्थिव ।  
यदा यदा च कर्तव्या विधिना येन चानघ ॥

## CHAPTER XIV.

Of occasional Śráddhas or obsequial ceremonies: when most efficacious, and at what places.

AURVA proceeded.—“Let the devout performer of an ancestral oblation<sup>1</sup> propitiate Brahmá, Indra, Rudra,

---

<sup>1</sup> We may here take the opportunity of inquiring who are meant by the Pitris: and, generally speaking, they may be called a race of divine beings, inhabiting celestial regions of their own, and receiving into their society the spirits of those mortals for whom the rite of fellowship in obsequial cakes with them, the Sapindikarāṇa, has been duly performed. The Pitris collectively, therefore, include a man's ancestors; but the principal members of this order of beings are of a different origin. The Váyu, Matsya, and Padma Purāṇas, and Hari Vaṁśa, profess to give an account of the original Pitris. The account is much the same, and, for the most part, in the same words, in all. They agree\* in distinguishing the Pitris into seven classes; three of which are without form (अमूर्तयः), or composed of intellectual, not elementary, substance, and assuming what forms they please; and four are corporeal (समूर्तयः). When they come to the enumeration of the particular classes, they somewhat differ; and the accounts, in all the works, are singularly imperfect. According to a legend given by the Váyu and the Hari Vaṁśa, the first Pitris were the sons of the gods. The gods, having offended Brahmá, by neglecting to worship him, were cursed, by him, to become fools; but, upon their repentance, he directed them to apply to their sons, for instruction. Being taught, accordingly, the rites of ex-

---

\* From the *Harivaṁśa*, śl. 932:

सन्नेते जयतां येष्ट सर्वे पितृगणाः स्मृताः ।  
चत्वारो मूर्तिमन्तो वै त्रय एषाममूर्तयः ॥



the Aświns,\* the sun, fire, the Vasus, the winds,† the Viśwadevas, the sages, birds, men, animals,‡ reptiles, §

piation and penance, by their sons, they addressed them as fathers; whence the sons of the gods were the first Pitṛis.

ते पुत्रानब्रुवन्प्रीता लब्धसंज्ञा दिवौकसः ।

यूयं वै पितरोऽस्माकं यैर्वयं प्रतिबोधिताः ॥

So the Matsya has:

मन्वन्तरेषु जायन्ते पितरो देवसूनवः ।

‘The Pitṛis are born, in the Manwantaras, as the sons of the gods.’ The Hari Vaiṣṇa ¶ makes the sons assume the character of fathers; addressing them, ‘Depart, children:’

गम्यतां पुत्रका एवं पुत्रैरुक्ताश्च ते तदा ।

Again, the Vāyu Purāṇa declares the seven orders of Pitṛis to have been, originally, the first gods, the Vairājas, whom Brahmā, with the eye of Yoga, beheld in the eternal spheres, and who are the gods of the gods:

लोकाः सान्त्वानिका नाम यत्र तिष्ठन्ति भास्वराः ।

ते वैराजा इति ख्याता देवानां दिवि देवताः ॥

\* \* \* \* \*

आदिदेवा इति ख्याता महासत्त्वा महीजसः । \*\*

\* \* \* \* \*

तेषां सप्त समाख्याता गणास्ते लोकपूजिताः ।

अमूर्तयस्त्रयस्तेषां चत्वारस्तु समूर्तयः ॥

Again, in the same work, we have the incorporeal Pitṛis called Vairājas,†† from being the sons of the Prajāpati Virāja:‡‡

\* Nāsatyas, their synonym, in the original.

† *Māruta* is the Sanskrit expression. For the Maruts, or *Mārutas*, deities so called, see Vol. II., p. 79. ‡ *Paku*. § *Saristipa*.

¶ This is from the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. Compare the *Harivamśa*, *sl.* 917, 918.

¶ *Sl.* 912.

\*\* Here I have filled out a line which Professor Wilson, it should seem, was not enabled, from the illegibility of his MSS., to decipher in its entirety. †† See Vol. II., p. 227, text and note 1.

‡‡ For “the patriarch Vairāja”, see Vol. I., p. 177; and Vol. II., p. 86, and p. 262, note †. From Vol. I., p. 104, note 2, and p. 108, note 1, it

progenitors, and all existent things, by offering adoration to them monthly, on the fifteenth day of the

अमूर्तयः पितृगणाः पुत्रास्ते वै प्रजापतेः ।

विराजस्य द्विजाः श्रेष्ठा वैराजा इति विश्रुताः ॥

The Matsya agrees with this latter statement, and adds, that the gods worship them:

अमूर्तयः पितृगणा विराजस्य प्रजापतेः ।

यजन्ति तान्देवगणा वैराजा इति विश्रुताः ॥

The Hari Vamśa\* has the same statement, but more precisely distinguishes the Vairājas as one class only of the incorporeal Pitris. The commentator† states the same, calling the three incorporeal Pitris, Vairājas, Agnishwāttas, and Barhishads;‡ and the four corporeal orders, Sukālas, Āngirasas, Suswadhas,§ and Somapas. The Vairājas are described as the fathers of Menā,|| the mother of Umā. Their abode is variously termed the Sāntānika, Sanātana, and Soma loka.¶ As the posterity of Virāja, they are the Somasads of Manu.\*\* The other classes of Pitris

seems that Vairāja is one with Manu. Who, then, is the *prajāpati* Vairāja? And was Vairāja corrupted into Virāja? Nilakaṇṭha says that Virāja's sons were *mānasa*, which term he explains by *manomātrasarira*. Arjuna Miśra, another scholiast on the *Harivamśa*, identifies Virāja with Brahmā.

\* Śl. 935, 936:

लोकाः सनातना नाम यत्र तिष्ठन्ति भास्वराः ।

अमूर्तयः पितृगणास्ते वै पुत्राः प्रजापतेः ॥

विराजस्य द्विजश्रेष्ठ वैराजा इति विश्रुताः ।

यजन्ति तान्देवगणा विधिदृष्टेन कर्मणा ॥

† Nilakaṇṭha.

‡ See Vol. I., p. 156, note 2.

§ Vide *infra*, p. 164, note \*\*.

|| A different paternity is assigned to Menā in Vol. I., pp. 156, 157. Also *vide infra*, p. 162, note ||.

¶ For their residence in the Tapoloka, &c., see Vol. II., p. 227, text and note 1.

\*\* In III., 195, we read that the Somasads were sons of Virāj:

विराजुताः सोमसदः साध्यानां पितरः स्मृताः ।

अग्निष्वात्ताश्च देवानां मारीच्या लोकविश्रुताः ॥

See note ‡ in the preceding page.

moon's wane (or dark fortnight),\* or on the eighth day of the same period in certain months,† or at particular‡ seasons, as I will explain.

the three Purāṇas agree with Manu in representing as the sons of the patriarchs, and, in general, assign to them the same offices and posterity. § They are the following:—

Agnishwāttas—sons of Marīchi, and Pitṛis of the gods (Manu, || Matsya, Padma): living in Soma-loka, and parents of Achchhodā (Matsya, Padma, Hari Varāṇa ¶). The Vāyu\*\* makes them residents of Virāja-loka, sons of Pulastya, †† Pitṛis of the demigods and demons, and parents of Pivari; omitting ‡‡ the next order of

\* This, the commentator observes, is the *darśa-brāddha*.

† For these months,—three, or four, according to different authorities,—*vide infra*, p. 168, text and note ‡.

‡ *Kāmya*.

§ In the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, XCVI., 40—42, the Agnishwāttas, Barishads, Ājyapas, and Somapas are attached to the east, south, west, and north, respectively.

|| See the quotation in note || in the preceding page.

¶ Śl. 953, 954:

लोकाः सोमपदा नाम मरीचैर्यत्र वै सुताः ।  
 पितरो दिवि वर्तन्ते देवास्ताम्नावयन्त्युत ॥  
 अपिष्ठात्ता इति ख्याताः सर्व एवामितीजसः ।  
 एतेषां मानसी कन्या अक्छोदा नाम निम्नगा ॥  
 \*\* विरजा नाम ते लोका दिवि रोचन्ति ते गणाः ।  
 अपिष्ठात्ताः स्मृतास्तत्र पितरो भास्वरप्रभाः ॥  
 तत्र ते दानवगणा रक्षोगन्धर्वकिनराः ।  
 भूतसर्पपिशाचाश्च भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥  
 एते पुत्राः समाख्याताः पुलहस्य प्रजापतेः ।  
 त्रय एते गणाः प्रोक्ता धर्ममूर्तिधराः शुभाः ॥  
 एतेषां मानसी कन्या पीवरी नाम विश्रुता ।  
 योगिनी योगिपत्नी च योगिमाता तथैव च ॥

†† My MSS. have Pulaha. See the last note.

‡‡ Without doubt, there is a hiatus in my MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. These contain, nearly word for word, the three lines—all but their

“When a householder finds that any circumstance has occurred, or a distinguished guest has arrived, on

Pitris, to whom these circumstances more accurately refer. The commentator on the *Hari Varīṣa*\* derives the name from *Agnishu* (अग्निषु), ‘in or by oblations to fire,’ and *Ātta* (आत्ताः), ‘obtained,’ ‘invoked.’

Barhishads—sons of Atri, and Pitris of the demons (Manu †): sons of Pulastya, Pitris of the demons, residents in *Vaibhrāja*, ‡ fathers of Pivari (Matsya, Padma, *Hari Varīṣa* §).

opening, निरता दिवि—ending the extract in note § in p. 165, *infra*; and there was, probably, mention, in what preceded, of the Barhishads. These personages were, then, it seems, regarded as sons of *Vasishtha*, as dwellers in *Jyotirbhāsin*, and as parents of a mind-born daughter by name *Go*. It should be added, that my MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* elsewhere mention the Barhishads again and again; as in the line:

अग्निष्वात्ता बर्हिषदः पितरो दिविधाः स्मृताः ।

Also see Vol. II., p. 303, notes 1 and २.

\* अग्निषु अग्निसाध्येषु कर्मसु आत्ताः गृहीताः पित्र्यादिविष्टिषु ।  
Nilakantha.

† III., 196:

दैत्यदानवयक्षाणां गन्धर्वोरगरक्षसाम् ।

सुपर्णकिंनराणां च स्मृता बर्हिषदोऽचिजाः ॥

‡ Nilakantha, commentator on the *Harivamśa*, glosses this word thus:

वैभ्राजा इति । विभ्राजः सूर्यस्त्रेमे वैभ्राजाः ।

§ Śl. 974—977:

वैभ्राजा नाम लोकास्ते दिवि भान्ति सुदर्शनाः ।

यत्र बर्हिषदो नाम पितरो दिवि विद्युताः ॥

तान्दानवगणाः सर्वे यत्रगन्धर्वराक्षसाः ।

नागाः सर्पाः सुपर्णाश्च भावयन्त्यमितौजसः ॥

एते पुत्रा महात्मानः पुलस्त्यस्य प्रजापतेः ।

महात्मानो महाभागास्तेजोयुक्तास्तपस्विनः ॥

एतेषां मानसी कन्या पीवरी नाम विद्युता ।

योगा च योगिपत्नी च योगिमाता तथैव च ॥

Also see note :: in the preceding page.

which account ancestral ceremonies are appropriate, he should celebrate them.\* He should offer a volun-

These three are the formless or incorporeal Pitris.

Somapas,—descendants of Bhrigu, or sons of Kavi by Swadhá, the daughter of Agni;† and Pitris of the Brahmans (Manu‡ and Váyu Purāṇa§). The Padma calls them Úshmapas. The Hari Varāṇsa || calls the Somapas—to whom it ascribes the same de-

\* आद्धार्हमागतं द्रव्यं विशिष्टमथवा द्विजम् ।

आद्धं कुर्वीत विज्ञाय \* \* \* \* \*

† Swadhá appears, in Vol. I., p. 109, as daughter of Daksha and Prasúti. For her husbands, *vide ibid.*, pp. 156, 157. Also *vide supra*, p. 122, note ‡, *ad finem*.

‡ Nilakāṇṭha, commentator on the *Harivaṁśa*, says that Hiraṇyagarbha, mentioned in the passage in note ||, below, intends Agni: कवेर्द्विहितरि स्वधायाम् । हिरण्यगर्भस्यापि: सुता: ।

‡ III., 197, 198:

सोमपा नाम विप्राणां चत्रियाणां हविर्भुजः ।

वैश्वानामाज्यपा नाम शूद्राणां तु सुकालिनः ।

सोमपास्तु कवेः पुत्रा हविष्मन्तोऽङ्गिरःसुताः ।

पुलस्त्यस्याज्यपाः पुत्रा वसिष्ठस्य सुकालिनः ॥

§ My five MSS. of the *Váyu-purāṇa* do not here tally with those on which Professor Wilson depended.

|| *Śl.* 997—999:

उत्पन्ना ये स्वधायां ते सोमपा वै कवेः सुताः ।

हिरण्यगर्भस्य सुताः शूद्रास्त्वान्भावयन्त्युत ॥

मानसा नाम ते लोका यत्र तिष्ठन्ति ते दिवि ।

तेषां वै मानसी कन्या नर्मदा सरितां वरा ॥

यां भावयन्ति भूतानि दक्षिणापथगामिनीम् ।

जनिनी चसदस्योः सा पुरुकुत्सपरियहः ॥

The Somapas are here—as in the *Matsya-purāṇa*,—said to dwell in Mánasa, and to have the river Narmadá for mind-born daughter. In *Śl.* 941, Mená, too, is their mind-born daughter. But *vide supra*, p. 159, note ||. Compare, also, note ‡ in p. 165, *infra*.

tary sacrifice, upon any atmospheric portent,\* at the equinoctial and solstitial periods, at eclipses of the sun

secent as the Vāyu,—the Pitṛis of the Śúdras; and the Sukálas, the Pitṛis of the Brahmans.†

Havishmats‡:—in the solar sphere, sons of Angiras, and Pitṛis of the Kshattriyas (Manu, § Vāyu, || Matsya, Padma, Hari Vanśa ¶).

\* *Vyatipāta*. On the malignant aspect so called, an astrological *yoga*, see Professor Whitney's comment at p. 236 of the American translation of the *Sūrya-siddhānta*: or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 187; Vol. II., p. 363.

† In the *Nirṇayasindhu*, III., B, fol. 11 r, Bombay edition, the *Nandi-purāṇa*—not called an *Upapurāṇa*—is quoted as follows:

अग्निष्वात्ता ब्राह्मणानां पितरः परिकीर्तिताः ।

राज्ञां बर्हिषदो नाम विशां काव्याः प्रकीर्तिताः ।

सुकालिनस्तु शुद्राणां व्यामा स्वेच्छान्यजातिषु ॥

Here the Agnishwāttas are declared to be the *pitṛis* of the first caste; the Barhishads, of the second; the Kāvya, of the third; the Sukālins, of the fourth; and the Vyāmas,—‘Fumes’, mere smoke,—of *mlechchhas* and the lowest castemen.

Of the Vyāmas I know of no mention except in passages from the *Nandi-purāṇa*, for which see Dr. Aufrecht's *Catalogus*, &c., p. 81; also, note || in the next page, and p. 166, *infra*, note ‡.

‡ Here I have corrected “Havishmantas”. § See the next note.

|| As is seen in note † in the preceding page, a Havishmat is synonymously denominated a Havirbhuj. A third designation is Upahūta, which occurs in the following passage and elsewhere:

मरीचिर्गर्भांस्ते लोकान्समाश्रित्य दिवि स्थिताः ।

एते ह्यङ्घ्रिरसः पुत्राः साध्वीः सह विवर्धिताः ॥

उपहृताः स्मृतास्ते तु पितरो भास्वरा दिवि ।

तान्बन्धियगणा दृष्ट्वा भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥

एतेषां मानसी कन्या यशोदा नाम विश्रुता ।

पत्नी सा विश्वमहत्तः क्षुषा वै विश्वशर्मणः ॥

These beings are here said to inhabit Marichigarbha, and to have a mind-born daughter Yaśodā.

Nilakāṇṭha thus comments on the first term in this passage: मरीचि-गर्भान् । सूर्यरश्मिप्रकाशान् ।

¶ In *ś.* 988—990, we have almost the very words of the extract in the

and moon, on the sun's entrance into a zodiacal sign, upon unpropitious aspects\* of the planets and as-

Ājyapas—sons of Kardama, Pitṛis of the Vaiśyas, in the Kāmaduḥa-loka † (Manu, ‡ &c.); but the lawgiver calls them the sons of Pulastya. § The Pitṛis of the Vaiśyas are called Kāvya, in the Nandi Upapurāṇa; || and, in the Hari Vaiṣṇava ¶ and its comment, they are termed Suswadhas, \*\* sons of Kardama, descended from Pulaha.

preceding note; except that the line is omitted which names the *pitṛis* under description, and that Yaśodā is said to be daughter-in-law of Vṛiddhaśarman.

\* "Unpropitious aspects" is to represent *pidā*, which signifies 'occultation.'

† This seems to be a mistake. The *Matsya-purāṇa* has Kāmadugha; with which compare the *Mahābhārata*, *Vana-parvan*, sl. 15460. In the *Harivaṃśa*, the name is Kāmaga. See note ¶ in this page.

‡ *Vide supra*, p. 162, note ‡.

§ We read, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*:

आज्यपा नाम पितरः कर्दमस्य प्रजापतेः ।

समुत्पन्नस्य पुलहादुत्पन्नास्तस्य वै पुनः ॥

लोकेष्वेतेषु वर्तन्ते कामगेषु विहंगमाः ।

एतान्वैश्वगणाः आजे भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥

एतेषां मानसी कन्या विरजा नाम विद्युता ।

ययातेर्जननी साध्वी पत्नी सा नरुषस्य तु ॥

It is stated here,—compare note ¶, below,—that the Ājyapas live in Kāmaga, and that they have a mind-born daughter Virajā.

|| See note † in the last page, and p. 166, note ‡, *infra*; also, Vol. I., Preface, p. LXXXVII.

¶ *Sl.* 993—996:

सुखधा नाम पितरः कर्दमस्य प्रजापतेः ।

समुत्पन्नास्तु पुलहान्ब्रह्मात्मानो द्विजर्षभाः ॥

लोकेषु दिवि वर्तन्ते कामगेषु विहंगमाः ।

तांश्च वैश्वगणास्तात भावयन्ति फलार्थिनः ॥

तेषां वै मानसी कन्या विरजा नाम विद्युता ।

ययातेर्जननी ब्रह्मन्महिषी नरुषस्य च ॥

\*\* My best MSS. yield Sumedhas, which reading seems to be preferred by Arjuna Miśra. The *Matsya-purāṇa* appears to exhibit Swaswadhas.

terisms, on dreaming unlucky dreams, and on eating the grain of the year's harvest.\* The Pitṛis derive sa-

Sukálins—sons of Vasishṭha, and Pitṛis of the Śúdras (Manu† and Váyu Purāṇa ‡). They are not mentioned in the Padma. The Matsya inserts the name and descent, but specifies them as amongst the incorporeal Pitṛis:

अमूर्तिमन्तः पितरो वसिष्ठस्य सुकालिनः ।  
नाम्ना तु मानसाः सर्वे सर्वे ते धर्ममूर्तयः ॥

It may be suspected that the passage is corrupt. The Hari Vaṁśa § makes the Sukálas sons of Vasishṭha, the Pitṛis of the Brahmans; and gives the title of Somapas to the Pitṛis of the Śúdras. In general, this work follows the Váyu, but with omissions and transpositions, as if it had carelessly mutilated its original.

\* Navasasyágama.

† See note ‡ in page 162, *supra*.

‡ They are there called Sukálas:

सुकाला नाम पितरो वसिष्ठस्य प्रजापतेः ।  
हिरण्यगर्भस्य सुताः शूद्रास्त्वान्भावयन्त्युत ॥  
मानसा नाम ते लोका वर्तन्ते यत्र ते दिवि ।  
एतेषां मानसी कन्या नर्मदा सरितां वरा ।  
सा भावयति भूतानि दक्षिणापथगामिनी ॥  
जननी वसदस्योर्हि पुरुकुत्सपरियहः ।

The personages here spoken of are said to have their home in Mánasa; and a mind-born daughter is affiliated on them, in the form of the river Narmadá. Compare note || in p. 162, *supra*.

For discrepancies between this extract and that in the next note, additional to those pointed out by the Translator, *vide supra*, p. 160, note ‡.

The *Matsya-purāṇa*, by evident corruption, gives the Sukálins—as it calls them—the synonym Mánasas.

§ Śl. 985, 986:

सुकाला नाम पितरो वसिष्ठस्य प्रजापतेः ।  
निरता दिवि लोकेषु ज्योतिर्भासिषु भार्गव ॥  
सर्वकामसमृद्धेषु द्विजास्त्वान्भावयन्त्युत ।  
तेषां वै मानसी कन्या गौर्नाम्ना दिवि विश्रुता ॥



tisfaction, for eight years, from ancestral offerings upon the day of new moon when the star of the conjunc-

Besides these *Pitris* or progenitors, other heavenly beings\* are, sometimes, made to adopt a similar character. Thus, Manu† says: "The wise call our fathers *Vasus*; our paternal grandfathers, *Rudras*; our paternal great-grandfathers, *Ādityas*; agreeably to a text of the *Vedas*:" that is, these divine beings are to be meditated upon, along with, and as not distinct from, progenitors. Hemādri quotes the *Nandi Upapurāṇa*‡ for a different practice, and directs *Vishnu* to be identified with the father; *Brahmā*, with the grandfather; and *Śiva*, with the great-grandfather. This, however, is *Śaiya* innovation. The *Vaishnavas* direct *Aniruddha* to be regarded as one's-self; and *Pradyumna*, *Sankarshaṇa*, and *Vāsudeva*, as the three ancestors. Again, they are identified with *Varuṇa*, *Prājāpatya*, and *Agni*; or, again, with months, seasons, and years. *Nirṇaya Sindhu*, p. 284. It may be doubted how far any of these correctly represent the original notions inculcated by the texts of the *Vedas*, from which, § in the most essential particulars, they are derived.

\* Also *vide supra*, p. 98, note †; p. 163, note †. The *Saumyas* and *Kāvyas* are mentioned in Vol. II., p. 303, text and note 1; also, with the *Agnidagdhas* and *Anagnidagdhas*, in the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, III., 199:

अग्निदग्धानग्निदग्धान्काव्यान्बर्हिषदस्तथा ।

अग्निष्वात्तांश्च सौम्यांश्च विप्राणामेव निर्दिशेत् ॥

In Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, the *Agnidagdhas* are said to be certain *pitris* "who, when alive, kept up the household flame, and presented oblations with fire"; the *Anagnidagdhas*, *pitris*, "apparently, who, when alive, did not observe religious rites."

† III., 284:

वसून्वदन्ति वै पितृनुद्वांश्चैव पितामहान् ।

प्रपितामहांस्त्वादित्याञ्श्रुतिरेषा सनातनी ॥

‡ Some extracts from the *Nandi-purāṇa*,—as Hemādri, like the *Nirṇaya-sindhu*, calls the work here named,—and further particulars touching the *pitris*, will be found in a note at the end of the volume.

For the *Nandi-purāṇa*, *vide supra*, p. 163, note †.

§ Where?

tion<sup>1</sup> is Anurádhá,\* Visákhá, or Swáti; and, for twelve years, when it is Pushya, Árdrá,† or Punarvasu. It is not easy‡ for a man to effect his object, who is desirous of worshipping the Pitris, or the gods, on a day of new moon when the stars are those of Dhanishthá, Púrvabhádrapadá, or Śatabhishaj.§ Hear, also, an account of another class of Śráddhas, which afford especial contentment to progenitors,|| as ex-

<sup>1</sup> When the Yogatára, or principal star seen, is the chief star or stars of these asterisms or lunar mansions, respectively. See the table given by Mr. Colebrooke: Asiatic Researches, Vol. IX., p. 346.¶ The first three named in the text are stars in Scorpio, Libra, and Arcturus; the second three are stars in Cancer, Orion, and Gemini; and the third are stars in the Dolphin, Pegasus, and Aquarius.

\* The Sanskrit has its synonym, Maitra.

† Raudra, its synonym, is the word used in the original.

‡ वासवाजिकपादुचे पितृणां तृप्तिमिच्छताम् ।

वारुणं चाप्यमावास्यां देवानामपि दुर्लभा ॥

"For those who wish to propitiate the progenitors, or the gods, a day of new moon under the asterism Vāsava, or Ajaikapád, or Varuṇa, is hard to find."

Compare what is said of Dhanishthá in p. 169, *infra*.

§ Substituted for "Śatabhishá". The three names in the Sanskrit are as in the last note. The commentator wrongly interprets Vāsava by Jyeshthá.

|| नवसुखेष्वमावास्यां यदेतेष्वनीपते ।

तदा तृप्तिमदं आर्चं पितृणां शृणु चापरम् ॥

"When, O king, the day of new moon falls under any of these nine asterisms, then exequial rites are propitiatory of the progenitors. And listen further."

This stanza comes immediately after that in note ‡, above. The Translator passed by the first line of it, and connected the second with what follows; namely:

गीतं सनत्कुमारेण यदेलाय महात्मने ।

पृच्छते पितृभक्ताय अज्ञयावनताय च ॥

¶ Or *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. II., table opposite p. 322.

plained, by Sanatkumāra, (the son of Brahmā), to the magnanimous Purūravas,\* when, full of faith and devotion to the Pitṛis, he inquired (how he might please them). The third lunar day of the month Vaiśākha (April, May), and the ninth of Kārttika (October, November), in the light fortnight; the thirteenth of Nabha (July, August), and the fifteenth of Māgha (January, February), in the dark fortnight; are called, by ancient teachers, the anniversaries of the first day of a Yuga or age (Yugādya), and are esteemed most sacred. On these days, water mixed with sesamum-seeds should be regularly presented to the progenitors of mankind; as well as on every solar and lunar eclipse; on the eighth lunations of the dark fortnights of Āgrahāyaṇa, Pausa, and Māgha† (November—February);‡ on the two days commencing the solstices, when the nights

\* Called, in the Sanskrit, by his metronym, Aila, i. e., son of Ilā.

† For an account of the *mānsāśṭakā* festival, see Professor Wilson's *Essays and Lectures*, &c., Vol. II., pp. 181, 182. Also *vide supra*, p. 106, note †.

‡ The text has only "on the three eighth days after the full moon", **त्रिषष्टकासु**; the months not being specified: but their names are stated in recent copies of commentary A,—though not in old ones, nor in commentary B,—in the following couplet, professedly taken from the *Kīrma-purāṇa*:

**मार्गशीर्षे तथा पुष्ये माघमासे तथैव च ।**

**तिस्रोऽष्टकाः समाख्याताः कृष्णपक्षे च सूरिभिः ॥**

The months here named are Mārgaśīrsha, Pushya,—a rare substitute for Pausa,—and Māgha. I have, accordingly, corrected the Translator's "Āgrahāyaṇa, Māgha, and Phālguna (December—February)."

According to Āśwalāyana's *Gṛihya-sūtra*, II., IV., 1, the great *aṣṭakās* are four in number, coming in the frosty and the dewy seasons, that is to say, in Mārgaśīrsha, Pausa, Māgha, and Phālguna. Śāṅkhāyana, in his *Gṛihya-sūtra*, recognizes but three. See Dr. Stenzler's *Āśwalāyana*, Part II., p. 71; also, Kullūka and Medhātithi on the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, IV., 160.



and days alternately begin to diminish; on those days which are the anniversaries of the beginning of the Manwantaras; when the sun is in the path of the goat; and on all occurrences of meteoric phenomena.\* A Śráddha at these seasons contents the Pitris for a thousand years: such is the secret which they have imparted. The fifteenth day of the dark half of the month Mágha, when united with the conjunction of the asterism over which Varuṇa presides (Śatabhishaj †), is a season of no little sanctity, when offerings are especially grateful to the progenitors. Food and water presented by men who are of respectable families, when the asterism Dhanishthá is combined with the day of new moon, content the Pitris for ten thousand years; whilst they repose for a whole age, when satisfied by offerings made on the day of new moon when Árdra is the lunar mansion. §

\* चन्द्रवयो माधवमासि यत्र  
दिनचयश्चाप्यनद्वयं च ।  
मन्वन्तराद्यास्त्रिषयस्तथैव  
च्छाया गजस्य व्यतिपातकालः ॥

These verses occur in only a few of my MSS. Commentary B recognizes them, but in silence; while commentary A omits them. Professor Wilson's translation supposes readings materially different from those here given.

On *Chháyá gajasya*, "the shadow of the elephant", see Vol. II., p. 264, note \*; and pp. 276, 277; also, the *Laws of the Mánavas*, III., 274. For *vyatipáta*,—the same as *vyatipáta*,—see p. 163, note \*, *supra*.

Compare, respecting the seasons most appropriate for exequial offerings, the *Laws of the Mánavas*, III., 122, 276; IV., 150; also, the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 217, 218. † Altered from "Śatabhishá."

‡ *Samagra*. There is a variant, *sahasra*, 'a thousand.'

§ तत्रैव चेन्नाद्रपदास्तु पूर्वाः  
काले तदा यत्क्रियते पितृभ्यः ।

"He who, after having offered food and libations to the Pitris, bathes in the Ganges, Satlaj,\* Vipásá (Beas), Saraswatí,† or the Gomatí at Naimisha,‡ expiates all his sins. The Pitris also say: 'After having received satisfaction for a twelvemonth, we shall further derive gratification by libations offered, by our descendants, at some place of pilgrimage, at the end of the dark fortnight of Mágha.'§ The songs of the Pitris confer purity of heart, integrity of wealth, prosperous seasons, perfect rites, and devout faith,—all that men can desire. Hear the verses that constitute those songs, by listening to which all those advantages will be secured, O prince, by you:|| 'That enlightened

आहं परां तृप्तिमुपेत्य तेन

युगं समयं पितरः स्वपन्ति ॥

This is the only reading that I find; and the asterism mentioned is *Púrvabhádrapadá*,—not "Árdra", which, on a rapid glance, might be surmised in the first line.

\* *Satadrú*, in the original.

† See, for the *Satadrú*, *Vipásá*, and *Saraswatí* rivers, Vol. II., pp. 130, 131, and 142—144.

‡ In the Sanskrit, *Naimisha-gomatí*, the Gomatí of the country—apparently—in which lies the Naimisha forest, as distinguished from the better-known Gomatí in Oude; for which see Vol. II., p. 146, text and note 3. A third Gomatí, a feeder of the Sindhu, is spoken of in the *Rigveda*, X., LXXV., 6. For the locality of Naimisha, see Professor Wilson's *Essays, Analytical, &c.*, Vol. I., p. 137.

§ गायन्ति चैतत्पितरः सदैव

वर्षामघातृप्तिमवाप्य भूयः ।

माघासितान्ते शुभतीर्थतोयै-

र्यास्वाम तृप्तिं तनयादिदत्तैः ॥

No other reading appears in my MSS.; and I would substitute, in lieu of "satisfaction for a twelvemonth", "satisfaction under the asterism *Maghá* during the rainy season."

Compare the *Laws of the Mánava*, III., 273.

|| What follows is known as the *Pitri-gítá*.

individual who begrudges not his wealth, but presents us with cakes, shall be born in a distinguished family. Prosperous and affluent shall that man ever be, who, in honour of us, gives to the Brahmans, if he is wealthy, jewels, clothes, land, conveyances, wealth, or any valuable presents; or who, with faith and humility, entertains them with food, according to his means, at proper seasons. If he cannot afford to give them dressed food, he must, in proportion to his ability, present them with unboiled grain,\* or such gifts, however trifling, as he can bestow. Should he be utterly unable even to do this, he must give to some eminent Brahman, bowing at the same time before him, sesamum-seeds adhering to the tips of his fingers, and sprinkle water to us, from the palms of his hands, upon the ground;† or he must gather, as he may,‡ fodder for a day, and give it to a cow; by which he will, if firm in faith, yield us satisfaction. If nothing of this kind is practicable, he must go to a forest, and lift up his arms to the sun and other regents of the spheres,§

\* *Dhānya-māna*, i. e., as much as a man can eat, says the commentator.

† तिलैः सप्ताष्टभिर्वापि समवेताञ्जलाञ्जलीन् ।

भक्तिनयः समुद्दिश्य भुव्यस्त्राकं प्रदास्यति ॥

Instead of "and sprinkle", &c., read: "or, bowing in devotion, he will offer to us, by name, on the ground, handfuls of water, with seven or eight grains of sesamum."

‡ "Whencesoever he can", *yatañ kutaśchit*.

§ *Lokapāla*. This word, it should seem, more properly designates the four superintendents named in Vol. II., pp. 86 and 261-263. But it is also used, as here, for *dikpāla*. The *dikpālas*—see Vol. II., pp. 112, 118; also, p. 118, *supra*,—are, at least in the later Hindu writings, eight in number. I owe to Dr. Muir the indication of a passage in the *Taittiriya-brāhmaṇa*,—III., XI., 5,—where seven *devatās* or deities are

and say, aloud: I have no money, nor property, nor grain, \* nor anything whatever fit for an ancestral offering. Bowing, therefore, to my ancestors, I hope the progenitors will be satisfied with these arms tossed up in the air in devotion.' These are the words of the Pitris themselves; and he who endeavours, with such means as he may possess, to fulfil their wishes, performs the ancestral rite called a Śrāddha."

assigned as follows: Agni, to the east; Indra, to the south; Soma, to the west; Mitra and Varuṇa, to the north; Bṛihaspati, to the region above; and Aditi, to the region here below.

For a long list of *lokapālas*, see Professor Wilson's *Select Specimens of the Theatre of the Hindus*, Vol. I., p. 219, note †.

\* My MSS., and likewise the commentator, have *dhana* only; reading:

न मेऽस्ति वित्तं न धनं न चान्यत् ।

It may be conjectured that the Translator, supposing the lection to be न धान्यं, wrote "nor grain", and forgot to strike it out, when he came to prefer "nor property."

## CHAPTER XV.

What Brahmins are to be entertained at Śrāddhas. Different prayers to be recited. Offerings of food to be presented to deceased ancestors.

AURVA proceeded:—"Hear, next, O prince, what description of Brahmin should be fed at ancestral ceremonies.\* He should be one studied in various triplets of the R̥g- and Yajur Vedas;<sup>1</sup> one who is

---

<sup>1</sup> The Brahmins here particularized are termed *Trināchiketa*, *Trimadhu*, and *Trisuparṇā*, and are so denominated, according to the commentator, from particular parts of the Vedas. The first is so called from studying or reciting three *Anuvākas* of the *Kāthaka* branch of the Yajur-veda, commencing with the term *Trināchiketa*; the second, from three *Anuvākas* of the same Veda, beginning *Madhuvātā*, &c.; and the third, from a similar portion, commencing *Brahmavan namāmi*. † The first and third terms

---

\* The *pārvaṇa-śrāddha* is here described, says the scholiast.

† The commentator's words are: द्वितीयकाठकस्यास्त्रयोऽनुवाका-  
स्त्रिणाचिकेताः । तदध्यायी तदनुष्ठाता च त्रिणाचिकेतः । मधु वाता  
इति तृचाध्यायी तद्व्रतश्च त्रिमधुः । ब्रह्मणेन्नमामीत्याद्यनुवाकत्रया-  
ध्यायी तद्व्रतश्च त्रिसुपर्णः । The *trināchiketa* is, thus, said to be so called  
from three *anuvākas* of the second *Kāthaka*, denominated *trināchiketas*;  
the *trimadhu*, from three *śiṅhas*, beginning with the words *madhu vātāḥ*;  
and the *trisuparṇā*, from three *anuvākas*, beginning with the words  
*brahmaṇen namāmi*.

Of the passage referred to the *Kāthaka* I am unable to say anything at present. The three verses opening with the words *madhu vātāḥ* appear first in the *R̥gveda*, as I., XC., 6-8; and they reappear in the White *Yajurveda*, as XIII., 27-29. The position of the Vaidik passage alleged to be connected with the *trisuparṇā* has not been traced out.

Aparāditya, commenting on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 200, gives this definition of *trimadhu*, denoting a person: त्रिमध्याख्यं व्रतं ब्रह्मा-  
पसदाख्यमेव वेदभागमधीति स त्रिमधुः ।



acquainted with the six supplementary sciences of the Vedas;<sup>1</sup>\* one who understands the Vedas; one who practises the duties they enjoin;<sup>2</sup> one who exercises

occur in Manu, III., 185; and Kullūka Bhaṭṭa explains Triṇāchiketa to mean a portion of the Yajur-veda, and the Brahman who studies it; and Trisuparṇā, a part of the R̥ich, and the Brahman who is acquainted with it. The Nirṇaya Sindhu explains the terms in a like manner, but calls the Trisuparṇā, as well as the Triṇāchiketa, prayers, portions of the Yajus. The Trimadhu it assigns to the R̥ich. Other explanations are also given to the terms Triṇāchiketa and Trisuparṇā; the first being explained a Brahman who thrice performs the ceremony called Chayana;† and the last, one who, after the seven ascending generations, worships the Pitṛis termed Somapas.‡ These explanations are, however, considered less correct than the preceding, and which are thus given in the authority cited: त्रिणाचिकेतस्त्रिमुपर्णो यजुर्वेदिकदेशी तद्व्रतेन तदध्यायिनी । . . . त्रिमधु ऋग्वेदिकदेशस्तदध्यायी ।

<sup>1</sup> For the six Angas, see p. 67, *supra*.

<sup>2</sup> So the commentator§ distinguishes the Vedavit,—the Brah-

\* *Shadāṅgavit*.

† केचिन्नाचिकेतं चयनं त्रिः कृतवानित्यर्थमाहुः । And herewith agrees Śāṅkara, where commenting on the *Katha Upanishad*, I., 17: त्रिणाचिकेतः । त्रिःकृतो नाचिकेतोऽप्रिक्षितो येन स त्रिणाचिकेतस्तद्विज्ञानस्तदनुष्ठानवान्वा ।

‡ यस्य सप्त पूर्वे सोमपाः स त्रिमुपर्ण इति बोपदेवः । “He of whom seven forefathers have drunk the juice of the moon-plant is a *trisuparṇa*: so says Bopadeva.” These words occupy the blank, indicated by asterisks, in the passage quoted at the end of the note here supplemented; and the definitions preceding them are referred to the same author.

§ His words are: वेदवित् । वेदार्थविचारकः । ओत्रियः । तदर्थानुष्ठाता । In the *Mitāksharā*, I., 219, we read: ओत्रियः । श्रुताध्ययनसंपन्नः । Kullūka, on the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, III., 128, says: कृन्दीमात्राध्यायी ओत्रियः । Medhātithi has: ओत्रियः । शान्दसः कृत्स्नमन्त्रब्राह्मणिकां शाखामधीते यः ।

penance;\* a chanter of the principal Sāma-veda,<sup>1</sup> an officiating priest,† a sister's son, a daughter's son, a son-in-law, a father-in-law, a maternal uncle, an ascetic,‡ a Brahman who maintains the five fires,§ a pupil, a kinsman;|| one who reverences his parents.¶ A man should first employ the Brahmans first specified in the (principal) obsequial rite; and the others, (commencing with the ministering priest), in the subsidiary ceremonies\*\* instituted to gratify his ancestors.

man who understands the meaning of the text of the Vedas,—from the Śrōtriya, who practises the rites he studies.

<sup>1</sup> Portions of the Sāman contained in the Āraṇyaka are called the Jyeshtha, 'elder' or 'principal', Sāman.††

\* *Yogin.*

† *Ritvig.*

‡ *Tapo-nishtha.*

§ According to Ānanda, the five fires, spoken of in the *Kātha Upanishad*, III., 1, are called *gārhapatya*, *dakshināgni*, *dhavaniya*, *sabhya*, and *avasathya*. Also see the *Mitāksharā*, I., 221. The more technical name of the *dakshināgni* or *dakshina* is *anvāhāryapachāna*; as we learn from the *Chhāndogya Upanishad*, IV., XII., 1. The three first-named fires, out of the five, are the principal. See, regarding them, the Translator's last note on Chapter VI. of Book IV.

|| *Sambandhin*, 'a relation by marriage.'

¶ Compare the *Laws of the Mānavas*, III., 148.

\*\* *Anukalpa.*

†† The commentator says that the *jyeshtha-sāman* opens with the *rich* beginning with the words *mūrdhnanāḥ divaḥ*: मूर्धानं दिव इत्यावृन्वि-  
शेषणीतं ज्येष्ठसाम । तद्वाता ज्येष्ठसामगः । Professor Wilson should seem to have preferred the authority of Kullūka, who thus explains the term *jyeshtha-sāmaga*, occurring in the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, III., 185: ज्येष्ठसामानि आरख्यके गीयन्ते । तेषां गाता । The stanza in question is found in the *Rigveda*, VI., VII., 1; and it is met with twice in the *Sāmaveda*,—as I., 87, and as II., 490.

"A false friend, a man with ugly nails\* or black teeth,† a ravisher, a Brahman who neglects the service of fire and sacred study, a vender of the Soma-plant, a man accused of any crime, a thief, a calumniator, a Brahman who conducts religious ceremonies for the vulgar; one who instructs his servant in holy writ, or is instructed in it by his servant; the husband of a woman who has been formerly betrothed to another; a man who is undutiful to his parents;‡ the protector of the husband of a woman of the servile caste,§ or the husband of a woman of the servile caste;|| and a Brahman who ministers to idols¶—are not proper persons to be invited to an ancestral offering.<sup>1</sup> On the first day, let a judicious man invite eminent teachers of the Vedas,\*\* and other Brahmans, and, according to their directions, determine what is

<sup>1</sup> Manu, III., 150, &c.

\* *Kunakhin*. The commentator explains this term to mean 'with nails naturally bad.' Neither Kullūka nor Medhātithi justifies Sir William Jones's rendering, "a man with whitlows on his nails." See his Translation of "Menu", III., 153.

† 'A eunuch', *kliba*, is omitted.

‡ Rather, an 'abandoner' of them, *ujjhaka*.

§ *Vṛishali-sūti-poshtri*, "the supporter of the offspring of a *vṛishali*", who seems to be a woman sprung from a man that has lost caste.

Professor Wilson read, for *sūti*, *pati*, which I find in some MSS. But the gloss, शुद्रापत्यपोषकः, shows that *pati* is a clerical error.

|| *Vṛishali*.

¶ *Devalaka*. He must have been so for three years, says the commentator, to incur disqualification. And yet an idol was reputed so holy that it was sacrilege to pass over its shadow. *Vide supra*, p. 137, text, and p. 138, note ||.

\*\* *Śrotriya*. *Vide supra*, p. 174, note §.

to be dedicated to the gods, and what to the Pitris.\* Associated with the Brahmans, let the institutor of an obsequial rite abstain from anger and incontinence.† He who, having eaten, himself, in a Śrāddha, and fed Brahmans, and appointed them to their sacred offices, is guilty of incontinence, thereby sentences his progenitors to shameful suffering.‡ In the first place, the Brahmans before described are to be invited: but those holy men§ who come to the house without an invitation are, also, to be entertained. The guests are to be reverently received with water for their feet, and the like; and the entertainer, holding holy grass in his hand,|| is to place them, after they have rinsed their mouths, upon seats. An uneven number of Brahmans is to be invited in sacrifices to the manes; an even, or uneven, number, in those presented to the gods; or one only, on each occasion.¶

"Then let the householder, inspired by religious faith, offer oblations\*\* to the maternal grandfather,

<sup>1</sup> As two, or five, at a ceremony dedicated to the gods; three, at the worship of the Pitris. Nirṇaya Sindhu, p. 311.

\* कथयेच्च तदैवेषां नियोगात्पित्रैर्देविकान् ।

† Add 'fatigue', *āyāsa*; also, "this is a great offence on that occasion", दोषस्तत्र महानयम् ।

‡ अग्निं नियुक्तो भुक्त्वा तु भोजयित्वा नियुज्य च ।

ब्रवायी रेतसो गते मज्जयत्यात्मनः पितॄन् ॥

§ *Yati*; these being Brāhmans, as the original conditions.

|| *Pavitra-pāṇi*; literally, 'pure-handed'.

¶ It is directed, in the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 227:

युग्मान्देवे यथाशक्ति पित्र्येऽयुग्मांस्तथैव च ।

\*\* *Śrāddha*.

along with the worship of the Viśwadevas,<sup>1</sup> or the ceremony called Vaiśwadeva,\* (which comprehends offerings to both paternal and maternal ancestors, and to ancestors in general).† Let him feed the Brahmans who are appropriated to the gods and to maternal ancestors, with their faces to the east; and those set apart for the paternal ancestors and ancestors in general, with their faces to the north.‡ Some say, that

<sup>1</sup> The worship of the Viśwadevas§ (see p. 158, *supra*) forms a part of the general Śrāddhas, and of the daily sacrifices of the householder. According to the Vāyu, this was a privilege conferred upon them, by Brahmā and the Pitṛis, as a reward for religious austerities practised, by them, upon Himālaya. Their introduction as a specific class seems to have originated in the custom of sacrificing to the gods collectively, or to all the gods,|| as the name Viśwadevas implies. They appear, however, as a

\* तथा मातामहश्चाद्यं वैश्वदेवसमन्वितम् ।  
कुर्वीत भक्तिसंपन्नस्तन्त्रं वा वैश्वदेविकम् ॥

† "It consists in oblations to the gods, to the manes, and to the spirits." Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 188.

‡ The original passage, in correct MSS., runs thus:

प्राङ्मुखान्भोजयेद्विप्रान्देवानामुभयार्थकान् ।  
पितृमातामहानां च भोजयेच्चाप्युदङ्मुखान् ॥

"For both sets of his ancestors let him feed, with their faces to the east, Brahmans retained for the gods called Viśwadevas; and let him also feed, with their faces to the north, Brahmans retained for his paternal and maternal manes."

The Translator, corrected above, transposed "east" and "north".

Comment: उभयार्थकान् । पितृमातामहीयवैश्वदेवार्थकान् । पितृमातामहवर्गश्चादीयानुदङ्मुखानिति वान्वयः ।

Compare the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 228:

द्वौ देवे प्राकृत्यः पित्र्य उदगेकैकमेव वा ।

§ See note at the end of this chapter.

|| So the term signifies, literally: but I have never found it expressed by the compound "Viśwadevas", as it is by Professor Wilson.

the viands of the Śrāddha should be kept distinct for these two sets of ancestors; but others maintain, that they are to be fed with the same food, at the same time.\* Having spread Kuśa grass for seats,† and offered libations‡ according to rule, let the sensible

distinct class, in the Vedas;§ and their assumption of this character is, therefore, of ancient date. The daily offering to them is noticed by Manu, III., 90, || 121;¶ and offerings to 'the gods' are, also, enjoined at the beginning and end of a Śrāddha. Kul-lūka Bhaṭṭa understands, here, the Viśvadevas; and it probably is so: but, in another verse, different divinities are specified: "First, as it is ordained, having satisfied Agni, Soma, and Yama, with clarified butter, let him proceed to satisfy the manes of his progenitors."\*\* Verse 211.†† Manu also directs them to be worshipped first and last in order. See Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., pp. 265, 271, &c.‡‡

\* पृथक्कृतयोः केचिदाहुः श्राद्धस्य करणं नृप ।  
एकैकेन पाकेन वदन्त्यन्ये महर्षयः ॥

† *Viśvata.*

‡ *Argha.*

§ Professor Wilson has elsewhere observed, that "The Viśvadevas are, sometimes, vaguely applied to divinities in general; but they also form a class, whose station and character are imperfectly noticed, but who are entitled, at most religious rites, to share in the solemnity." Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 9, note b.

Bhaga, Mitra, Aditi, Daksha, Asridh, Aryaman, Varuṇa, Soma, and the Aśvins, named together in the *Rigveda*, LXXXIX., 3, are said to be considered as Viśve devas.

Of all these Daksha alone is included in any of the various lists of post-vaiddik Viśve devas collected in the last note in p. 189, *infra*.

|| विश्वेभ्यश्चैव देवेभ्यो बलिमाकाश उत्क्षिपेत् ।  
दिवाचरेभ्यो भूतेभ्यो नक्तंचारिभ्य एव च ॥

¶ See Vol. II., p. 22, note §. \*\* Sir William Jones's translation.

†† अग्नेः सोमयमाभ्यां च कृत्वाप्यायनमादितः ।  
हविर्दानेन विधिवत्पश्चात्संतर्पयेत्पितॄन् ॥

‡‡ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 181, 188, &c.

man invoke the deities, with the concurrence of the Brahmans who are present.<sup>1</sup> Let the man who is acquainted with the ritual offer a libation to the gods, with water and barley; having presented to them flowers,\* perfumes, and incense.† Let him offer the same to the Pitṛis, placed upon his left; and, with the consent (of the Brahmans), having first provided seats of Kuśa‡ grass doubled, let him invoke, with (the usual) prayers, the manes (to the ceremony), offering a libation, on his left hand, of water and sesamum. He will then, with the permission of the Brahmans, give food to any guest who arrives at the time, or who is desirous of victuals, or who is passing along the road:§ for holy saints and ascetics, || benefactors

---

<sup>1</sup> The text is तदनुज्ञया, 'with *their* assent;' but no noun occurs, in the sentence, with which the relative is connected. It must mean the Brahmans, however; as in this passage of Vṛiddha Parāśara: "Let the sacrificer place his left hand on the Brahman's right knee, and say, 'Shall I invoke the Viśwadevas?' And, being desired to invoke them, let him address them with the two Mantras, 'Viśwadevas, he is come!' 'Viśwadevas, hear him!'"

ततः सव्यं करं न्यस्य विप्रदक्षिणजानुनि ।  
 देवानावाहयिष्येऽहमिति वाचमुदीरयेत् ॥  
 आवाहयेदनुज्ञातो विश्वे देवाः स आगतः ।  
 विश्वे देवाः शृणुतेममिति मन्त्रद्वयं पठेत् ॥ ¶

---

\* Srag, 'garlands.'

† Add 'lights', *dīpa*.

‡ Darbha, in the original.

§ काले तत्रातिथिं प्राप्तमन्नकामं नृपाध्वगम् ।

|| The original has only one word, *yogin*, for "holy saints and ascetics."

¶ Bṛihat-Parāśara's *Dharmasāstra*, V., 184, 185.

of mankind, are traversing this earth, disguised in various shapes.<sup>1</sup> On this account, let a prudent man welcome a person who arrives at such a season: for inattention to a guest frustrates the consequences of an ancestral offering.

"The sacrificer is then to offer food, without salt or seasoning,\* to fire,<sup>2</sup> three several times, with the consent of the assistant Brahmans; exclaiming, first: 'To fire, the vehicle of the oblations;† to the manes! Swáhá!' Next, addressing the oblation‡ to Soma, the lord of the progenitors, § and giving the third to Vairaswata. || He is then to place a very little of the residue of the oblation ¶ in the dishes of the Brahmans; and, next, presenting them with choice viands, well-dressed and seasoned, and abundant, he is to request them, civilly, to partake of it at their pleasure.\*\* The

---

<sup>1</sup> This notion occurs, more than once, in the Váyu, in nearly the same words:

सिद्धा हि विप्ररूपेण चरन्ति पृथिवीमिमाम् ।  
तस्मादतिथिमायान्तमभिगच्छेत्कृताञ्जलिः ॥

<sup>2</sup> This places the initiatory oblations noticed by Manu (see p. 178, note 1, *supra*) subsequent to the offerings to the Viśwadevas.

---

\* *Vyanjana*; explained, by the scholiast, to denote pot-herbs and the like.

† *Kavya*.

‡ *Ahuti*.

§ *Pitṛimat*, 'attended by the manes.'

|| The commentator observes: वैवस्वताय यमायेति पृथगाहुतिः  
ग्राहिभेदव्यवस्थिता ।

¶ *Huta*.

\*\* ततोऽन्नमिष्टमत्यर्थमभीष्टमपि सत्कृतम् ।

दत्त्वा जुषधमिच्छातो वाच्यमेतदग्निद्वारम् ॥



Brahmans are to eat of such food attentively, in silence, with cheerful countenances, and at their ease. The sacrificer is to give it to them, not churlishly, nor hurriedly, \* but with devout faith.

“Having, next, recited the prayer for the discomfiture of malignant spirits,<sup>1</sup> and scattered sesamum-seeds upon the ground, the Brahmins (who have been fed) are to be addressed,† in common with the ancestors (of the sacrificer), in this manner: ‘May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather, in the persons of these Brahmins, receive satisfaction! May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather derive nutriment from these oblations to fire!‡ May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather derive satisfaction from the balls of food placed, by me, upon the ground! May my father, grandfather, and great-grandfather be pleased with what I have, this day, offered§ them in faith! May my maternal grandfather, his father, and his father, also enjoy contentment from my offerings! May all the gods || experience gratifi-

<sup>1</sup> The Rakshoghna Mantra,—the extinguishing of a lamp lighted to keep off evil spirits, which is accompanied by a Mantra, or prayer. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VII., p. 274. ¶

\* अकुप्यता चात्नरता ।

† *Dhaya*, ‘to be meditated on.’

‡ पिता पितामहश्चैव तथैव प्रपितामहः ।

मम वृत्तिं प्रयान्त्वयिहोमाप्यायितमूर्त्यः ॥

§ For *ihāhṛita*, ‘here offered,’ there is a variant, *udāhṛita*, ‘spoken.’

|| *Vishve devāḥ*.

¶ Or Colebrooke’s *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 191.

cation, and all evil beings\* perish! May the lord of sacrifice,† the imperishable; deity Hari, be the acceptor of all oblations made to the manes or the gods! § And may all malignant spirits,|| and enemies of the deities, ¶ depart from the rite!

“When the Brahmans have eaten sufficiently, the worshipper must scatter some of the food upon the ground, and present them, individually, with water, to rinse their mouths. Then, with their assent, he may place upon the ground balls made up of boiled rice and condiments, along with sesamum-seeds. With the part of his hand sacred to the manes he must offer sesamum-seeds, and water from his joined palms; and, with the same part of his hand, he must present cakes to his maternal ancestors.\*\* He should, in lonely places, naturally beautiful, and by the side of sacred streams, diligently make presents (to the manes and

\* *Yātudhāna*. See Vol. II., p. 292, note, near the foot of the page.

† *Yajñeshwara*. See Vol. II., p. 124, note †.

‡ *Avyayātman*, ‘immutable.’ See Vol. I., p. 17, note \*.

§ This is to translate हव्यसमस्तकव्यभोक्ता ।

|| *Rakshas*.

¶ “Enemies of the gods” renders *asura*.

“ नृत्नेषु तेषु विकिरेदन्नं विधेषु भूतले ।

दद्याच्चाचमनार्थाय तेभ्यो वारि सकृत्सकृत् ॥

सुतृप्तिस्त्रैरनुज्ञातः सर्वेषाम्निन भूतले ।

सतिलेन ततः पिण्डान्सम्यग्दद्यात्समाहितः ॥

पितृतीर्थेन सतिलान्दद्यादथ जलाञ्जलीन् ।

मातामहृभ्यस्तेनैव पिण्डांस्तीर्थेन निर्वपेत् ॥

“Instead of “Then, with their assent,” &c., read: “Authorized by them, *they being* fully satisfied, let him, collectedly, then duly offer, on the ground, funeral cakes made of all sorts of food and of sesamum.”

the Brahmans).<sup>1\*</sup> Upon Kuśa† grass, the tips of which are pointed to the south, and lying near the fragments (of the meat), let the householder present the first ball of food, consecrated: with flowers and incense, to his father; the second, to his grandfather; and the third, to his great-grandfather: and let him satisfy those who are contented with the wipings of his hand, by wiping it with the roots of Kuśa grass.<sup>2</sup> § After presenting balls of food to his maternal ancestors, in the same manner, accompanied by perfumes and incense, he is to give to the principal Brahmans water, to rinse their mouths; and then, with attention and piety, he is to give the Brahmans|| gifts, according to his power, soliciting their benedictions, accompanied

<sup>1</sup> Part of this passage is in the words of Manu, III., 207:

अवकाशेषु चोक्षेषु नदीतीरेषु चैव हि ।

It is omitted in the MSS. in the Bengali character.

<sup>2</sup> Manu, III., 216. ¶

\* दक्षिणाप्रवणं चैव प्रयत्नेनोपपादयेत् ।

अवकाशेषु चोक्षेषु जलतीरेषु चैव हि ॥

"And he should carefully select a southerly slope, in a pure place, and also by the side of water."

Compare the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 227:

परिसृते शुची देशे दक्षिणाप्रवणे तथा ।

† *Darbha*, its synonym, in the original; and so just below, and frequently.

‡ *Pájā*.

§ दर्भमुखे लेपभुजः प्रीणयेन्नेपधर्षणैः ।

|| *Pitṛebhyaḥ*, 'to the manes,' whom the Brāhmins represent. *Vide supra*, p. 182.

\* न्युष्य पिण्डांस्तत्स्नांस्तु प्रयतो विधिपूर्वकम् ।

तेषु दर्भेषु त हस्तं निमृज्यान्नेपभागिनाम् ॥

with the exclamation 'Swadhá!'<sup>1</sup>\* Having made presents to the Brahmins,† he is to address himself to the gods,‡ saying: 'May they who are the Viśwadevas be pleased with this (oblation)!' Having thus said, and the blessings to be solicited having been granted by the Brahmins, he is to dismiss first the paternal ancestors, and then the gods. The order is the same with the maternal ancestors and the gods, in respect to food, donation, and dismissal. Commencing with the washing of the feet, until the dismissing of the gods and Brahmins, the ceremonies are to be performed first for paternal ancestors, and then for ancestors on the mother's side.§ Let him dismiss the

---

<sup>1</sup> "Then let the *Brāhmans* address him, saying *swadhá*; for,

---

\* सुखधेयाशिषा युक्तां दद्याच्छ्रुत्या च दक्षिणाम् ।

We are to read, then: "and let him give, according to his ability, a present, accompanied with the benediction *suswadhá*."

† 'To them', agreeably to the Sanskrit. See note || in the preceding page.

‡ *Vaiśwadevika*.

§ तथेति चोक्ते तैर्विप्रैः प्रार्थनीयास्तथाशिषः ।

पश्चाद्विसर्जयेद्देवान्पूर्वं पित्र्यान्महामते ॥

मातामहानामप्येवं सह देवैः क्रमः स्मृतः ।

भोजने च स्वश्रुत्या च दाने तद्वद्विसर्जने ॥

आपादशौचनात्पूर्वं कुर्याद्देवद्विजन्मसु ।

विसर्जने तु प्रथमं पैत्रमातामहेषु वै ॥

"And, 'so be it' having been uttered by those *Brāhmans*, blessings are, likewise, to be solicited: and then let him dismiss, first, the *Brāhmans* entertained in the service of the manes, and, afterwards, those entertained in the service of the gods, O great-souled. For the maternal ancestors, too, along with the gods,—all these being represented by *Brāhmans*,—the order is laid down the same, as to food, donation according

Brahmans with kindly speeches and profound respect, and attend upon them at the end of the Śrāddha, until permitted, by them, to return. The wise man will then perform the invariable worship\* of the Viśwadevas, and take his own meal, along with his friends,† his kinsmen, and his dependants.

"In this manner, an enlightened householder will celebrate the obsequial worship of his paternal and maternal ancestors, who, satisfied by his offerings, will grant him all his desires. Three things are held pure at obsequies,—a daughter's son,‡ a Nepal blanket,

in all ceremonies relating to deceased ancestors, the word *swadhā* is the highest benison."§ Manu, III., 252. ||

to ability, and, in like manner, as to dismissal. *In the Vaiṣṇodeva ceremony*, let him first do *everything*, beginning with the purification of the feet, for the Brāhman entertained in the service of the gods; but let him first grant dismissal to the personated paternal ancestors and maternal ancestors."

On this passage the commentator remarks as follows: किञ्च पश्चाद्वि-  
सर्जयेदिति । अनेन विसर्जनमपि पितृपूर्वकमिति । अतोऽन्यत्सर्वं देव-  
पूर्वमेवेत्यर्थादुक्तम् । इममेवार्थं वैश्वदेवतन्त्रपक्षेऽप्याह । आपादेति ।  
पादप्रचालनात्प्रभृति देवार्थानां ब्राह्मणानां सर्वं प्रथमं कुर्यात्ततः  
पितृवर्गाणां ततो मातामहवर्गाणामिति । विसर्जनं त्विति । दक्षि-  
णाया उपलक्षणं पूर्वमेवोक्तत्वात् ।

\* *Nitya-kriyā*.

† *Pūjya* = *mānya*. Commentary.

‡ The MSS. have both *dauhitrak* and *dauhitrām*. And see note † in the next page.

§ This is Sir William Jones's rendering.

॥ स्वधास्त्वित्येव तं ब्रूयुर्ब्राह्मणास्तदनन्तरम् ।

स्वधाकारः परा ह्याशीः सर्वेषु पितृकर्मसु ॥

and sesamum-seeds;<sup>1</sup> and the gift, or naming, or sight,

<sup>1</sup> We have, here, the words of Manu:

त्रीणि आद्ये पवित्राणि दौहित्रः कुतपस्तिलाः ।

III., 235. 'Three things are held pure, at such obsequies,—the daughter's son, the Nepal blanket, and sesamum-seed.' Sir William Jones's translation of these terms rests upon the explanation of Kullūka Bhaṭṭa of this and the verse preceding:

व्रतस्थमपि दौहित्रं आद्ये यत्नेन भोजयेत् ।

कुतपं चासने दद्यात्तिलैश्च विकिरेन्महीम् ॥ \*

'Let him give his daughter's son, though a religious student, food at a Śrāddha, and the blanket for a seat,' &c. The commentator on our text says,† that some understand, by Daulitṛa, clarified butter made from the milk of a cow fed with grass gathered on the day of new moon; and some explain it a plate, or dish, of buffalo-horn.‡ Kutapa he interprets by Asbāma Mu-hūrta, the eighth hour of the day, or a little after noon; although he admits, that some render it a blanket made of goat's wool.§

\* III., 234.

† His words are: दौहित्रो दुहितुः सुतः । कुतपोऽष्टमो मुहूर्तः । दौहित्रमिति पाठे दौहित्रं घृतविशेषः ।

अमावास्यागते सोमे या च खादति गौक्षृणम् ।

दौहित्री सा मता तस्या घृतं दौहित्रमुच्यते ॥

इति । दौहित्रं खड्गपात्रमिति केचित् । केचित्तु कुतपमपि च्छागलोमजं कम्बलमाहुः । My oldest and best MSS. have अष्टमा घटिका, instead of अष्टमो मुहूर्तः. See Vol. I., p. 47, note 2; also, p. 120, note 2, *supra*.

The *Nirṇayasindhu* quotes, as follows, from the *Brahmaṇḍa-purāṇa*:

अमावास्यागते सोमे या खादयति गौक्षृणम् ।

तस्या गौर्यज्ञवेत्कीरं तद्वौहित्रमुदाहृतम् ॥

‡ Read 'rhinoceros-horn.' So explains the *Kalpataru*, says the *Nirṇayasindhu*: दौहित्रं खड्गपात्रमिति कल्पतरुः ।

§ Thus Vijnāneśwara understands it, in his comment on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 186: कुतपः । पार्वतीयच्छागरोमनिर्मितः कम्बलः । And similarly Aparāditya. Also see the *Śabdakālpadruma*, *sub voce*.

of silver (is, also, propitious).<sup>1</sup> The person offering a Śraddha should avoid anger, walking about, and hurry: these three things are very objectionable.\* The Viśwadevas, and paternal and maternal ancestors, and (the living members of) a man's family, are, all, nourished by the offerer of ancestral oblations.

"The class of Pitṛis derives support from the moon; and the moon is sustained by acts of austere devotion.† Hence, the appointment of one who practises austerities‡ is most desirable. A Yogin set before a

These explanations are also noticed in the *Nirṇaya Sindhu*, p. 302; and, upon the authority of the *Matsya Purāṇa*, Kutapa is said to mean eight things which equally consume (Tap) all sin (Ku), or,—noon, a vessel of rhinoceros-horn, a Nepal blanket, silver, holy grass, sesamum, kine, and a daughter's son:

मध्याह्नः खड्गपात्रं च तथा नेपालकम्बलः ।

रौप्यं दम्भास्त्रिला गावो दीहिचचाष्टमः स्मृतः ॥ §

पापं कुत्सितमित्याहुस्तस्य संतापकारिणः ।

अष्टचित्ते यतस्तस्मात्कुतपा इति विश्रुताः ॥ ||

<sup>1</sup> So the *Matsya Purāṇa* has 'the gift, sight, and name, of silver are desired:'

रजतस्य तथा दानं दर्शनं नाम चेष्टते । ¶

The notion originates with Manu, III., 202.\*\*

\* भोक्तुरप्यत्र राजेन्द्र चयमेतन्न शास्यते ।

† सोमाधारः पितृगणो योगाधारश्च चन्द्रमाः ।

See Vol. II., pp. 298—303; and compare Vol. I., p. 90.

‡ Yogin.

§ I find दीहिचं चाष्टमं स्मृतम्, also.

|| Quoted in the *Nirṇayasindhu*.

¶ This line is cited by the commentator.

\*\* राजतैर्भाजनैरेषामथो वा राजतान्वितैः ।

वार्यपि अद्वया दत्तमचयायोपकल्पते ॥

thousand Brahmans enables the institutor of obsequial rites to enjoy all his desires."<sup>1</sup>\*

\* The same doctrine is inculcated by the *Vāyu Purāṇa*:† but it appears to be a Paurāṇik innovation; for Manu places the Brahman intent on scriptural knowledge and on austere devotion on a level, and makes no mention of the Yogin. III., 134. ‡

\* सहस्रस्यापि विप्राणां योगी चित्पुरतः स्थितः ।

सर्वान्भोक्तृन्सारयति यजमानं तथा नृप ॥

Instead of "enables," &c., read "saves all the eaters, and, likewise, the sacrificer."

† Cited thus, in the commentary:

आद्वे प्रीताः पुनः सोमं पितरो योगमाश्रिताः ।

आप्याययन्ति योगेन वैलोक्यं तेन जीवति ॥

Just before, the scholiast quotes the ensuing stanza,—*śl.* 939—from the *Harivamśa*:

एतेऽस्मत्पितरस्तात योगिनां योगवर्धनाः ।

आप्याययन्ति ये पूर्वं सोमं योगबलेन वै ॥

In these passages, the manes are represented as nourishing the moon by their devotion of *yoga*.

\* ज्ञाननिष्ठा दिवाः केचित्तपोनिष्ठास्तथापरैः ।

तपःस्वाध्यायनिष्ठाश्च कर्मनिष्ठास्तथापरैः ॥

Note referred to at pp. 178, 179, *supra*.

The names and functions of the post-vaiddik *Viśve devas* are set forth, in the *Likhita-smṛiti*, as follows:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कालः कामो धुरिरोचनी ।

पुरूरवा माद्रवाश्च विश्वे देवाः प्रकीर्तिताः ॥

\* \* \* \* \*

इष्टिश्चाद्वे ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यश्च दैविके ।

कालः कामोऽपिकार्येषु काम्येषु धुरिरोचनी ।

पुरूरवा माद्रवाश्च पार्वणेषु नियोजयेत् ॥

Here the *Viśve devas* are said to be Kratu, Dakṣa, Vasu, Satya, Kāla, Kāma, Dhuri, Rochana, Purūravas, and Mādravas; ten, in all.

In Hemādri's *Śrāddhakalpa*, the *Bṛihaspati-smṛiti* is named as the source of these lines:



ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कामः कालस्तथैव च ।  
ध्वनिश्च रोचनश्चैव तथा चैव पुरुरवाः ।  
आर्द्रवच्च दशैते तु विश्वे देवाः प्रकीर्तिताः ॥

As well as of these:

इष्टिआद्ये ऋतुर्दक्षः सत्यो नान्दीमुखे वसुः ।  
नैमित्तिके कालकामी काम्ये च ध्वनिरोचनी ।  
पुरुरवा आर्द्रवश्चैव पार्वणे समुदाहृताः ॥

This last extract, slightly varied, is, in the *Śrāddhatattva*, likewise credited to Bṛihaspati.

And the following verses are professedly taken, by Hemādri, from the *Sankha-smṛiti*:

इष्टिआद्ये ऋतुर्दक्षः संकीर्त्यै विश्वदेविके ।  
नान्दीमुखे सत्यवसू काम्ये च ध्वनिरोचनी ॥

But I can find nothing of the sort in Bṛihaspati and Sankha.

In the *Agni-purāṇa*, we read, according to Colebrooke's best MS., copied in the time of Akbar:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कालः कामस्तथा ध्वनिः ।  
रोचकश्चाद्रवाश्चैव तथा चान्यः पुरुरवाः ।  
विश्वे देवा भवन्त्येते दश सर्वत्र पूजिताः ॥  
विश्वेदेवी ऋतुर्दक्षी सर्वास्तिष्ठिषु विश्रुता ।  
नित्यं नान्दीमुखश्चाद्ये वसुसत्यौ च पैतृके ॥  
नवान्नालम्बने देवी कामकाली सदैव हि ।  
अपि कन्यागते सूर्ये आद्ये वा ध्वनिरोचकी ।  
पुरुरवाश्चाद्रवाश्च विश्वेदेवी च पर्वणि ॥

The last half of this extract, slightly varied, is quoted in the *Nirṇaya-sindhu*, in Rāmakaśhīna's *Śrāddhagāṇapāṭi*, and in other works, as from the *Āditya-purāṇa*.

The ensuing enumeration is referred, in the *Rājyābhishekanpadhātī*, to the *Agni-purāṇa*; but I have not been able to find it there:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कामः कालो ध्वनिर्जयः ।  
पुरुरवा माद्रवाश्च विश्वे देवाश्च रोचनः ॥

Here the *Viśve devas* number eleven; the additional one being *Jaya*.

In the *Nītimayūkha* and *Pīrtakamalākara*, we meet with the subjoined verses, taken, perhaps, from the *Vasishṭha-saṁhitā*:

ऋतुर्दक्षो वसुः सत्यः कालः कामो मुनिस्तथा ।  
धृतिमान्मनुजश्चैव रोचमानस्तथैव च ।  
एते त्वामभिषिञ्चतु विश्वे देवास्तथा दश ॥

The name *Muni*, in the first line, looks exceedingly like a mere clerical error.

We read, further, in the *Sārasaṅgraha*:

पुंरुवा माद्रवाश्च क्रतुर्दत्तौ पर्वज्याः ।  
नान्दिके वसुसखौ च काम्ये तु धुरिरोचनौ ॥  
कालकामी तु विज्ञेयौ वह्निकायै द्विजोत्तम ।  
विश्वे देवाः समाख्याताः आद्यकर्मसु सर्वदा ॥

We have, thus, to choose between Dhuri, Dhvani, and Muni; between Rochana, Rochaka, Rochamāna, and the Lochana of some MSS.; between Purūravas and Dhṛitimat; and between Mādravas, Ādravas, Ādrava, and Manuja. I incline to think that the मा-, in the reading पुंरुवा माद्रवाश्च, may have been corrupted out of आ-, and this out of अ. The *Nirāyasinidhu*, like other treatises, in quoting the second passage which Hemādri refers to Brīhaspati, and the extract from the *Agni-purāṇa*, gives, instead of the immetrical पुंरुवा आद्रवश्चैव, and पुंरुवाश्चाद्रवाश्च, पुंरुवाद्रवौ चैव. Possibly, this originated from पुंरुवोद्रवौ चैव, which yields, at all events, in lieu of two unintelligible names, two intelligible,—Purūravas and Ādrava. The termination of the unmeaning Mādravas and Ādravas was, perhaps, suggested by that of Purūravas.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, in my MSS., declares:

क्रतुर्दत्तः अयः सत्यः कालः कामो धुनिसखा ।  
कुरुवानमवांश्चैव रोचमानश्च ते दश ।  
धर्मपुत्राः सृता ह्येते विश्वायां जज्ञिरे शुभाः ॥

Here the Viśve devas, called sons of Dharma and Viśvā,—see Vol. II., pp. 21, 22,—are said to be ten in number, namely: Kratu, Daksha, Śrava, Satya, Kāla, Kāma, Dhuni, Kuruvat, Amavat, and Rochamāna.

Śrava, possibly, here grew out of Vasu, with its consonants transposed. Dhuni, again, could easily be corrupted from Dhuri; or *vice versa*. See Vol. II., p. 23, note §. For Kuruvat it is obvious to propose Puruvat,—the original, perhaps, of the readings Purūravas and Dhṛitimat; as Amavat may have been of Ādravas, &c.

It is a suggestive fact, that none of the dozen or more law-books which I have examined for the Viśve devas refers to these verses,—the oldest, not impossibly, of all that are cited in this note. Is this omission to be accounted for by the desuetude of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*? And can that work be more ancient than the *Likhita-smṛiti*, in the form of it which has been derived to us?

Perhaps it was even some older work than the *Vāyu-purāṇa* that led Śankara—in his commentary on the *Bṛihad-āraṇyaka Upaniṣad*, I., IV., 12,—to count Viśvā's sons, the Viśve devas, at thirteen.

In the *Harivamśa*, śl. 11541–4, I make out, as the result of collating several MSS.:

विश्वे देवाश्च विश्वायां धर्मोद्भूता इति श्रुतिः ।  
 दक्षश्चैव महाबाहुर्वसुश्च सुत एव च ॥  
 सुधर्मा च महाबाहुः शङ्खपाच्च महाबलः ।  
 पृथुश्चैव महाबाहुर्कम्पुष्पाश्च तथैव च ॥  
 चाक्षुषश्च मनोरते तथानन्तमहारथी ।  
 विश्वावसुसुपर्वाणी निष्कुम्भश्च महायशः ॥  
 रुरुश्च ऋषिपुत्रो वै भास्करप्रमितश्रुतिः ।  
 विश्वेदेवान्देवमाता विश्वेश जनयत्सुतान् ॥

Here, subject to correction, I read the names of thirteen *Viśve devas*, to-wit: Daksha, Vasu, Suta, Sudharman, Śankhapād, Prithu, Vapushmat, Ananta, Mahārāṇa, Viśwāvasu, Suparvan, Nishkumbha, and Ruru. The first seven are said to be connected with the Manu Chākshusha. *Vide supra*, p. 11.

It is alleged, by the Translator,—Vol. II., p. 22, note 1,—that there are twelve *Viśve devas*, according to the *Matsya-purāṇa*. The passage, in that work, which names these supernals,—but without numbering them,—is much too corrupt, in my MSS., to invite conjectural mending. For the most part, if not throughout, it has, without question, a close genetic relationship to the last extract transcribed.

## CHAPTER XVI.

Things proper to be offered, as food, to deceased ancestors: prohibited things. Circumstances vitiating a Śrāddha: how to be avoided. Song of the Pitṛis or progenitors, heard by Ikshwāku.

AURVA continued.—“Ancestors are satisfied, for a month, with offerings of rice or other grain,\* with clarified butter,<sup>†</sup> with fish, or the flesh of the hare, of birds, of the hog, the goat, the antelope,<sup>‡</sup> the deer,<sup>§</sup> the Gayal,<sup>§</sup> or the sheep, or with the milk of the cow, and its products.<sup>‡</sup> They are for ever satisfied with

\* See Manu, III., 266, &c. The articles are much the same; the periods of satisfaction somewhat vary.

† The expression Gavya (गव्य) implies all that is derived from a cow: but, in the text, it is associated with ‘flesh’; and, as the commentator observes, some consider the flesh of the cow to be here intended: मांसमध्यपाठान्मांसमेवेत्यन्ये ।॥ But this, he adds, relates to other ages. ¶ In the Kali or present age, it implies milk and preparations of milk.\*\* The sacrifice of a cow or calf formed part of the ancient Śrāddha. It then became typical; or, a bull was turned loose, instead of being slaughtered: and

\* There is nothing, in the original, corresponding to “offerings of rice or other grain.” The scholiast, however, suggests such an addition.

† *Aśīa*, adjective of *śīa*.

‡ *Ruru*; explained, in the commentary, by *prishata*. In Vol. I., p. 72, it is translated “antelope”.

§ *Gavaya*.

|| The commentator here refers, in terms, to a variant of the text.

¶ तत्तु युगान्तरीयमित्यवधेयम् ।

\*\* The five pure products of the cow are milk, curds, butter, her urine, and her dung.

flesh (in general), and with that of the long-eared white goat,\* in particular. The flesh of the rhinoceros, the Kālaśāka (pot-herb), and honey are, also, especial sources of satisfaction to those worshipped at ancestral ceremonies. The birth of that man is the occasion of satisfaction to his progenitors, who perform, at the due time, their obsequial rites at Gayā. Grains that spring up spontaneously,† rice growing wild,‡ panic§ of both species (white or black||), vegetables that grow in forests,¶ are fit for ancestral oblations; as are barley, wheat, rice, sesamum, various kinds of pulse,\*\* and mustard.†† On the other hand, a

---

this is still practised, on some occasions.‡‡ In Manu, the term Gavya is coupled with others, which limit its application:

---

\* *Vārdhriśāsa*. Some, according to the commentator, understand this word to denote a bird with a dark throat, a red head, and white wings.

† *Prasūtikā*. The scholiast says: प्रसातिका देवधान्यानि । आरण्यव्रीहिसदृशाः । श्वेतशूका इति केचित् । Commentary A.

‡ नीवारा रक्तशूकाः । Commentary A. In the comment on the text of Vol. I., p. 95, *nivāra* is defined आरण्या व्रीहयः.

§ *Syānāka*.

|| So adds the commentator.

¶ *Vanaushadhi*.

\*\* The original specifies *priyangu*, *mudga*, *nishpāva*, and *kovidāra*. *Nishpāva* is said, in one commentary, to be the same as *valla*; in the other, the same as *śibya*; and a gloss gives *yugapatra* as the synonym of *kovidāra*. For these and other vegetable products named in this chapter, see the list in Vol. I., p. 95.

†† Unlike the list referred to in the preceding note, this does not profess to be exhaustive. In the former, we find the names of fourteen articles; in the latter, the names of twelve. This mentions five species of grains,—*prasūtikā*, *mudga*, *nishpāva*, *kovidāra*, and *sarshapa*,—omitted in the other; while the remaining seven species are common between both.

‡‡ See Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 177.

householder must not offer any kind of grain that is not consecrated, by religious ceremonies, on its first coming into season;\* nor (the pulse called) Rājamaśha,† nor millet,‡ nor lentils, nor gourds,§ nor garlic, nor onions,|| nor nightshade,¶ nor camels' thorn,\*\* nor salt, nor the efflorescence of salt deserts,†† nor red vegetable extracts,‡‡ nor anything that looks like salt,§§ nor anything that is not commendable: nor is water fit to be offered at a Śrāddha, that has been brought by night, or has been abandoned, or is so little as not to satisfy a cow, or smells badly, or is covered with froth. The milk of animals with undi-

संवत्सरं तु गव्येन पयसा पायसेन च ।

"A whole year with the milk of cows, and food made of that milk." || || III., 271.

\* अकृताययणं यच्च धान्यजातं नरेश्वर ।

\* \* \* \* \* विवर्जयेत् ॥

† I. e., *māśha* not black, according to the commentator.

‡ *Aśu*. Commentary A gives *chīna* as its synonym; B defines it by *sūkṣhma-śāli*. In the comments on the text of Vol. I., pp. 94, 95, it is said, equivalently, to be *kṣudra-śāli*, 'small rice'; while *chinaka* is explained to be *aśu-tulya*.

§ *Alābī*.

|| Insert 'carrots' (?), *piśādamūlaka*. The commentary explains the word by *पिण्डाकारमूलकं*, 'a bulbous root.'

¶ *Gāndhāraka*. शाकभेदः काञ्जिकं वा । Commentary.

\*\* *Karambha*. करम्भानि अविकसिता लाजाः । शाकभेद इत्येके । Commentary.

†† *Aushara*.

‡‡ आरक्तांश्चिन्निर्व्यासान्.

§§ प्रत्यक्षलवणानि, which the commentator defines to be चतुर्दशलवणानि.

|| || Sir William Jones.

vided hoofs, of a camel, a ewe, a deer,\* or a buffalo, is unfit for ancestral oblations. If an obsequial rite is looked at by a eunuch, a man ejected from society,† an outcast, a heretic, a drunken man, or one diseased, by a cock,‡ a naked ascetic,¹ a monkey, a village-hog,§ by a woman in her courses or pregnant,|| by an unclean person, or by a carrier of corpses,¶ neither gods nor progenitors will partake of the food. The ceremony should, therefore, be performed in a spot carefully enclosed.\*\* Let the performer cast sesamum on the ground, and drive away malignant spirits.†† Let him not give food that is fetid, or vitiated by hairs or insects, or mixed with acid gruel,‡‡ or stale.§§ Whatever suitable food is presented with pure faith, and with the enunciation of name and race,||| to ancestors,

---

¹ Nagna is, literally, 'naked', but, as explained in the following chapter, means a Jaina mendicant. No such person is included, by Manu (III., 239, &c.), amongst those who defile a Śráddha by looking upon it. The Váyu contains the same prohibition: नग्नादयो न पश्येयुः ।

---

\* The original word is *mārga*. But there is a variant, *chhāga*, 'of a goat.'

† *Apaviddha*; defined महाजनपरित्यक्त. ‡ *Kṛīkavāku*.

§ I have corrected the printer's blunder "a village-hag"; the original being *grāma-sūkara*.

|| *Sūtikā*. This, according to the commentator, is a woman ceremonially unclean by reason of recent childbirth.

¶ *Mṛitahāra*; explained by शवनिर्हरणवृत्तिः, in the commentary.

\*\* तस्मात्परिश्रिते कुर्याच्छ्राद्धं श्रद्धासमन्वितः ।

†† *Yātudhāna*. See Vol. II., p. 292, near the foot.

‡‡ *Abhishava*; synonymized by *kānjika*, in the commentary.

§§ *Paryushita*. The scholiast says it means पक्वं रात्र्यन्तरितम् । Also *vide supra*, p. 126, note \*.

||| *Gotra*.

at an obsequial oblation, becomes food to them (or, gives them nourishment).\* In former times, O king of the earth, this song† of the Pitṛis was heard by Ikshwáku,‡ the son of Manu, in the groves of Kalápa, (on the skirts of the Himálaya mountains§): ‘Those of our descendants shall follow a righteous path, who shall reverently present us with cakes at Gayá. May he be born in our race, who shall give us, on the thirteenth of Bhádrapada and Mággha,|| milk, honey, and clarified butter; or when he marries a maiden,¶ or

\* श्रद्धासमन्वितैर्दत्तं पितृभ्यो नामगोचतः ।

यदाहारास्तु ते जातास्तदाहारत्वमेति तत् ॥

† Gáthá.

‡ See, for him, Book IV., Chapter I.

§ It is a village there, says the scholiast, from whom this parenthesis is borrowed. His words are: कलापो हिमवत्पार्श्ववर्ती ग्रामविशेषः । The village of Kalápa is mentioned in Book IV., Chapter IV., *ad finem*.

|| The words “of Bhádrapada and Mággha” correspond to वर्षासु च मघासु च, which means, “during the rainy season, and under the asterism Maghá.” Only one period, however, is intended; and that is during the month of Bhádrapada, according to the scholiast: वर्षासु । भाद्रपदे मघानक्षत्रे त्रयोदशीं प्राप्य । Compare note § to p. 170, *supra*.

¶ *Gauri*. In definition of this term, the commentator adduces, from some unnamed *Smṛiti*, the ensuing stanza:

अष्टवर्षा भवेन्नौरी नववर्षा तु रोहिणी ।

दशवर्षा भवेत्कन्या अत ऊर्ध्वं रजस्वला ॥

It appears, herefrom, that *gauri* signifies a girl of eight years; *rohiṇi*, one of nine; and *kanyá*, one of ten; after which age, a female is to be considered as a woman.

With this the stanza which I have quoted from the *Panchatantra*, in p. 102, note \*, *supra*, is unaccordant, as regards the *rohiṇi*.

For what seems to be intended for the above, cited in a corrupt and curtailed form by Vallabhagaṇi, see Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce* अरजस्.

By its acceptance of the strains of the *pitṛis*, our text sanctions the marriage of a *gauri*. We have seen that this technicality is held to denote a maiden of eight; I nowhere find that it means a damsel more



liberates a black bull,<sup>1</sup> or performs any domestic ceremony agreeable to rule, accompanied by donations to the Brahmans!"<sup>2</sup>\*

<sup>1</sup> Nīla vīṣha. But this animal is not altogether, or always, black. In the Brahma Purāṇa, as quoted in the Nirṇaya Sindhu,† it is said to be of a red colour, with light face and tail, and white hoofs and horns; or, a white bull, with black face, &c.; or, a black bull, with white face, tail, and feet.‡

<sup>2</sup> Very full descriptions of the Śrāddha occur in almost all

advanced; and it may be doubted whether the compiler of the *Viśhṇu-purāṇa* took a different notion of its import.

*Kanyā*—vide *supra*, pp. 102–105,—is often used in the vague sense of 'virgin'. Such may, then, be a *gauri*.

The commentator quotes, as follows, from the lawgiver Saṁvarta:

गौरीं ददन्नाकष्टं वैकुण्ठं याति रोहिणीम् ।

कन्यां ददद्ब्रह्मलोकं रौरवं तु रजस्वलाम् ॥

"He who gives away a *gauri* goes to Nākapīṣṭha; he who gives away a *rohini*, to Vaiṣṇava; he who gives away a *kanyā*, to Brahma-loka; but he who gives away a damsel whose courses have commenced, to Raurava."

Nākapīṣṭha is the highest heaven of the three specified. Raurava is a hell: see Vol. II., p. 216.

Ratnagarbha would have proved himself inconsistent indeed, if, while citing the two preceding stanzas with tacit approval, he had expressed himself as represented in note 2 to p. 101, *supra*.

\* I find only this reading:

यजेत वाय्वमेधेन विधिवद्दिष्टावता ।

This is to be rendered: "or offers a hippocaust accompanied by remuneration agreeable to rule."

† The *Brahma-purāṇa* is there quoted much to this effect. The *Brahma-purāṇa*—with many other authorities,—is adduced, by Hemādri, as follows:

लोहितो यस्तु वर्णेन मुखे पुच्छे च पाण्डुरः ।

श्वेतः खुरविषाणाभ्यां स नीलो वृष उच्यते ॥

चरणाश्च मुखं पुच्छं यस्य श्वेतानि गोपतेः ।

लाक्षारससर्वणस्य तं नीलमिति निर्दिशेत् ॥

‡ In the *Āchārachandrikā*, bulls of different colours are appropriated to different castes.

the Purāṇas,—especially in the Vāyu, Kūrma, Mārkaṇḍeya, Vāmana, and Garuḍa. The Matsya and Padma (Śrīṣṭi Khaṇḍa) contain descriptions which are much the same as that of the Vāyu. The accounts of the Brahma, Agni, and Varāha are less full and regular than in some of the others; and in none of them is the subject so fully and perspicuously treated as in our text. For satisfactory information, however, the Śrāddha Mayūkha and the Nirṇaya Sindhu should be consulted.\*

---

\* The prime authority on the subject of obsequies is, beyond all question, the voluminous *Śrāddhakalpa* of Hemādri,—a work which the *Śrāddhamayūkha* and *Nirṇayasindhu* perpetually lay under contribution.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

Of heretics, or those who reject the authority of the Vedas: their origin, as described by Vasishtha to Bhishma: the gods, defeated by the Daityas, praise Vishnu: an illusory being, or Buddha, produced from his body.

PARÁŚARA.—Thus, in former days, spake the holy Aurva to the illustrious monarch Sagara, when he inquired concerning the usages proper to be practised (by mankind): and thus I have explained to you the whole of those observances against which no one ought to transgress.\*

MAITREYA.—You have told me, venerable sir, that an ancestral rite is not to be looked upon by certain persons, amongst whom you mentioned such as were apostates. I am desirous to learn whom you intended by that appellation;† what practices bestow such a title upon a man; and what is the character of the individual to whom you alluded.

PARÁŚARA.—The Rig-, Yajur-, and Sáma-Vedas constitute the triple covering of the several castes; and the sinner who throws this off is said to be naked (or apostate).: The three Vedas are the raiment of all the orders § (of men); and, when that is discarded,

\* मयायितदशेषेण कथितं भवतो द्विज ।

समुल्लङ्घ्य सदाचारं कश्चिन्नाप्नोति शोभनम् ॥

† षण्ढापविद्धप्रमुखा विदिता भगवन्मम ।

उदक्वाबाध ये सर्वे नममिच्छामि वेदितुम् ॥

: ऋग्यजुःसामसंज्ञियं त्रयी वर्णावृत्तिर्द्विज ।

एतामुञ्क्षति यो मोहात्स नमः पातकी स्मृतः ॥

§ *Varna.*

they are left bare.<sup>1</sup> On this subject hear what I heard my grandfather, the pious Vasishtha, relate to the magnanimous Bhishma:

There was, formerly, a battle between the gods and demons,\* for the period of a divine year, in which the gods were defeated by the demons† under the command of Hrāda.<sup>2</sup> The discomfited deities fled to the northern shore of the milky ocean,‡ where, engaging in religious penance, they thus prayed to Vishnu: "May

<sup>1</sup> This idea is expressed in nearly the same terms, in the Vāyu Purāṇa:

सर्वेषामेव भूतानां त्रयी संवरणं स्मृता ।

परित्यजन्ति ये मोहात्ते वै नग्नादयो जनाः ॥

"The three Vedas are the covering of all beings; and they who throw it off, through delusion, are called Nagnas, naked." The notion is, probably, original with neither of the Purāṇas; and the metaphorical sense of the term is not that in which it was first employed: ascetics, whether of the Bauddha or of the Digambara order of Jainas, being, literally, Nagnas,—or, going naked. The qualified application of it, however, was rendered necessary by the same practice being familiar to ascetics of the orthodox faith. To go naked was not necessarily a sign of a heretic; and, therefore, his nudity was understood to be, rejecting the raiment of holy writ. Thus, the Vāyu Purāṇa extends the word to all ascetics—including naked Brahmans,—who practise austerities fruitlessly, that is, heretically or hypocritically:

वृथादण्डी वृथामुण्डी वृथानमश्च यो द्विजः ।

वृथाव्रती वृथाजापी ते वै नग्नादयो जनाः ॥

"The Brahman who unprofitably bears a staff, shaves his head, goes naked, makes a vow, or mutters prayers,—all such persons are called Nagnas and the like."

<sup>2</sup> A son of Hiraṇyakaśipu (Vol. II., p. 30).

\* *Asura*.

† *Daitya*.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 200.

the first of beings, the divine Vishnú, be pleased with the words that we are about to address to him, in order to propitiate the lord of (all) worlds; from which mighty cause all (created things) have originated, and into whom they shall again dissolve! Who is able to declare his praise? We, who have been put to shame by the triumph of our foes, will glorify thee, although thy true power and might be not within the reach of words.\* Thou art earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind,† crude matter,‡ and (primeval) soul.§ All this elementary creation, with or without visible form, is thy body; all, from Brahmá to a stock,|| diversified by place and time. Glory to thee, who art Brahmá, thy first form, evolved from the lotos springing from thy navel, for the purpose of creation! Glory to thee,¶ who art Indra,\*\* the sun, Rudra, the Vasus,†† fire,‡‡ the winds,§§ and even, also, ourselves! Glory to thee, Go-

\* तथाप्यरातिविध्वंसध्वस्तवीर्या भवार्थिनः ।

त्वां स्तोष्यामस्तवोक्तीनां याथात्म्यं नैव गोचरे ॥

"Albeit thy real selfhood is not within the scope of words, yet we, whose might has been destroyed by discomfiture at the hands of our enemies, being solicitous of renewed welfare, will, according to our understanding, laud thee."

The commentator explains this stanza in detail.

† *Antalīkaraṇa*.

‡ *Pradhāna*. See Vol. I., p. 20, note \*.

§ *Puṇis*. It is qualified by *tatpara*, 'superior thereto', viz., to *pradhāna*.

|| *आत्रहस्यसम्बर्पयन्तम्* । We have, here, the very words with which the *Sāṅkhya-pravachana*, III., 47, begins.

¶ Supply 'identical with the gods', *devātman*.

\*\* Śakra, in the original.

†† See, for the Vasus, Vol. II., pp. 22, 23.

‡‡ I find 'the Aświns'; for whom *vide supra*, p. 21.

§§ 'The Maruts.' See Vol. II., p. 79.

vinda, who art all demons, whose essence is arrogance and want of discrimination, unchecked by patience or self-control!\* Glory to thee, who art the Yakshas, whose nature is charmed with sounds, and whose frivolous hearts perfect knowledge cannot pervade!† Glory to thee, who art all fiends that walk by night, sprung from the quality of darkness, fierce, fraudulent, and cruel!‡ Glory to thee, Janārdana, who art that piety which is the instrument of recompensing the virtues of those who abide in heaven!§ Glory to thee, who art one with the saints, whose perfect nature is ever blessed, and traverses, unobstructed, all permeable elements!|| Glory to thee, who art one with the serpent-race, double-tongued, impetuous, cruel, insatiate of enjoyment, and abounding with wealth! Glory to thee, who art one with the Rishis, whose nature is free from sin or defect, and is identified with wisdom and tranquillity! Glory to thee, O lotos-eyed, who art one with time, the form that devours, without remorse, all created things, at the ter-

- \* दम्भप्रायमसंबोधि तितिक्षादमवर्जितम् ।  
यद्रूपं तव गोविन्द तस्मै दैत्यात्मने नमः ॥
- † नातिज्ञानवहा यस्मिन्नाड्यस्त्रिमिततेजसि ।  
शब्दादिलोभि यत्तस्मै तुभ्यं यच्चात्मने नमः ॥
- ‡ क्लौर्यमायामयं घोरं यच्च रूपं तवासितम् ।  
निशाचरात्मने तस्मै नमस्ते पुरुषोत्तम ॥
- § स्वर्गस्थधर्मि सद्धर्मफलोपकरणं तव ।  
धर्माख्यं च तथा रूपं नमस्तस्मै जनार्दन ॥
- || हर्षप्रायमसंसर्गि गतिमद्भ्रमनादिषु ।  
सिद्धात्मास्त्वय यद्रूपं तस्मै सिद्धात्मने नमः ॥

mination of the Kalpa!\* Glory to thee, who art Rudra, the being that dances (with delight), after he has swallowed up all things,—the gods and the rest,—without distinction! Glory to thee, Janārdana, who art man, the agent in developing the results of that activity which proceeds from the quality of foulness! Glory to thee, who art brute animals, the universal spirit that tends to perversity, which proceeds from the quality of darkness, and is encumbered with the twenty-eight kinds of obstructions!<sup>1</sup>† Glory to thee, who art that chief spirit which is diversified in the vegetable world, and which, as the essence: of sacrifice, is the instrument of accomplishing the perfection of the universe! Glory to thee, who art everything, and whose primeval form is the objects of perception, and heaven, and animals, and men, and gods!§ Glory to thee, who art the cause of causes, the supreme spirit; who art distinct from us and all beings composed of intelligence and matter and the like, and with whose

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. I., p. 71, note 2.

\* भक्षयत्यथ कल्पान्ते भूतानि यदवारितम् ।

यद्रूपं पुण्डरीकाक्ष तस्मै कालात्मने नमः ॥

For Puṇḍarikāksha, see Vol. I., p. 2, note 1.

† अष्टाविंशद्विधोपेतं यद्रूपं तामसं तव ।

उत्थार्गगामि सर्वात्मनस्मै पञ्चात्मने नमः ॥

Some MSS. have the reading अष्टाविंशद्विधोपेतं, to which the commentator, followed by the Translator, gives the preference.

‡ Anga.

§ तिर्यङ्मनुष्यदेवादि व्योमशब्दादिकं च यत् ।

रूपं तवादिः सर्वस्य तस्मै सर्वात्मने नमः ॥

primeval nature there is nothing that can be compared! We bow to thee, O lord, who hast neither colour, nor extension, nor bulk,\* nor any predicable qualities; and whose essence,† purest of the pure, is appreciable only by holy sages.‡ We bow to thee, in the nature of Brahma, uncreated, undecaying;§ who art in our bodies, and in all other bodies, and in all living creatures; and besides whom there is nothing else. We glorify that Vāsudeva, the (sovereign) lord (of all), who is without soil, the seed of all things, exempt from dissolution, unborn, eternal; being, in essence, the supreme condition of spirit,|| and, in substance,¶ the whole of this (universe)."

Upon the conclusion of their prayers,\*\* the gods beheld the sovereign deity Hari, armed with the shell, the discus, and the mace, riding on Garuḍa. Prostrating themselves before him, they addressed him, and said: "Have compassion upon us, O lord, and protect us, who have come to thee for succour from the Daityas! They have seized upon the three worlds, and appropriated the offerings which are our portion, taking care not to transgress the precepts of the Veda. Although we, as well as they, are parts of thee, of whom all beings consist, yet we behold the world impressed by the ignorance of unity, with the belief of

\* *Ghana.*

† *Rūpa.*

‡ *Paramarshi.*

§ *Avyaya.* See Vol. I., p. 17, note \*.

|| *Paramapaddātmanvat.*

¶ *Rūpa* is here rendered by both "essence" and "substance".

\*\* *Stotra.*



its separate existence. Engaged in the duties of their respective orders,\* and following the paths prescribed by holy writ, practising, also, religious penance, it is impossible for us to destroy them. Do thou, whose wisdom is immeasurable,† instruct us in some device by which we may be able to exterminate the enemies of the gods :!"

When the mighty Vishṇu heard their request, he emitted from his body an illusory form,§ which he gave to the gods, and thus spake: "This deceptive vision|| shall wholly beguile the Daityas; so that, being led astray from the path of the Vedas, they may be put to death: for all gods, demons, or others, who shall be opposed to the authority of the Veda, shall perish by my might, whilst exercised for the preservation of the world. Go, then, and fear not. Let this delusive vision precede you: it shall, this day, be of great service unto you, O gods!"¶

\* *Varāa.*

† *Ameyatman.*

‡ *Asura.*

§ *Māyāmoha*, "the deluder by illusion."

|| *Māyāmoha.*

¶ Most of my MSS., including all those accompanied by the commentary, here add:

पराशर उवाच ।

इत्युक्ताः प्रणिपत्यैनं ययुर्देवा यथागतम् ।

मायामोहोऽपि तैः सार्धं ययौ यत्र महासुराः ॥

## CHAPTER XVIII.

Buddha goes to the earth, and teaches the Daityas to contemn the Vedas: his sceptical doctrines: his prohibition of animal sacrifices. Meaning of the term Bauddha. Jainas and Bauddhas: their tenets. The Daityas lose their power, and are overcome by the gods. Meaning of the term Nagna. Consequences of neglect of duty. Story of Śatadhannu and his wife Śaibya. Communion with heretics to be shunned.

PARÁŚARA.—After this, the great delusion,\* having proceeded (to earth), beheld the Daityas, engaged in ascetic penances, upon the banks of the Narmadā river;<sup>1</sup> and, approaching them, in the semblance of a naked mendicant,† with his head shaven, and carrying a bunch of peacock's feathers,<sup>2</sup> he thus addressed them, in gentle accents: "Ho, lords of the Daitya race, wherefore is it that you practise these acts of penance?"

---

<sup>1</sup> The situation chosen for the first appearance of the heresy agrees well enough with the great prevalence of the Jainia faith in the west of India, in the eleventh and twelfth centuries (Asiatic Researches, Vol. XVI., p. 318), or, perhaps, a century earlier, and is a circumstance of some weight, in investigating the date of the Vishnú Purāṇa.

<sup>2</sup> A bunch of peacock's feathers is still an ordinary accompaniment of a Jainia mendicant. According to the Hindī poem, the Prithu Rai Charitra, it was borne by the Buddhist Amara Simha. But that work is not, perhaps, very good authority for Bauddha observances,—at least, of an ancient date.

---

\* *Máyāmoha.*

† *Digambara.*

Is it with a view to recompense in this world? or in another?" "Sage," replied the Daityas, "we pursue these devotions, to obtain a reward hereafter. Why should you make such an inquiry?"\* "If you are desirous of final emancipation," answered the seeming ascetic,† "attend to my words; for you are worthy of a revelation; which is the door to ultimate felicity. The duties that I will teach you are the secret path to liberation: there are none beyond, or superior to, them.§ By following them you shall obtain either heaven or exemption from future existence. You, mighty beings, are deserving of such (lofty) doctrine." By such persuasions, and by many specious arguments,|| did this delusive being mislead the Daityas from the tenets of the Vedas; teaching, that the same thing might be for the sake of virtue and of vice; might be, and might not be; might, or might not, contribute to liberation; might be the supreme object,¶ and not the supreme object; might be effect, and not be effect; might be manifest, or not be manifest; might be the duty of those who go naked, or who go clothed in much raiment. And so the Daityas were seduced from their proper duties by the repeated lessons of their illusory preceptor, maintaining the equal truth

\* पारत्र्यफललाभाय तपश्चर्या महामते ।

अस्माभिरियमारब्धा किंवा तेऽत्र विवक्षितम् ॥

† *Māyāmoha.*

‡ *Dharma.*

§ धर्मो विमुक्तैरहोऽयं नैतस्मादपरः परः ।

॥ एवंप्रकारैर्वक्तृभिर्युक्तिदर्शनवर्धितैः ।

¶ *Paramārtha.*

of contradictory tenets;<sup>1\*</sup> and they were called Arhatas,<sup>2</sup> from the phrase he had employed, of "Ye are worthy (Arhatha) of this great doctrine,"—that is, of the false doctrines which he persuaded them to embrace.†

The foes of the gods: being, thus, induced to apostatize from the religion of the Vedas, by the delusive person (sent by Vishnú), became, in their turn, teachers of the same heresies, and perverted others; and these, again, communicating their principles to others, by whom they were still further disseminated, the Ve-

<sup>1</sup> In this and the preceding contradictions it is probable that the writer refers, although not with much precision, to the sceptical tenets of the Jainas, whence they are called, commonly, Syádvádins, assertors of probabilities, or of what may be. These usually form seven categories, or: 1. a thing is; 2. it is not; 3. it is, and it is not; 4. it is not definable; 5. it is, but is not definable; 6. it is not, neither is it definable; 7. it is, and it is not, and is not definable. Hence the Jainas are also termed Saptavádins and Saptabhangins, assertors and oppugners of seven propositions. Asiatic Researches, Vol. XVII., p. 271; § and Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society, Vol. I., p. 555. ||

<sup>2</sup> Here is further confirmation of the Jainas being intended by our text; as the term Arhat is, more particularly, applied to them, although it is also used by the Buddhists.

\* इत्यनेकान्तवादं च मायामोहेन नैकधा ।  
तेन दर्शयता दैत्याः स्वधर्मांस्त्रयजिता द्विज ॥  
† अर्हयेमं महाधर्मं मायामोहेन ते यतः ।  
प्रोक्तास्तमाश्रिता धर्ममार्हतास्तेन तेऽभवन् ॥

† Asura.

§ Or Professor Wilson's collected essays, Vol. I., pp. 315, 316.

|| Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 386, 387.

das were, in a short time, deserted by most of the Daitya race. Then the same deluder, putting on garments of a red colour, assuming a benevolent aspect, and speaking in soft and agreeable tones, addressed others of the same family, and said to them: "If, (mighty) demons, you cherish a desire either for heaven or for final repose,\* desist from the iniquitous massacre of animals (for sacrifice), and hear (from me what you should do). Know that all (that exists) is composed of discriminative knowledge.† Understand my words; for they have been uttered by the wise. This world subsists without support,‡ and, engaged in the pursuit of error, which it mistakes for knowledge, as well as vitiated by passion and the rest, revolves in the straits of existence." In this manner, exclaiming to them, "Know!" (Budhyadhwam), and they replying, "It is known" (Budhyate), these Daityas were induced, by the arch-deceiver, to deviate from their religious duties§ (and become Bauddhas), by his repeated argu-

\* *Nirvāṇa*.

† *Vijñāna*. The commentator explains this term by *buddhi*. He says that the doctrine of the Yogācāras—a sect of Bauddhas,—is here set forth. According to Colebrooke,—*Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 391,—the Yogācāras "except internal sensation or intelligence (*vijñāna*), and acknowledge all else to be void. They maintain the eternal existence of conscious sense alone."

‡ This is the faith of the Mādhyamikas, agreeably to the scholiast. These "maintain that all is void (*sarva śūnya*); following, as it seems, a literal interpretation of Buddha's *sūtras*." Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 391. See, further, on the Yogācāras and Mādhyamikas, Burnouf's *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., pp. 449 et seq.

§ I find no reading but this:

एवं बुध्यत बुध्यध्वं बुध्यतेवमितीरयन् ।

मायामोहः स दैत्यान्धर्ममत्याजयन्निजम् ॥

ments and variously urged persuasions.<sup>1</sup> When they had abandoned their own faith, they persuaded others to do the same: and the heresy spread; and many deserted the practices enjoined by the Vedas and the laws.

The delusions of the false teacher paused not with the conversion of the Daityas to the Jaina and Baudha\* heresies; but, with various erroneous tenets,† he prevailed upon others to apostatize, until the whole were led astray, and deserted the doctrines and observances inculcated by the three Vedas. Some then spake evil of the sacred books; some blasphemed the gods; some treated sacrifices and other devotional ceremonies with scorn; and others calumniated the Brahmans. "The precepts," they cried, that lead to the injury of

<sup>1</sup> We have, therefore, the Bauddhas noticed as a distinct sect. If the author wrote from a personal knowledge of Buddhists in India, he could not have written much later than the tenth or eleventh century.

"Saying 'thus understand, understand, understand thus,' he, the deluder by illusion, caused the Daiteyas—i. e., sons of Diti—to forsake their own religion."

The commentary recognizes *budhyata*, not *budhyate*; as it says: एवं बुध्यतेत्यत्र पुनरुक्तिर्विषयपदनिरुक्त्यर्थः ।

Burnouf, evidently without looking at the original of the passage here rerendered, departs still further from its literal sense than Professor Wilson, for whose "arch-deceiver" (*andymōha*) he boldly substitutes Buddha: "Connaissez (*budhyadhvam*), s'écriait le Buddha aux Démones qu'il voulait séduire. Cela est connu (*budhyatē*), répondirent ses auditeurs." *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., note 1 in pp. 70, 71.

\* The translation adds the words "Jaina" and "Bauddha" to the original.

† The commentator explains: लोकायतिकमतभेदः, "with varieties of the secularist belief."

animal life (as in sacrifices,) are highly reprehensible. To say, that casting butter into flame is productive of reward, is mere childishness. If Indra, after having obtained godhead by multiplied rites, is fed upon the wood used as fuel in holy fire, he is lower than a brute, which feeds, at least, upon leaves. If an animal slaughtered in religious worship is, thereby, raised to heaven, would it not be expedient for a man who institutes a sacrifice to kill his own father for a victim? If that which is eaten by one, at a Śrāddha, gives satisfaction to another, it must be unnecessary for one who resides at a distance to bring food for presentation in person."<sup>1</sup>\* "First, then, let it be determined what may be (rationally) believed by mankind; and then," said their preceptor, "you will find, that felicity may be expected from my instructions. The words of authority do not, mighty Asuras, fall from heaven: the text that has reason is, alone, to be acknowledged by me, and by such as you are."<sup>2</sup> By such and similar lessons the

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, according to the commentator, a Śrāddha may be performed, for a man who is abroad, by any of his kinsmen who are tarrying at home: it will be of equal benefit to him as if he offered it himself; he will equally eat of the consecrated food.†

<sup>2</sup> We have, in these passages, no doubt, allusion to the Bār-

---

\* तृप्तये जायते पुंसो भुक्तमन्येन चेत्ततः ।

दद्याच्छ्राद्धं श्रद्धयान्नं न वह्नेयुः प्रवासिनः ॥

† अन्येन श्रद्धेऽन्नं भुक्तमन्यस्य तृप्तये चेज्जायते तर्हि प्रवासिनोऽन्नं न वह्नेयुः । किंतु स्वग्रामस्थितः पुत्रादिसमुद्दिश्य श्राद्धं दद्यात् ।  
Commentary.

For the real meaning of the verse thus explicated, which the Translator misunderstood, see note \* in p. 214, *infra*.

Daityas were perverted, so that not one of them admitted the authority of the Vedas.

---

haspatyas, or followers of Bṛihaspati, who seem to have been numerous and bold at some period anterior to the fourteenth century. Asiatic Researches, Vol. XVI., p. 5.\*

---

\* Or Professor Wilson's collected essays, Vol. I. pp. 5—7.

I subjoin Dr. Muir's translation of a metrical passage, quoted in the *Sarvadarśanasangraha*, purporting to represent the views of Bṛihaspati:

"There is no heaven, no final liberation, no soul [which continues to exist] in another world, nor any ceremonies of castes or orders which are productive of future reward.

"The Agnihotra sacrifice, the three Vedas, the mendicant's triple staff (*tridaṇḍa*), and the practice of smearing with ashes, are the means of livelihood ordained, by the Creator, for men who have neither understanding nor energy.

"If [it be true, that] an animal slaughtered at the Jyotishfoma sacrifice is [in consequence,] exalted to heaven, why does not the worshipper immolate his own father?

"If a *śrāddha* (offering of food to the manes) satiates even defunct creatures, it is quite superfluous to furnish people who are setting out upon a journey with any provisions; [as their friends who remain behind can offer food to them].

"Since [as you say,] persons in heaven are filled by oblations presented upon earth, why is not food similarly offered [by those below,] to people on the roof of the house?

"While a man does live, let him live merrily, let him borrow money, and swallow clarified butter. How can a body return to Earth, after it has once been reduced to ashes?

"If a man goes to another world, when he quits his body, why does not affection for his kindred impel him to come back?

"Hence, ceremonies for the dead are a mere means of livelihood devised by the Brāhmins, and nothing else.

"The three composers of the Veda were buffoons, rogues, and goblins. Every one has heard of *jarbhari*, *turphari*, and such other [nonsensical] exclamations of the Pandits.

"It is well known, that, in an *asvamedha* (horse-sacrifice), the embraces of the horse must be received by the queen; and it is, in like manner, well known what other sorts of things, also, are to be grasped by those



When the Daityas had thus declined from the path of the holy writings, the deities took courage, and gathered together for battle. Hostilities, accordingly, were renewed; but the demons were now defeated and slain by the gods, who had adhered to the righteous path. The armour of religion, which had formerly protected the Daityas, had been discarded by them; and upon its abandonment followed their destruction.<sup>1\*</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> We may have, in this conflict of the orthodox divinities and heretical Daityas, some covert allusion to political troubles,

---

buffoons. In the same way, the eating of flesh is prescribed by those goblins." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. XIX., pp. 299—301.

Dr. Muir's learned and instructive notes must, for want of space, be omitted.

\* The original of these two paragraphs has been more accurately rendered, by Dr. Muir, as follows: "The great Deceiver, practising illusion, next beguiled other Daityas by means of many other sorts of heresy. In a very short time, these Asuras (= Daityas), deluded by the Deceiver, abandoned the entire system founded on the ordinances of the triple Veda. Some reviled the Vedas; others, the gods; others, the ceremonial of sacrifice; and others, the Brāhmans. This [they exclaimed,] is a doctrine which will not bear discussion: the slaughter [of animals, in sacrifice,] is not conducive to religious merit. [To say, that] oblations of butter consumed in the fire produce any future reward, is the assertion of a child. If Indra, after having attained to godhead by numerous sacrifices, feeds upon *śami* and other woods, then an animal which eats leaves is superior to him. If it be a fact, that a beast slain in sacrifice is exalted to heaven, why does not the worshipper slaughter his own father? If a man is really satiated by food which another person eats, then *śrāddhas* should be offered to people who are travelling abroad; and they, trusting to this, should have no need to carry any food along with them. After it has been settled, that this doctrine is entitled to credence, let the opinions which I express be pondered, and received as conducive to happiness. Infallible utterances do not, great Asuras, fall from the skies: it is only assertions founded on reasoning that are ac-

Thus, Maitreya, (you are to understand, that) those who have seceded from their original belief are said to be naked, because they have thrown off the garment of the Vedas. According to the law, there are four conditions (or orders of men of the three first castes),—the religious student, the householder, the hermit, and the mendicant.\* There is no fifth state; and the unrighteous man who relinquishes the order of the householder, and does not become either an anchorite or a mendicant, is (also,) a naked (seceder). The man who neglects his permanent observances for one day and night, being able to perform them, incurs, thereby, sin for one day; and, should he omit them, not being in trouble, for a fortnight, he can be purified only by arduous expiation. The virtuous must (stop to) gaze upon the sun, after looking upon a person who has allowed a year to elapse without the observance of the

---

growing out of religious differences, and the final predominance of Brahmanism. Such occurrences seem to have preceded the invasion of India by the Mohammedans, and prepared the way for their victories.

---

cepted by me, and by other [intelligent] persons like yourselves. Thus, by numerous methods, the Daityas were unsettled by the great Deceiver; so that none of them any longer regarded the triple Veda with favour. When the Daityas had entered on this path of error, the deities mustered all their energies, and approached to battle. Then followed a combat between the gods and the Asuras; and the latter, who had abandoned the right road, were smitten by the former. In previous times, they had been defended by the armour of righteousness which they bore; but, when that had been destroyed, they, also, perished." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. XIX., p. 302.

For the remainder of this note, see the end of the volume,

\* *Parivrāj.*

perpetual ceremonies; and they must bathe, with their clothes on, should they have touched him: but, for the individual himself, no expiation has been declared. There is no sinner, upon earth, more culpable than one in whose dwelling the gods,\* progenitors, and spirits† are left to sigh, unworshipped. Let not a man associate, in residence, sitting, or society,‡ with him whose person, or whose house, has been blasted by the sighs of the gods, progenitors, and spirits. Conversation, interchange of civilities,§ or association|| with a man who, for a twelvemonth, has not discharged his religious duties, is productive of equality of guilt; and the person who eats in the house of such a man, or sits down with him, or sleeps on the same couch with him, becomes like him, instantaneously. Again; he who takes his food without showing reverence to the gods, progenitors, spirits, and guests, commits sin. How great is his sin! The Brahmins, and men of the other castes, who turn their faces away from their proper duties, become heretics, and are classed with those who relinquish pious works. Remaining in a place where there is too great an intermixture of the four castes is detrimental to the character of the righteous.

\* Insert 'Rishis'.

† *Bhūta*.

‡ *Parichchhada*.

§ *Anupraśna*.

|| Here insert, by transfer, the words "for a twelvemonth." The original runs:

संभाषणानुप्रश्नादि सहास्रां चैव कुर्वतः ।

जायते तुल्यता पुंसस्तेनैव द्विज वत्सरम् ॥

The commentator says: संवत्सरं कुर्वतः । तेन । नयेन ।

Men fall into hell, who converse with one who takes his food without offering a portion to the gods, the sages,\* the manes, spirits, and guests. Let, therefore, a prudent person carefully avoid the conversation, or the contact, and the like, of those heretics who are rendered impure by their desertion of the three Vedas. The ancestral rite, although performed with zeal and faith, pleases neither gods nor progenitors, if it be looked upon by apostates.†

It is related, that there was, formerly, a king named Śatadhanu, whose wife, Śaibyá, was (a woman) of great virtue. She was devoted to her husband, benevolent, sincere, pure, adorned with every female excellence, with humility, and discretion.‡ The Raja and his wife daily worshipped the god of gods, Janárdana, with pious meditations, oblations to fire, prayers, gifts, fasting, and every other mark of entire faith, and exclusive devotion. On one occasion; when they had fasted on the full moon of Kárttika, and had bathed in the Bhágirathí, they beheld, as they came up from the water, a heretic approach them, who was the friend of the Raja's military preceptor.§ The Raja, out of respect to the latter, entered into conversation with the heretic; but not so did the princess. Reflecting that she was observing a fast, she turned from him, and cast

\* *Rishi.*

† अद्वावद्भिः कृतं यत्नाद्देवान्पितृपितामहान्  
न प्रीणयति तच्छ्राद्धं यदेभिरवलोकितम् ॥

‡ पतिव्रता महाभागा सत्यशौचदयान्विता ।  
सर्वलक्षणसंपन्ना विनयेन नयेन च ॥

§ *Chápáchárya*; literally, 'archery-master.'

her eyes up to the sun. On their arrival at home, the husband and wife, as usual, performed the worship of Vishnu, agreeably to the ritual. After a time, the Raja, triumphant over his enemies, died; and the princess ascended the funeral-pile of her husband.

In consequence of the fault committed by Śatadhanu, by speaking to an infidel, when he was engaged in a solemn fast, he was born again, as a dog. His wife was born as the daughter of the Raja of Kāśī, with a knowledge of the events of her preexistence, accomplished in every science,\* and endowed with every virtue. Her father was anxious to give her, in marriage, to some suitable husband: but she constantly opposed his design; and the king was prevented, by her, from accomplishing her nuptials.† With the eye of divine intelligence, she knew that her own husband had been regenerate as a dog; and, going, once, to the city of Vaidiśā, she saw the dog, and recognized her former lord in him. Knowing that the animal was her husband, she placed upon his neck the bridal garland, accompanying it with the marriage-rites and prayers:: but he, eating the delicate food presented to him, expressed his delight, after the fashion of his species. At which she was much ashamed, and, bowing reverently

\* *Vijñāna.*

† तां पिता दातुकामोऽभूद्वराय विनिवारितः ।  
तथैव तन्व्या विरतो विवाहारश्चतो नृपः ॥

‡ The original has:

ददौ तस्मै वराहारं सत्कारप्रवणं शुभम् ।

"She bestowed on him excellent cates and kind treatment."

This is instead of "she placed \* \* prayers." The cates are referred to just below.

to him, thus spake to her degraded\* spouse: "Recall to memory, illustrious prince, the ill-timed politeness on account of which you have been born as a dog, and are now fawning upon me. In consequence of speaking to a heretic, after bathing in a sacred river, you have been condemned to this abject birth. Do you not remember it?" Thus reminded, the Raja recollected his former condition, and was lost in thought, and felt deep humiliation. With a broken spirit, he went forth from the city, and, falling dead in the desert, was born anew, as a jackal. In the course of the following year, the princess knew what had happened, and went to the mountain Koláhala, to seek for her husband. Finding him there, the lovely daughter of the king of the earth said to her lord, thus disguised as a jackal: "Dost thou not remember, O king, the circumstance of conversing with a heretic, which I called to thy recollection, when thou wast a dog?" The Raja, thus addressed, knew that what the princess had spoken was true, and, thereupon, desisted from food, and died. He then became a wolf; but his blameless wife knew it, and came to him in the lonely forest, and awakened his remembrance of his original state. "No wolf art thou," she said, "but the illustrious sovereign Śatadhanu. Thou wast then a dog, then a jackal, and art now a wolf." Upon this, recollecting himself, the prince abandoned his life, and became a vulture; in which form his lovely queen still found him, and aroused him to a knowledge of the past. "Prince," she exclaimed, "recollect yourself: away with this uncouth form, to which the sin of

---

\* *Kuyonija.*

conversing with a heretic has condemned you!" The Raja was next born as a crow; when the princess, who, through her mystical powers, was aware of it, said to him: "Thou art now, thyself, the eater of tributary grain, to whom, in a prior existence, all the kings of the earth paid tribute."<sup>1</sup> Having abandoned his body, in consequence of the recollections excited by these words, the king next became a peacock, which the princess took to herself, and petted, and fed, constantly, with such food as is agreeable to birds of its class. The king of Kāśī\* instituted, at that time, the solemn sacrifice of a horse. In the ablutions with which it terminated,† the princess caused her peacock to be bathed; bathing, also, herself: and she then reminded Śata-dhanu how he had been successively born as various animals. On recollecting this, he resigned his life. He was, then, born as the son of a person of distinction;‡ and, the princess now assenting to the wishes of her father to see her wedded, the king of Kāśī caused it to be made known, that she would elect a bridegroom from those who should present themselves as suitors

---

<sup>1</sup> There is a play upon the word Bali, which means 'tribute', or 'fragments of a meal, scattered abroad to the birds', &c.

---

\* The original has जनको राजा, 'King Janaka'; thus revealing the monarch's name. This Janaka is nowhere else mentioned in the *Vishnu-purāṇa*.

† *Avabhṛitha*. See the *Laws of the Mānavas*, XI., 83.

‡ We read, in the Sanskrit:

जज्ञे च जनकस्त्वि पुत्रोऽसौ सुमहात्मनः ।

"And he was born as son of the very magnanimous Janaka."

Here, then, emerges still another Janaka; unless we suppose the princess to have married her own brother or half-brother..



for her hand.\* When the election took place, the princess made choice of her former lord, who appeared amongst the candidates, and again invested him with the character of her husband. They lived happily together;† and, upon her father's decease, Śatadhanu ruled over the country of Videha.‡ He offered many sacrifices, and gave away (many) gifts, and begot sons, and subdued his enemies in war; and, having duly exercised the sovereign power, and cherished (benignantly,) the earth, he died, as became his warrior-birth,§ in battle. His queen again followed him in death, and, conformably to sacred precepts, once more mounted, cheerfully, his funeral pile. The king, then, along with his princess, ascended beyond the sphere of Indra, to the regions where all desires are for ever gratified, || ob-

\* ततः सा पितरं तन्वी विवाहार्थमचोदयत् ।

स चापि कारयामास पिता तस्याः स्वयंवरम् ॥

† बुभुजे च तया सार्धं सभोगानुपनन्दनः ।

"And the prince, with her, governed Sabhoga."

Of this country I know of no other notice. There are obvious objections to reading स भोगात्; and I find no lection संभोगात्.

‡ The text seems to point to some close connexion between Kāśī, Vaidīśā, and Videha. For Kāśī, see Vol. II., p. 163, notes 12 and ¶; and, for Videha, *ibid.*, p. 165, notes 9 and ¶.

Vidīśā—perhaps intended by Vaidīśā,—is mentioned in Vol. II., p. 150, note 6. The word Vaidīśā may be due to the confounding, by ignorant or heedless copyists, of the *i* with the *ai* of old MSS. transcribed by them. Every one who has used such MSS., or has had to do with mediæval inscriptions, must have encountered, repeatedly, the particle *वे* so written as to be all but, if not quite, undistinguishable from *वि*, and *vice versa*. Perhaps the unjustifiable Triyāruṇa may now be accounted for: *vide supra*, foot of p. 37. Also see p. 158, note ‡; and Burnouf's *Introduction*, &c., Vol. I., p. 86, note 2, on Viśālā and Vaiśālī.

§ This phrase is an expansion of *dharma*tas.

|| This translates *lokān kāmāduhāṇ*. For the region called by the equivalent name Kāmāduba, *vide supra*, p. 164, Translator's note.



taining ever-during and unequalled happiness in heaven, the perfect felicity that is the rarely realized reward of conjugal fidelity.<sup>1\*</sup>

Such, Maitreya, is the sin of conversing with a heretic, and such are the expiatory effects of bathing after the solemn sacrifice of a horse,† as I have narrated them to you. Let, therefore, a man carefully avoid the discourse or contact of an unbeliever, especially at seasons of devotion, and when engaged in the performance of religious rites preparatory to a sacrifice.‡ If it be necessary that a wise man should look at the sun, after beholding one who has neglected his domestic ceremonies for a month, how much greater need must there be of expiation, after encountering one who has wholly abandoned the Vedas, one who is supported by infidels, or who disputes the doctrines of holy writ? Let not a person treat with even the civility of speech, heretics, those who do forbidden acts, § pretended saints, || scoundrels, sceptics,<sup>2¶</sup> and hypocrites. Intercourse with such

<sup>1</sup> The legend is peculiar to the Vishnu Purāṇa, although the doctrine it inculcates is to be found elsewhere.

<sup>2</sup> Haitukas, 'causalists;' either the followers of the Nyāya or

\* स्वर्गाद्ययत्नमतुलं दाम्पत्यमतिदुर्लभम् ।

प्राप्तं पुण्यफलं प्राप्य संसिद्धिं तां द्विजोत्तम ॥

† तथाश्वमेधावभृथस्नानमाहात्यमेव च ।

‡ विशेषतः क्रियाकाले यज्ञादौ चापि दीक्षितः ।

§ Vikarmastha.

|| Baidālavratika. The original of "hypocrites" is *bakavritti*.

¶ The patrons of the Veda, like their analogues of all times and climes, have a just dread of the exercise of right reason; and *haituka*, or 'rationalist', is, of course, a designation of evil omen to orthodox Hindus. The annexed extract from the *Gīrvāṇapadamanjari* of Varadarāja, or

iniquitous wretches, even at a distance,—all association

‘logical’ philosophy, or Bauddhas; those who take nothing upon authority, and admit nothing that cannot be proved: or it is ex-

Varada Bhaṭṭa,—*vide supra*, p. 136, note \*,—may remind the reader of Sir William Hamilton’s demolition, quotationwise, of the mathematics. One hapless logician, we here read, was cursed to become a jackal; while another was transformed into a ghoul. A person who addicts himself to the Nyāya is to be reckoned a dog; and Śāṅkara Āchārya is said to stigmatize such a one as a bull sans tail and horns. The extract here follows:

किंच तर्कवैशेषिकादीनि कानिचिद्दर्शनानि निषिद्धानि वर्तन्ते ।  
तथा हि । आदिपर्वणि [*śl.* 4192–6] भीष्मोत्पत्तिकथनानन्तरं पाण्डुः  
कुन्या आह ।

स वै दीर्घतमा नाम शापादृषिरजायत ।

स पुत्राञ्जनयामास गोतमादीन्महायशाः ।

लोभमोहाभिभूतास्तु पुत्रास्ते गोतमादयः ॥ इति ।

अत एव हयशौर्यपञ्चराचे ।

कपिलश्चाक्षपादश्च नास्तिको नय एव च ।

अथयस्त्रामसा एते शास्त्रमेषां विमोहनम् ॥ इति ।

मोक्षधर्मे [Read *Anuśāsana-parvan*, *śl.* 2195–6] ।

आन्वीक्षिकीं तर्कविद्यामनुरक्तो निरर्थिकाम् ।

हेतुवादान्बुवन्सत्सु विजेता ब्राह्मणादिषु ॥

यस्त्रेयं फलनिष्पत्तिः शृगालस्त्वं भव द्विज ।

न तर्कशास्त्रदग्धाय न वाच्यं पिशुनाय च ॥ इति ।

दानधर्मे ।

आन्वीक्षिकां सदासक्तं नरं ज्ञानं च तं विदुः ।

आदित्यपुराणे ।

बीजा विशेषिका जैना भविष्यन्ति कली युगे ।

पद्मपुराणे ।

कणादं गोतमं शाक्तमुपमन्युं च जैमिनिम् ।

अथयस्त्रामसा एते शास्त्रमेषां विमोहनम् ।

मच्छ्रयविशितैरितैरभेदो मम गोपितः ॥ इति ।

रामायणेऽयोध्याकाण्डे ।

शास्त्रेष्वन्येषु मुख्येषु विद्यमानेषु दुर्बुधाः ।

बुद्धिमान्वीक्षिकीं प्राप्य निरयं प्रतियन्ति ते ॥

with schismatics,—defiles. Let a man, therefore, care-

plained, those who, by argument, cast a doubt upon the efficacy

भवेत्पण्डितमानी यो ब्राह्मणो वेदनिन्दकः ।  
 आन्वीक्षिकीं तर्कवियामनुरक्तो निरर्थिकाम् ॥  
 हेतुवादान्नुवन्तस्तु विजेता हेतुवादिकः ।  
 क्रोष्टा चामितवक्ता च ब्राह्मणानां सदैव हि ॥  
 सर्वापशङ्की मूढश्च बालश्च कटुवागपि ।  
 बोद्धव्यस्तामसस्तात नरश्चानं च तं विदुः ॥  
 यथा श्वाभिमतं दुष्टं हन्तुं चैवावमुच्यते ।  
 एवं संभाषणार्थाय स हि शास्त्रवधाय च ॥ इति ।

मिताचरायाम् ।

हेतुकान्बकवृत्तींश्च वाङ्मन्त्रिणापि नार्चयेत् ।  
 तर्काप्रतिष्ठानादिति व्याससूत्रम् [II., I., 11] । येषां तर्केण मतिरापनेया  
 इति श्रुतिः [Katha Upanishad, II., 9] । पाप्मे पार्वतीं प्रतीश्वर आह ।  
 मच्छक्त्यावेशितैर्विप्रैः संप्रोक्तानि ततः परम् ।  
 कणादेन तु संप्रोक्तं शास्त्रं वैशेषिकं महत् ॥  
 गोतमेन तथा न्यायं साङ्ख्यं तु कपिलेन वै ।  
 द्विजन्मना जैमिनिना पूर्वं वेदमयार्थतः ॥  
 निरीश्वरेण वादेन कृते शास्त्रं महत्तमम् ॥ इति ।

पराशरोपपुराणे ।

अक्षपादप्रणीते च काणादे साङ्ख्ययोगयोः ।  
 त्याज्यः श्रुतिविरुद्धोऽशः श्रुत्येकशरणैर्नृभिः ।  
 जैमिनीये च वैयासे विरुद्धांशो न कश्चन ॥ इति ।  
 काशीमाहात्म्ये । तर्कशास्त्रं पठित्वात्यन्तं परिभाव्य महातार्किको जातः ।  
 तदनन्तरमगम्यागमनादिकं कृत्वा मातुलानां भक्षणं कृत्वा स्थितवान् ।  
 कदर्यदेशे कलिवृक्षोपरि महापिशाचो भूत्वा वज्रकालपर्यन्तं स्थितः ।  
 द्विजजेता नाम कश्चन ब्राह्मण इत्यादि सर्वत्र श्रूयते । अत एव बृहदा-  
 रण्यकभाष्ये आचार्यचरणैरुक्तम् । पुच्छविषाणरहितास्तार्किकबली-  
 वर्दाः प्रत्यवतिष्ठन्त इति । तस्माद्विशेषिके तर्के चात्यन्तं न पठनीय-  
 मित्येव प्रतीयते ।

Varadarāja's citations and references are careless in the extreme. To the source of the extract which he professes to take from the *Rāmāyaṇa* a clue is indicated by the verses wrongly attributed to the *Moksha-dharma*; and the line which he assigns to the *Mitāksharā* is the very passage of the *Vishnu-purāṇa* to which this note is appended.

fully avoid them.\*

These, Maitreya, are the persons called naked, the meaning of which term you desired to have explained. Their very looks vitiate the performance of an ancestral oblation: speaking to them destroys religious merit for a whole day. These are the unrighteous heretics to whom a man must not give shelter,† and speaking to whom effaces whatever merit he may, that day, have obtained. Men, indeed, fall into hell, as the consequence of only conversing with those who unprofitably‡ assume the twisted hair and shaven crown; with those who feed without offering food to gods, spirits, and guests;§ and those who are excluded from the presentation of cakes and libations of water to the manes.

of acts of devotion. ||

\* दूरादपास्तः संपर्कः सहास्यापि च पापिभिः ।  
पाषण्डिभिर्दुराचारैस्तस्मात्तान्परिवर्जयेत् ॥

† एते पाषण्डिनः पापा न ह्येतानालपेद्बुधः ।

This is the only reading that I find. Professor Wilson may have read *āśrayet*, for *ālapet*; mistaking its meaning.

‡ *Vṛthā*.

§ मोघाशिनामखिलशौचनिराकृतानाम् ।

|| This last explanation is the only one given by the commentator,—in a line in the midst of an anonymous metrical quotation:

संदेहकृद्भुविभ्यः सत्कर्मसु स हेतुकः ।

But see the *Mānavadharmasāstra*, XII., 111, and Kullūka's gloss thereon.

In his *Essays, Analytical, &c.*, Vol. I., pp. 5–7, Professor Wilson has given an account of the measures which he took, in India, towards preparing the materials that served as the basis of his Analyses of the Purāṇas, a series of papers ultimately abandoned unfinished. Under his oversight, we read, “indices were drawn up in Sanskrit. To convert

them into English, I employed several native young men, educated in the Hindu College, and well conversant with our language; and to them the Pandits explained the summary which they had compiled. The original and translation were examined by myself, and corrected wherever necessary. When any particular article appeared to promise interest or information, I had that translated in detail, or translated it myself; in the former case, revising the translation with the original."

From among all the works thus dealt with, none was the object of greater care than the *Vishnu-purāṇa*. Of this a very large part was thought worthy of unabridged reproduction in English. Out of the scattered portions left untranslated, the longest occurs in the Book here completed, embracing Chapters VIII.—XVIII.

This being an appropriate place for a general note, and it being of interest to know the relation of the present version to that made in India, I shall here add a few specimens of the latter,—now the property of the India Office Library,—indicating the locality of the corresponding passages in the former.

Vol. I., p. 87, l. 6 *ab infra*.

"As the characteristics of seasons are seen (to be the same and identical in all their returnings), so in that manner they are the same in every beginning of the Yuga, &c. Thus, he creates, again and again, on the commencement of the Kalpas. This (Brahmā) is desirous of creating, has the power of so doing, and is joined with the power of making creations."

Vol. II., p. 223, l. 6.

"He who thinks on Vasudeva during his prayers, sacrifices, and worship, despises even the state of Mahendra."

Vol. II., p. 241, l. 5.

"In the same manner, O Maitreya, as the sun shines here in the mid-day, so does he shine in the other Dwipas in the midnight. He is always seen opposite, in the time of his setting and rising, (whether seen) from the cardinal points or the corners. Whoever observes the sun from any place, he is rising there; and wherever he disappears, he is setting there. The sun is constantly present, and is neither setting nor rising (in any place, in reality). The ideas of his setting and rising are obtained merely from his being either visible or invisible (in any particular place)."

Vol. II., p. 244, l. 6.

"The rays of the sun and fire, identical with light and heat, pervade, during both day and night, being mingled with each other."

Vol. II., p. 281, note \*.

"Both these waters are productive of virtue and destructive of sin. These waters, O Maitreya, are of the Mandākinī; and it is the bathing in them that is called *Divyasnāna*."

Vol. II., p. 309, l. 4 *ab infra*.

"When the world, being freed from works, is rendered void of defects, pure in its real form, and identical with knowledge, then the tree of desire produces no fruits, and all distinctions of matter are lost."

Vol. II., p. 320, l. 8.

"The earth, feet, legs, buttocks, thighs, belly, &c., are, thus, depending upon one another. In the same manner, therefore, as this palanquin is upon my shoulder, so you do bear a load, also."

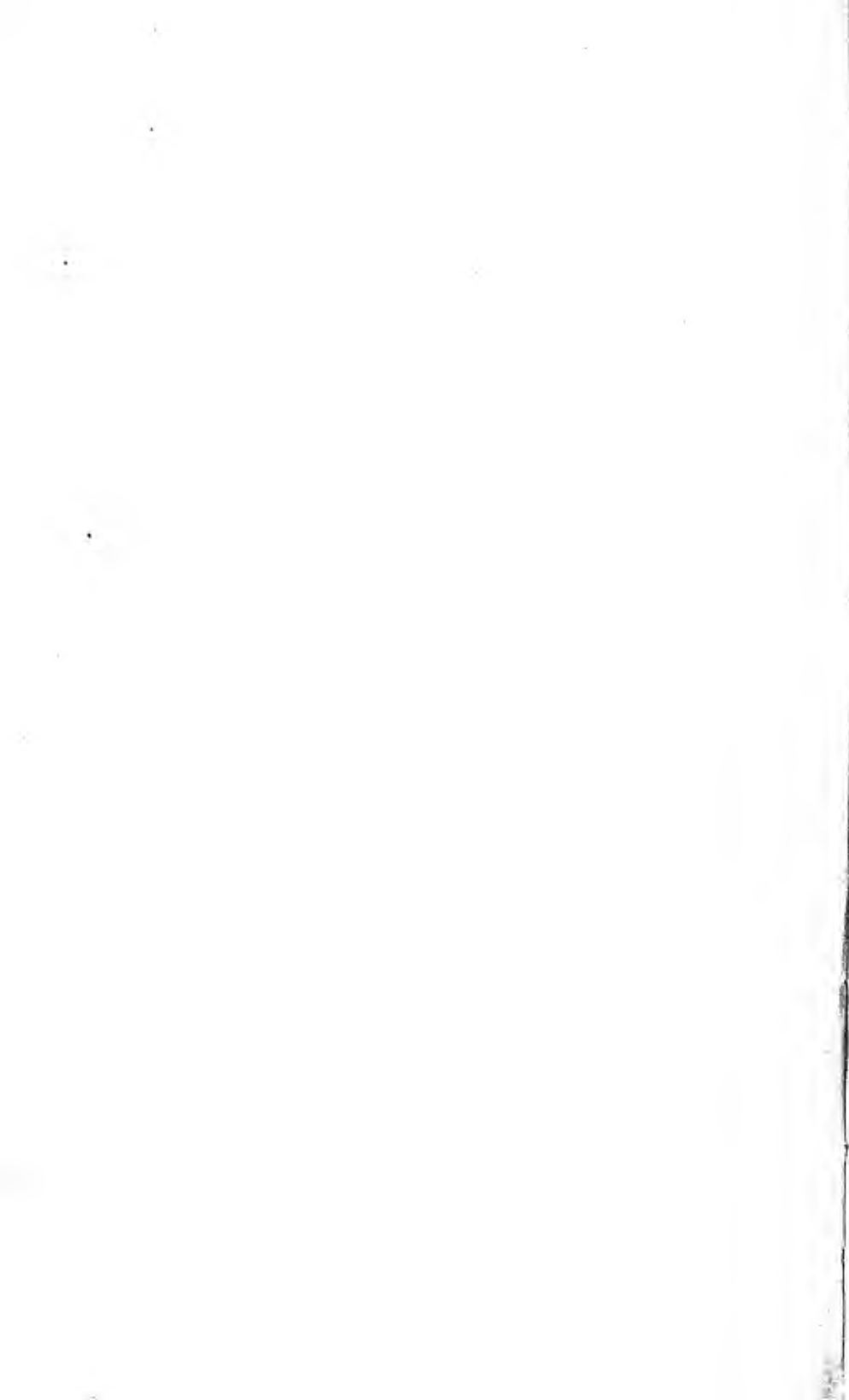
Vol. III., p. 17, l. 7.

"In the Raivata Manwantara, he, the Vishnu, who is the superior of all the Devatās, was born in the womb of Sambhūti, with the Rājasa-gaia, under the title of Mānasa."

Vol. III., p. 65, l. 1.

"A fourth Samhitā was written by Romaharshaia, called Romaharsha-ñikā. The essence of these four Samhitās, O Muni, or Maitreya, I have given in this Vishnu Purāia, which I shall communicate to you."

Further, we have, in Vol. III., "Bhagadheya" for "Nābhanidishṭa", p. 13, last line; "twenty-one", p. 23, l. 5; "Medhātithi", p. 25, l. 3; "Savarga", p. 27, l. 2; an omission of "Tāras", p. 27, l. 6 and note ||; &c. &c. &c.



# VISHNÚ PURÁÑA.

---

## BOOK IV.

---

### CHAPTER I.

Dynasties of kings. Origin of the solar dynasty from Brahmá. Sons of the Manu Vaivaswata. Transformations of Ilá or Sudyumna. Descendants of the sons of Vivaswat: those of Nedishtha. Greatness of Marutta. Kings of Vaiśáli. Descendants of Śaryāti. Legend of Raivata: his daughter Revatí married to Balaráma.

**MAITREYA.**—Venerable preceptor, you have explained to me the perpetual and occasional ceremonies which are to be performed by those righteous individuals who are diligent in their devotions; and you have, also, described to me the duties which devolve upon the several castes, and on the different orders of the human race. I have now to request you will relate to me the dynasties (of the kings who have ruled over the earth).<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The complete series of the different dynasties is found elsewhere only in the Váyu, the Brahmánda (which is the same), the Matsya, and the Bhágavata Puráñas. The Brahma Purána and the Hari Vamśa, the Agni, Linga, Kúrma, and Garuḍa Puráñas have lists of various extent, but none beyond the families of Páṇḍu and Kṛishná. The Márkaṇḍeya contains an account



PARĀŚARA.—I will repeat to you, Maitreya, an account of the family of Mann, commencing with Brahmá, and graced by a number of religious, magnanimous,\* and heroic princes. Of which it is said: "The lineage of him shall never be extinct, who daily calls to mind the race of Mann, originating with Brahmá."<sup>1</sup> Listen, therefore, Maitreya, to the (entire) series† of the princes of this family, by which all sin shall be effaced.

Before (the evolution of) the mundane egg, existed Brahmá, who was Hirāṇyagarbha, the form of (that supreme) Brahma which consists of Vishnú as identical with the Ríg-, Yajur-, and Sáma-; (Vedas); the primeval, uncreated cause§ of all worlds. From the right thumb of Brahmá was born the patriarch Daksha:<sup>2</sup> his daughter was Aditi, who was the mother|| of

of a few of the kings of the solar dynasty alone; and the Padma, of a part of the solar and lunar princes only, besides accounts of individuals. In the Rámáyāṇa, Mahābhārata, and in the other Purāṇas, occasional short genealogies and notices of individual princes occur. In general, there is a tolerable conformity: but this is not invariably the case; as we shall have occasion to observe.

<sup>1</sup> In the historical passages of all the Purāṇas in which such occur, and, especially, in the Vishnú and Váyu, verses, apparently the fragments of a more ancient narrative, are frequently cited. It may, also, be noticed, as a peculiarity of this part of the Purāṇa, that the narration is in prose.

<sup>2</sup> Daksha is elsewhere said to have been one of the mind-born sons of Brahmá, or to have been the son of the Prachetasas. See Vol. II., p. 9, note 1.

\* *Vira*, which the commentator defines by *utsāhavat*, 'energetic'.

† *Anupūrvī*, 'succession.' ‡ The original adds 'etc.' § *Ādibhūta*.

|| The father being Kaśyapa, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., I., 10.

the Sun.\* The Manu (Vaivaswata) was the son of the celestial luminary; and his sons<sup>1</sup> were Ikshwáku,

<sup>1</sup> According to the nomenclature sometimes followed, and, as we shall have reason to conclude, intended in this place, there are ten sons of Manu. The commentator regards them, however, as but nine; considering Nábhága-nedishtha but one name, or, Nedishtha the father of Nábhága.† The number is generally stated to be nine; although there is some variety in the names, particularly in this name, which occurs Nabhágadishtha, Nábhágarishtha;‡ and also separated, as Nábhága, Nabhaga, or Nabhága; Nedishtha, Dishtha, and Arishtha: the latter, as in the Kúrma, distinctly stated, नाभागो ह्यरिष्टः । Again, नेदिष्ठः सप्तमः स्मृतः । Brahma Purāṇa. The commentator on the Hari Varṇa quotes the Vedas for Nábhágadishtha: नाभागदिष्टं वै मानवमिति श्रुतेः ।§ But the name occurs as Nábhágedishtha in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa of the Rígveda, where|| a story is told of his being excluded from all share of his inheritance, on the plea of his being wholly devoted to a religious life: नाभागेदिष्टं वै मानवं ब्रह्मचर्यं वसन्तं भ्रातरो निरभजन् । See, also, Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 384.¶ The name, as ordinarily written, Na-bhága, 'no-share,' has, nevertheless, an obvious connexion with the legend. The name of Nfiga is found only in our text, the Padma, and the

\* *Vivaswat*; and so in the next sentence.

For Vivaswat's wives, *vide supra*, p. 20, text and note 1.

† नाभागस्य पिता नेदिष्ठ इत्यर्थः । क्वचिन्नेदिष्ठस्यैव दिष्ट इत्यपि संज्ञा । Dishtha is here recognized as a substitute, "somewhere", for Nedishtha. *Vide infra*, p. 240, notes 2, †, ††, and ††.

‡ Corrected from "Nábhágarishtha".

§ This quotation is from Nílakantha on the *Harivamśa*, sl. 614. Only I find, invariably, the reading नाभागेदिष्टं, yielding Nábhágedishtha.

|| V., 14. On the Nabánazdista of the ancient Pársis, see Professor R. Roth, *Zeitschrift der Deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, Vol. VI., pp. 243—247.

¶ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 25.

Nṛiga,\* Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti,† Narishyanta, Prāmśu, Nābhāga, Nedishṭha,‡ Karūsha,§ and Prishadhra.

Bhāgavata: the Vāyu has Najava.|| Prāmśu is, also, the reading of the Vāyu and Agni, but not of the rest,¶ which have Vena, Vanya, Daṇḍa, Kuśanābha, or Kavi, in its place. The Mahābhārata, Ādi Parvan,\*\* p. 113, has: Vena,†† Dhṛishṭu, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Ikshwāku, Karūsha, Śaryāti, Ilā, Prishadhra, and Nābhāgarishṭa. The Padma Purāṇa, in the Pātala Khaṇḍa, says there were 'ten,'‡‡ and names them Ikshwāku, Nṛiga, Dishṭa, Dhṛishṭa, Karūsha, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Prishadhra, Nābhāga, and Kavi.

\* *Vide supra*, p. 13, note ††; *et infra*, p. 256, notes • and §.

† Several MSS. have Saryāti.

‡ Substituted, here and in numerous instances below, for the unmeaning "Nedishṭa". § In three MSS. I find Kārūsha.

|| This seems to have been mistaken for Nahava, into which one of Professor Wilson's MSS. corrupts Nahusha, itself an error for Nabhaga.

¶ But see note ‡‡, below.

\*\* Śl. 3140—3142. The last person of this group is called, in the text, the tenth; and Nīlakaṇṭha, the commentator, says, of him: चतुर्धा-  
न्नाभागादन्वोऽयं नाभागारिष्टो दशमः। We are to understand, then, by नाभागिच्छाकुं, not one name, but an irregular combination of two.

†† The commentator Arjuna Miśra here reads Veṇu.

‡‡ And so says the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*,—IX., I., 11, 12,—which gives the same names, save Nabhaga for Nābhāga. At VIII., XIII., 2, 3, it has, among ten names, both Nabhaga and Nābhāga, omitting Nṛiga; and it puts Vasumat for Kavi. *Vide supra*, p. 14, note •.

Like our text at pp. 13, 14, *supra*, the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, LXXIX., 11, 12, says that the Manu had nine sons: Ikshwāku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Dishṭa, Karūsha, and Prishadhra. The Calcutta edition of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa* has, here, such bad readings as Śarmāti, Kurūsha, and Prushadhru. See, likewise, the same Purāṇa, CXI., 4, 5.

In the *Harivaṁśa*, 613, 614, the names, in the best MSS., are, substantially, as in the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*; except that, instead of Nābhāga and Dishṭa, we find Prāmśu and Nābhāgarishṭa, with the variant Daṇḍa and Nedishṭha. Further, Dhṛishṭu is a common substitute for its synonym Dhṛishṭa.

Before their birth, the Manu, being desirous of sons, offered a sacrifice\* (for that purpose,) to Mitra and Varuṇa; but, the rite being deranged, through an irregularity of the ministering priest, a daughter, Ilā,† was produced.<sup>1</sup> Through the favour of the two divinities,

<sup>1</sup> तत्रापकृते होतुरपचारादिला नाम कन्या बभूव । "That sacrifice being wrongly offered, through the improper invocations of the Hotṛi," &c.‡ It is also read अपहृते, 'frustrated.' This is rather a brief and obscure allusion to what appears to be an ancient legend, and one that has undergone various modifications. §

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has two several lists of the sons of the Manu. The first names Ikshvāku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṇu, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Nábhāga Arishṭa, Karuṣha, Pṛishadhra, and Prāṇśu; the second, Ikshvāku, Nabhaga, Dhṛishṭa, Śaryāti, Narishyanta, Prāṇśu, Nábhāga Arishṭa, Karuṣha, and Pṛishadhra.

As each of these lists distinctly states that it reckons up only ten persons, we are to find but one in नाभागोऽरिष्टः, which stands, here, in lieu of the more ordinary नाभागारिष्टः.

See the preceding page, note \*\*; also, p. 240, note \*\*, and p. 256, note \*, *infra*.

\* *Ishti*.

† See the references in note \* to p. 236, *infra*; also, Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 82, note a.

‡ It is to this effect that the passage is to be understood, if we read अपहृते, which lection the commentator prefers: तस्मिन्कर्मणि मनुपत्या कन्यार्थं प्रार्थितस्य होतुरपचारात्कन्यासंकल्परूपात् । अपहृते विकले जाते सति कन्याभूत् । He adds: अपहृतेरिति पाठोऽपहृष्टाद्धोमाद्धेतोरित्यर्थः । I nowhere find Professor Wilson's reading अपहृते.

§ Premising the names of the Manu's ten sons, the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., I., 13—16, says, as translated by Burnouf:

"Avant leur naissance, quand le Manu n'avait pas encore d'enfants, le bienheureux Vasichṭha, ce puissant sage, avait célébré le sacrifice de Mitra et de Varuṇa, pour lui donner des fils.

"Alors Craddhā, la femme du Manu, qui s'était soumise au vœu du lait, s'étant rendue auprès de l'officiant, se jeta à ses pieds, et le supplia de lui donner une fille.

"Mais à l'instant où le Brâhmane faisant les fonctions d'officiant,

however, (her sex was changed, and) she became a man, named Sudyumna. At a subsequent period, in con-

According to the Matsya, no change of sex took place, in the first instance. The eldest son of Manu was *Ida* or *Ila* (इड or इल), whom his father appointed sovereign of the seven Dwipas. In his progress round his dominions, *Ila* came to the forest of Śāmbhu or Śiva; entering into which, he was changed to a female, *Ilā*, agreeably to a promise made, formerly, by Śiva to Pūrvati,—who had been, once, unseasonably broken in upon by some sages,\*—that such a transformation should be inflicted on every male who trespassed upon the sacred grove. After a season, the brothers of *Ila* sought for him, and, finding him thus metamorphosed, applied to Vasishṭha, their father's priest, to know the cause. He explained it to them, and directed them to worship Śiva and his bride. They did so, accordingly; and it was announced, by the deities, that, upon the performance of an *Aśwamedha* by Ikshwāku, *Ila* should become a *Kiūpurnsha*, named *Sudyumna*, and that he should be a male one month, and a female another month, alternately. The *Vāyu*, which is followed by most of the other authorities, states, that, upon Manu's offering their share of the sacrifice to *Mitra* and *Varuṇa*, instead of a boy, a girl was born; according to the *Vedas*: इडा जज्ञे इति श्रुतिः । Manu desired her to follow him:

तामिलेत्यथ होवाच मनुर्दण्डधरः स्मृतेः ।

अनुगच्छामि भद्रं ते तमिला प्रत्युवाच ह ॥

Whence her name *Ilā* (from *ila* or *idā*, 'come'). There, however, Manu propitiates *Mitra* and *Varuṇa*; and the girl *Ilā* is

venait de recevoir ses instructions de celui qui récite le *Yadjus*, et tenait entre ses mains l'offrande, l'attention qu'il donnait à la prière de *Ṛaddhā*, lui fit commettre une erreur dans la manière dont il prononça le mot *Vachā*.

"La méprise de l'officiant donna lieu à la naissance d'une fille qui fut nommée *Ilā*."

\* In *Ilāvṛita*, the scholiast says,

sequence of (becoming subject to the effects of) a malediction once pronounced by Śiva,\* Sudyumna was

changed into the boy Ila, or Sudyumna, by their favour: as the Mārkaṇḍeya:†

तथेति ताभ्यामुक्तं तु देवाभ्यां सेव कन्यका ।

इला इलः समभवत्सुद्युम्न इति विद्युतः ॥

Sudyumna's subsequent change to a female again is told much as in the Matsya; but his being alternately male and female is not mentioned in the Vāyu, any more than it is in our text. The Bhāgavata agrees, in that respect, with the Matsya; but it has, evidently, embellished the earlier part of the legend, by the introduction of another character, Śraddhā, the wife of the Manu. It is said, that it was by her instigation,—as she was desirous of having a girl,—that the ministering Brahmans altered the purpose of the rite; in consequence of which a girl, instead of a boy, was born. The similarity of the name has induced the learned author of the Origin of Pagan Idolatry to conceive that he has found the Ila of the Hindus in the Il or Ilus of the Phenicians. "The Phenician *Il* is the masculine *Ila* of the Hindoos and Indo-Scythæ; and *Ila* was a title of Menu or Buddha, who was preserved in the ark, at the time of the deluge." Vol. I., p. 156. And he thence concludes, that Ila must be Noah; whilst other circumstances in his Phenician history identify him with Abraham. Vol. I., p. 159. Again: "*Ilus* or *Il* \* \* is a regular Cuthic name of Buddha, which the Phenicians, I have no doubt, brought with them from their settlements on the Erythræan sea: for Buddha or Menu, in the character of Ila, is said to have married his own daughter, Ila, who is described as the offspring of an ancient personage that was preserved in an ark, at the time of the general deluge." Vol. I., p. 223. Now, whatever connexion there may be between the names of Ila, Il, Ilus, Ilium, Ilā 'the earth,' and Ilos 'slime,' there is no very obvious

\* *Īśvara*, in the original.

† CXI., 11, 12.

again transformed to a woman, in the vicinity of the hermitage of Budha, the son of (the deity of) the Moon. Budha saw and espoused her, and had, by her, a son named Purūravas.\* After his birth, the illustrious† Rishis, desirous of restoring Sudyumna to his sex, prayed to the mighty Vishnú,‡ who is the essence of the four Vedas,§ of mind,|| of everything, and of nothing;¶ and who is in the form of the sacrificial

resemblance between the Paurāṇik legends of Ilā and the Mosaic record; nor do the former authorize the particulars of Ilā stated by Mr. Faber, on the authority, probably, of Colonel Wilford. The Manu Satyavrata, who was preserved in the ark, is never called Ilā; nor is he the father of Ilā. Buddha was not so preserved; nor is Ilā ever a title of Buddha. Budha (not Buddha), the husband of Ilā, never appears as her father; nor is he a Manu; nor is she the daughter of any ancient personage preserved in an ark. There is not, therefore, as far as I am aware, any circumstance in the history of Ilā or Ilā which can identify him either with Abraham or Noah.

\* सानुरागश्च तस्यां बुधः पुष्करवसमात्मजमुत्पादयामास ।

Thus it is indicated, observes the commentator, that the Solarian race sprang from the Lunarian.

For Ilā and Purūravas, see Chapter VI. of this Book. Ilā is dwelt on, in great detail, by Burnouf, in his *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. III., Preface, pp. LXX.—XCII.

See, for another version of the original, Dr. Muir's *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 44.

† *Amitatejas*.

‡ In all my MSS., Vishnú is qualified, first of all, as 'identical with sacrifice,' *ishṭimaya*.

§ The epithet 'one with the law', *dharmamaya*, here follows, in nearly all my MSS.

|| Here all my best MSS. insert 'identical with intelligence', *jñānamaya*.

¶ This is not in all MSS.



male;\* and, through his favour, Ilá once more became Sudyumna; (in which character) he had three sons, Utkala, Gaya, and Vinata.<sup>1</sup>

In consequence of his having been, formerly, a female, Sudyumna was excluded from any share in his paternal dominions; but his father, at the suggestion of Vasishthá, bestowed upon him the city Pratishthána;<sup>2</sup> and he gave it to Purúravas.†

<sup>1</sup> The Matsya calls the name of the third, Haritáśwa; the Váyu, &c., Vinatáśwa; the Márkaṇḍeya, † Vinaya; and the Bhá-gavata, § Vimala. All but the last agree in stating that Utkala (Orissa) and Gayá (in Behar) are named after the two first. The Matsya calls the third the sovereign of the east, along with the Kauravas; the Váyu makes him king of the west. || The Bhá-gavata calls them, all three, rulers of the south. ¶

<sup>2</sup> The authorities agree in this location of Sudyumna. Pratishthána\*\* was situated on the eastern side of the confluence of the Ganges and Jumna, the country between which rivers was the territory of the direct male descendants of Vaivaswata. In the

\* *Yajñapurusha*. See Vol. I., p. 61, note 1; p. 163, note \*; and pp. 180, 181: also, Vol. II., p. 136.

† One MS. has Purushavara.

‡ CXI., 15.

§ IX., I. 41.

|| The *Váyu-purāṇa* says:

उत्कलस्थीत्कलं राष्ट्रं विनताश्चस्य पश्चिमम् ।

दिक्पूर्वा तस्य राजर्षेर्गयस्य तु गया पुरी ॥

We are, thus, told, that the kingdom of Vinatáśwa lay to the west of Utkala.

With this compare the *Harivahśa*, sl. 632; and the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXV., 27.

¶ दक्षिणापथराजानो बभूवुर्धर्मवत्सलाः ।

*Vide infra*, p. 240, note ||.

\*\* See Burnouf's *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. III., Preface, pp. XCVII., XCVIII.



Of the other sons of the Manu, Prīshadhra, in consequence of (the crime of) killing a cow,\* was degraded

Hari Varṇa, † it is said that he reigned in Pratiśthāna, having killed Dhṛiṣṭāka, Ambarīsha, and Daṇḍa:

सुदुम्रः कारयामास प्रतिष्ठाने नृपक्रियाम् ।

धृष्टकश्चाभ्वरीषश्च दण्डश्चेति हतचयः ॥

M. Langlois had, ‡ no doubt, सुतचयः in his copy; as he renders it: § 'Il donna \* \* \* naissance à trois enfants;' though, as he observes, Hamilton|| had called these the sons of Ikshvāku. The Brahma Purāṇa has not this passage; nor does the commentator on the Hari Varṇa give any explanation: neither does anything of the kind occur elsewhere. We have, however, subsequently, in the text, ¶ Daṇḍa named as a son of Ikshvāku; and, in the Padma Purāṇa, Śrībhī Khaṇḍa, and in the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, we have a detailed narrative of Daṇḍa, the son of Ikshvāku, whose country was laid waste by an imprecation of Bhārgava, whose daughter \*\* that prince had violated. His kingdom became, in consequence, the Daṇḍaka forest. The Mahābhārata, Dāna Dharma, †† alludes to the same story. If, therefore, the preferable reading of the Hari Varṇa be Suta, 'son,' it is at variance with all other authorities. At the same time, it

\* The Sanskrit has 'his teacher's cow'.

† Śl. 637.

‡ Since he puts "Dandaca", a word of three syllables, it is more than probable that he followed some such reading as दण्डकश्चेति ते चयः, which I find to be the most ordinary. In some MSS., दण्डश्चेति सुतास्त्रयः occurs. The lection हतचयः is of no account. It seems like a corruption of the last syllables of दण्डश्चेतीह ते चयः, which is read in one of Professor Wilson's MSS.

§ Vol. I., p. 54.

|| The fact as to Mr. Hamilton's statement is more correctly expressed in these words: "Fr. Hamilton dit que ce roi, et par conséquent ses frères, étaient fils d'Ikshvācon." See *Genealogies of the Hindus*, &c., p. 64.

¶ Vide *infra*, p. 259.

\*\* Abjā, by name.

†† A part of the *Sānti-parvan*.

to the condition of a Śúdra.<sup>1</sup> From Karúsha descended the mighty warriors\* termed Kárúshas, (the

must be admitted, that the same work is singular in asserting any collision between Daúda and his brothers and Sudyumna; and the passage seems to have grown out of that careless and ignorant compilation which the Hari Vanúsa so perpetually presents. It is, not improbably, a gratuitous perversion of this passage in the Matsya:

नाभागस्याम्बरीषस्तु धृष्टस्य च सुतत्रयम् ।

'Ambarisha was the son of Nábhága;† and Dhṛishṭia had three sons.‡

<sup>1</sup> This story has been modified, apparently, at different periods, according to a progressive horror of the crime. Our text simply states the fact. The Váyu says he was hungry, and not only killed, but ate, the cow of his spiritual preceptor, Chyavana. In the Márkaṇḍeya,§ he is described as being out a hunting, and killing the cow of the father of Bábhavya, mistaking it for a Gavaya or Gayal. The Bhágavata,|| as usual, improves upon the story, and says that Pṛishadhra was appointed, by his Guru, Vasishṭha, to protect his cattle. In the night, a tiger made his way into the fold; and the prince, in his haste, and in the dark, killed the cow upon which he had fastened, instead of the tiger. In all the authorities, the effect is the same; and the imprecation of the offended sage degraded Pṛishadhra to the caste of a Śúdra. According to the Bhágavata, the prince led a life of devotion, and, perishing in the flame of a forest, obtained final liberation. The obvious purport of this legend, and of some that follow, is, to account for the origin of the different castes from one common ancestor.

\* Kshattriya.

† Vide *infra*, p. 257.

‡ For their names, vide *infra*, p. 255, note 2.

§ Ch. CXII.

|| IX., II., 3—14.

sovereigns of the north.)<sup>1\*</sup> The son of Nedishtha,† named Nábhága, became a Vaiśya:<sup>2‡</sup> his son was Bhalan-

<sup>1</sup> The Bhāgavata§ also places the Kárushas in the north:॥

उत्तरापथगोप्तारी ब्रह्मण्या धर्मवत्सलाः ।

But the country of the Kárushas is, usually, placed upon the Páripátra or Vindhya mountains. See Vol. II., p. 158, note 2.¶

<sup>2</sup> The Vāyu has 'Nábhága, the son of Arishtha:' नाभा-  
गोऽरिष्टपुत्रसु ।\*\* The Márkaṇḍeya†† has 'the son of Dishtha:'  
दिष्टपुत्रसु नाभागः । The Bhāgavata‡ also calls him the son of

\* I do not find this parenthesis in the original; nor is it taken from the commentary.

† One MS. has Dishtha. Vide supra, p. 231, note †.

‡ See Original Sanskrit Texts, Part I., pp. 45, 46. § IX., II., 16.

॥ By the term *uttarāpatha*, used in the original, the regions to the north of the Vindhya mountains are intended. The regions to the south of those mountains are, similarly, denominated *dakṣiṇāpatha*. Vide supra, p. 237, note ¶.

¶ But also see Vol. II., p. 123, text and note 1; p. 133, text and note †.

\*\* The verse, as I find it, runs:

नाभागोऽरिष्टपुत्रसु विद्वानासीद्वलन्दनः ।

That is to say, Bhalandana is declared to be son of 'Nábhága Arishtha.'

The purport of the verse is, manifestly, to set forth the paternity of Bhalandana. Besides this, not to increase the *Vāyu-purāṇa*'s tale of the Mann's sons from nine to ten, Nábhága Arishtha must be taken together, as denoting one person. The sense would not be changed, while the grammar would be amended, by reading नाभागारिष्टः,—yielding Nábhágárishta,—which, as we have seen, occurs elsewhere. Vide supra, p. 232, notes \*\* and ‡; also, p. 256, note \*, infra.

†† CXIII., 2. And so the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 53.

‡ IX., II., 23:

नाभागो दिष्टपुत्रोऽन्यः कर्मणा वैश्यातां गतः ।

Śrīdhara remarks, on this: दिष्टस्य पुत्रो नाभागो वक्ष्यमाणनाभा-  
गादन्य इति भ्रान्तिव्युदासार्थमनुवादमात्रम् ।

The Nábhága from whom this one is thus discriminated is named in IX., IV., 1, 9, 13; also, in VIII., XIII., 2. Vide supra, p. 14, note \*, and p. 232, note ‡.

The commentator on the *Vishnu-purāṇa* says: नेदिष्टस्य पुत्रो नाभागो वैश्यातां गतः ।

dana;<sup>1</sup>\* whose son was the celebrated Vatsa-

Dishā. According to that authority, he became a Vaiśya by his actions. The other Purāṇas generally agree, that the descendants of this person became Vaiśyas; but the Matsya and Vāyu do not notice it. The Mārkaṇḍeya details a story of Nābhāga's carrying off and marrying the daughter of a Vaiśya; in consequence of which he was degraded, it is said, to the same caste, and deprived of his share of the patrimonial sovereignty, which his son and successor recovered. The Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vaṁśa† assert, that two sons of Nābhāgarishā again became Brahmans: but the duties of royalty imply the Kshattriya caste of his posterity; and the commentator on our text observes,‡ that the son of Nābhāga was born before his father's degradation, and, consequently, the race continued Kshattriya;—an assertion unsupported by any authority: and it must, therefore, appear, that a race of Vaiśya princes was recognized by early traditions.

<sup>1</sup> Bhanandana:§ Bhāgavata.

नाभागो दिष्टपुत्रोऽन्यः कर्मणा वैश्यतां गतः ।

इति शुकोक्तिः । तस्य च पुत्रोत्पत्तेरुत्तरकालमेव वैश्यत्वप्राप्त्या तत्पुत्रस्य भलन्दनस्य च त्रियत्वमविरुद्धमेव । अत एव तदन्वयस्य मरुत्तस्य चक्रवर्तित्वं संगच्छते । This imports, that it was not till after the birth of Bhalandana, that Nābhāga was turned into a Vaiśya; and hence it is that his descendants were, like himself in his original dignity of birth, Kshattriyas.

We meet with other Nābhāgas, at pp. 256 and 303, *infra*.

\* In two MSS. I find Bhanandana, for which see note §, below.

† नाभागारिष्टपुत्री द्वौ वैश्यौ ब्राह्मणतां गतौ ।

So read my best MSS.; the Calcutta edition being defective here. Some MSS. have Nābhāgarishā for the name; and, in one, I find Nābhāga:

नाभागस्य तु पुत्री द्वौ वैश्यौ ब्राह्मणतां गतौ ।

M. Langlois must have had before him a still different lection, one much like that in the Bombay edition; for he translates: "Les fils de Nābhāgarishā, Kshattriyas d'origine, devinrent Vēśyas."

‡ See note †† in the preceding page.

§ This looks like a Bengal corruption of Bhalandana, the reading in all my best MSS. of the *Bhāgavata*. See note \* in the next page.

prī:<sup>1\*</sup> his son was Prāmśu;† whose son was Prajāni;<sup>2</sup> whose son was Khanitra;<sup>3</sup> whose son was the very valiant Kshupa;<sup>4</sup> ‡ whose son was Viṁśa;<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vatsapriti: Bhāgavata. Vatsasrī: Mārkaṇḍeya. § The latter has a story of the destruction of the Daitya Kujāmbha by Vidūratha, the father of Sunandā, the wife of Vatsasrī. The Vāyu has Sahasrārī. ||

<sup>2</sup> Pramati: Bhāgavata. ¶

<sup>3</sup> According to the Mārkaṇḍeya, the priests of the royal family conspired against this prince, and were put to death by his ministers.

<sup>4</sup> Chākshusha: Bhāgavata. \*\*

<sup>5</sup> Vira: Mārkaṇḍeya. ††

\* All my best MSS. give Vatsapriti once, or twice, several having both Vatsapriti and Vatsapri; for the name is repeated, in the original, in connexion with Prāmśu. Vatsapri, and as son of Bhalandana, is mentioned several times in the *Anukramanikā* to the *Rigveda*.

† Where (for a single instance out of several,) Prāmśu—p. 232, *supra*, —is called one of the “sons” of Manu, are we to understand, by “sons”, “descendants”? Or is the Prāmśu here spoken of a second person of that name? He was one of twelve sons of Vatsapri, according to the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, CXVIII., 1, 2.

According to the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, Prāmśu was son of Bhalandana:

भलन्दनस्य पुत्रोऽभूत्प्राग्निनाम महाबलः ।

‡ My MSS. read, without exception: ततश्च खनिचः । तस्माच्च पुपः ।  
पुपाच्चातिवलपराक्रमो विंशोऽभवत् । Professor Wilson, mistaking the particle *cha*, ‘and’, for part of the name, printed “Chakshupa”, which I have altered as above.

See note § in the next page. That the name is Kshupa is, further, evident from several passages of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*; as CXX., 1:

पुपः खनिचपुत्रस्तु प्राप्य राज्यं यथा पिता ।

§ My best MSS. of the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa* have, like the Calcutta edition, Vatsapri.

|| In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as known to me, there is no name at all here. See the line quoted in note †, above.

¶ The *Vāyu-purāṇa* and the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa* have Prajāti.

\*\* Pretty certainly, there is, here, a gross mistake in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*. See note ‡, above.

†† CXX., 13.

whose son was Vivimśati,<sup>1\*</sup> whose son was Khanineta;† whose son was the powerful, wealthy, and valiant Karandhama;<sup>2</sup> whose son was Avikshi (or Avikshit);<sup>3</sup>‡ whose son was the mighty Marutta,§ of whom this well-known verse|| is recited:

<sup>1</sup> Rambha precedes Vivimśati: Bhāgavata. ¶

<sup>2</sup> Balāśwa,\*\* or Balakāśwa, or Subalāśwa, according to the Mārkaṇḍeya, which explains his name Karandhama to denote his creation of an army,—when besieged by his revolted tributaries,—by breathing on his hands (करं + धमः).

<sup>3</sup> Both forms occur, as the commentator observes: अविचेरेव ऋचिद्विचिदित्यपि नाम । The Mārkaṇḍeya has a long story of this prince's carrying off the daughter of Viśāla, king of Vaidīśa††. Being attacked and captured by his confederated rivals, he was rescued by his father, but was so much mortified by his disgrace, that he vowed never to marry nor reign. The princess, also be-

\* I find no reading but Vivimśa, if Viṁśa—which is, of course, a mere clerical inadvertence,—is left out of account. Vivimśa is, also, the lection of the Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa, CXX., 14, 15: and see note §, below. For this word, as denoting a caste, see Vol. II., p. 193.

† Nearly all my MSS., including every one of the best, here interpose Ativibhūti, or else Vibhūti, as son of Khanineta and sire of Karandhama.

‡ In the Vāyu-purāṇa I find Avikshita; and he is named immediately after Khanitra, as if his son. But, almost certainly, there is, here, a hiatus in my MSS.

Avikshita is, also, the reading of the Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa, Ch. CXXIII.

§ In the Mahābhārata, Āśvamedhika-parvan, Chap. IV., we find the following genealogy, referred to the Kṛita-yuga: Manu, Prasandhi, Kshupa, Ikshvaku, Viṁśa (one of a hundred sons, all kings), Vivimśa, Khanineta (one of fifteen sons), Karandhama, Avikshit, Marutta.

|| I find "two stanzas": यस्मेमावद्यापि श्लोकौ गीयेते । And two stanzas are immediately afterwards quoted.

¶ In my MSS., Rambha follows Vivimśati; and Viṁśa is omitted.

\*\* This appears to be the true reading of the Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa.

†† From the original, वैदिशाधिपतेः, it is safest, pending the production of explicit proof that there is such a name as "Vaidīśa," to infer, in preference, Vaidīśa. Vide supra, p. 221, note ‡.

"There never was beheld, on earth, a sacrifice equal to the sacrifice of Marutta. All the implements and utensils\* were made of gold. Indra was intoxicated† with the libations of Soma-juice; and the Brahmans were enraptured with the magnificent donations they received. The winds of heaven encompassed the rite, as guards; and the assembled gods attended, to behold it."<sup>1</sup>; Marutta was a Chakravartin (or universal

coming an ascetic, met with him in the woods; and they were, finally, espoused: but Avikshit kept his other vow, and relinquished his succession in favour of his son, who succeeded to the kingdoms of both Karandhama and Viśāla.

<sup>1</sup> Most of our authorities quote the same words, with, or without, addition. § The Vāyu|| adds, that the sacrifice was conducted by Saṁvarta, whom the Bhāgavata terms a Yogin, the

\* "Implements and utensils" is to render *vastu*.

† The commentary explains अमाद्यत् by अतितृप्या दृष्टो बभूव ।

‡ अमाद्यदिन्द्रः सोमेन दक्षिणाभिर्द्विजातयः ।

मरुतः परिवेष्टारः सदस्याश्च दिवीकसः ॥

According to the scholiast, the Maruts purveyed food, &c., on the occasion: मरुतो देवाः । परिवेष्टार अन्नादिपरिवेष्टकाः ।

§ Whence the first of these stanzas was derived I am unable to say; but we probably have the prototype of part of the second in the following quotation in the *Aitareya-brāhmaṇa*, VIII., 21:

मरुतः परिवेष्टारो मरुत्तस्यावसन्तहे ।

आविञ्चितस्य कामप्रविशे देवाः संभासदः ॥

See, also, the *Śatapatha-brāhmaṇa*, XIII., V., IV., 6; and compare the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 27, 28.

|| Its words are:

संवर्तेन दिवं नीतः समुहसह बान्धवैः ।

विवादोऽत्र महानासीत्संवर्तस्य बृहस्पतेः ॥

अग्निं दृष्ट्वा तु यज्ञस्य कुक्षस्य बृहस्पतिः ।

संवर्तेन हुते यज्ञे चुकोप सुभृशं तदा ।

लोकानां स हि नाशाय दैवतैर्हि प्रसादितः ॥



monarch): he had a son named Narishyanta;<sup>1</sup> his son was Dama;<sup>2</sup> his son was Rájyavardhana;\* his son was Sudhriti; his son was Nara; his son was Kevala; his son was Bandhumat; his son was Vegavat; his son was Budha;<sup>3</sup> his son was Trinabindu, who had a daughter

son of Angiras; and that Brihaspati was so jealous of the splendour of the rite, that a great quarrel ensued between him and Samvarta. How it involved the king is not told; but, apparently, in consequence, Marutta, with his kindred and friends, was taken, by Samvarta, to heaven. According to the Márkaṇḍeya, † Marutta was so named from the paternal benediction, 'May the winds be thine,' or 'be propitious to thee' (मरुत्तव शिवायामु). He reigned, agreeably to that record, 85000 years.

<sup>1</sup> Omitted in the Bhágavata.

<sup>2</sup> A rather chivalric and curious story is told of Dama, in the Márkaṇḍeya. ‡ His bride, Sumaná, daughter of the king Daśárha, § was rescued, by him, from his rivals. One of them, Vapushmat, afterwards killed Marutta, who had retired into the woods, after relinquishing his crown to his son. Dama, in retaliation, killed Vapushmat, and made the Piṇḍa (or obsequial offering) to his father, of his flesh: with the remainder he fed the Brahmans of Rákshasa origin: such were the kings of the solar race.

वपुष्मतश्च मसिन् पिण्डदानं चकार ह ।

ब्राह्मणाभोजयामास रक्षःकुलसमुद्भवान् ।

एवंविधा हि राजानो बभूवुः सूर्यवंशजाः ॥

<sup>3</sup> The Bhágavata has Bandhavat, Oghavat, and Bandha. ¶

\* The *Váyu-purāṇa* has Ráshtravardhana.

† CXXVIII., 33.

‡ Ch. CXXXIV.

§ I find सुता दशार्णाधिपतेः, "daughter of the king of Daśárha". See Vol. II., p. 160, note †; p. 178, note \*.

|| *Márkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, Calcutta edition, pp. 657, 658.

¶ I find, in all the MSS. I have examined, Bandhumat and Vegavat; while the prevailing reading of the third name is Bandhu, of which Bandha and Budha are variants. The *Váyu-purāṇa* agrees, as to all three names, with the *Vishnu-purāṇa*.



named Ilavilā.<sup>1\*</sup> The celestial nymph† Alambushā, becoming enamoured of Trīṇabindu, bore him a son named Viśālā, by whom the city Vaiśālī was founded.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu‡ and Bhāgavata both add, that she was the wife of Viśravas, and mother of Kubera. § In the Linga Purāṇa, she is said to have been the wife of Pulastya, and mother of Viśravas. The weight of authority is in favour of the former statement. See Vol. I., p. 154, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> The Bhāgavata names three sons, Viśālā, Śūnyabandhu, and Dhūmaketu. || Vaiśālī is a city of considerable renown in Indian tradition; but its site is a subject of some uncertainty. Part of the difficulty arises from confounding it with Viśālā, another name of Ujjayinī:

उज्जयिनी स्वादिशालावन्ती पुष्पकरण्डिनी ।

Hemachandra. ¶ Also, in the Megha Dūta: \*\*

प्राप्यावन्तीमुदयनकथाकोविदयामवृद्धां

पूर्वोद्दिष्टामनुसर पुरीं श्रीविशालां विशालाम् ।

‘Having arrived at Avantī, \* \* \* proceed to the illustrious city before indicated, Viśālā.’ विशालाभिधानामुज्जयिनीं पुरीम् । ‘To the city Ujjayinī, named Viśālā.’ Comment. Vaiśālī††, however, appears to be very differently situated. According to the Buddhists, amongst whom it is celebrated as a chief seat of the labours of Śākya‡‡ and his first disciples, it is the same as Prayāga,

\* Only one of my MSS. has this name; one has Ilirilā; and all the rest have Ilivilā. Also see note ‡, below.

The Bhāgavata-purāṇa, IX., II., 31, represents Iḍavidā as daughter of Trīṇabindu and Alambushā. † Apsaras.

‡ The Vāyu-purāṇa has Ividā, and calls her mother of Viśravas:

कन्या तु तस्य इविडा माता विश्रवसो हि सा ।

§ Called Dhanada, in the Bhāgavata-purāṇa.

|| I find Dhūmraketu.

¶ Abhidhāna-chintāmaṇi, IV., 42.

\*\* Śl. 32, Prof. Wilson's second edition.

†† The genuine Rāmāyaṇa has Viśālā; the Bengal recension, Vaiśālī. The latter name, Burnouf maintains, is that which was known to the Buddhists. Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien, Vol. I., p. 86, note 2.

‡‡ Corrected from “Śākhyā.”

The son of the first king of Vaiśālī was Hemachandra; his son was Suchandra; his son was Dhūmrās̥wa; his son was Śrīnjaya;<sup>1</sup> his son was Sahadeva;<sup>2</sup> his son was Kṛiśās̥wa; his son was Somadatta, who celebrated, ten times, the sacrifice of a horse; his son was Janamejaya; and his son was Sumati.<sup>3\*</sup> These were the

---

or Allahabad;† but the Rāmāyaṇa (I., 45) places it much lower down, on the north bank of the Ganges, nearly opposite to the mouth of the Sone; and it was, therefore, in the modern district of Sāran, as Hamilton (Genealogies of the Hindus‡) conjectured. In the fourth century, it was known, to the Chinese traveller Fa-hian, as Phi-she-li, on the right bank of the Gandak, not far from its confluence with the Ganges.§ Account of the Foe-kue-ki: || Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, Vol. V., p. 123.

<sup>1</sup> Dhūmrāksha and Saṁyama: Bhāgavata. ¶

<sup>2</sup> The text is clear enough; सृजयात्सहदेवः । ततः कृशाश्वः । But, as elsewhere noticed (Hindu Theatre, Vol. II., p. 296), the commentator on the Bhāgavata\*\* interprets the parallel passage,

तत्पुत्रात्संयमादासीत्कृशाश्वः सहदेवजः ।

very differently, or: सहदेवजः । देवजेन सहितः । †† 'Kṛiśās̥wa with Devaja,' or, as some copies read, Devaka, or Daivata, as if there were two sons of Saṁyama.

<sup>3</sup> The Bhāgavata changes the order of these two, making Janamejaya the son of Sumati: or Pramati; Vāyu. Sumati, king

---

\* Four of my MSS. have Swamati.

† Burnouf, where referred to in note †† in the preceding page, shows this opinion to be groundless.

‡ Pp. 37, 38.

§ General Cunningham, with others, thinks it is now represented by Basādh, a village twenty-seven miles nearly north from Patna. *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1863, Supplementary Number, p. lii.

|| The article referred to was written by Professor Wilson.

¶ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 34, makes Hemachandra father of Dhūmrāksha, father of Saṁyama, father of Kṛiśās̥wa and Devaja.

\*\* IX., II., 34.

†† The commentator adds: पाठान्तरे नामान्यत्वमात्रम् । अर्थस्तु स एव ।

kings of Vaiśālī;\* of whom it is said:† "By the favour of Trīnabindu, all the monarchs of Vaiśālī; were long-lived, magnanimous, equitable, and valiant."

Sāryāti (the fourth son of the Manu,)§ had a daughter named Sukanyā, who was married to the holy sage Chyavana:¶ he had, also, a righteous son called Anarta.

of Vaiśālī, is made contemporary with Rāma: Rāmāyaṇa, I., 47. 17. The dynasty of Vaiśāla kings is found only in our text, the Vāyu, and Bhāgavata. Hamilton ¶ places them from 1920 to 1240 B. C.; but the latter is incompatible with the date he assigns to Rāma, of 1700 B. C.\*\* The contemporary existence of Sumati and Rāma, however, is rather unintelligible; as, according to our lists, the former is the thirty-fourth, and the latter, the sixtieth, from Vaiyaswata Manu.

† The circumstance of their marriage, of Chyavana's appropriating a share of offerings to the Aświnī Kumāras, and of his quarrel with Indra, in consequence, are told, in detail, in the Bhāgavata and Padma Purāṇas.

\* Expressed by *vaiśālaka*.

† श्लोकोऽप्यत्र गीयते । And what follows is a stanza. It occurs in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as well, but not as if a quotation.

‡ *Vaiśālaka*.

§ The *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*, IV., 32, and VIII., 21, speaks of Sāryāta, son of Manu. The *Rigveda*, also, has Sāryāta. Perhaps this name is here a metronym.

¶ "The Rishi Chyavana married his [Vaiyaswata's] daughter; and a solemn sacrifice was held on the occasion, at which Indra and the Aświns were present. Chyavana appropriated to himself the share of the oblation intended for the Aświns, at which Indra was very angry; and, to appease him, a fresh offering was prepared. The Scholiast quotes this story from the *Kaushitaki Brāhmaṇa*." Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 139, note a.

¶ *Genealogies of the Hindus*, &c., p. 38.

\*\* ?

The son of the latter was Revata,<sup>1</sup> who ruled over the country (called, after his father,) Ánarta, and dwelt at the capital, (denominated) Kuśasthali.<sup>2</sup> The son of this prince was Raivata, or Kakudmin, the eldest of a hundred brethren. He had a very lovely daughter;\* and (not finding any one worthy of her hand,) he repaired, with her, to the region of Brahmá, to consult the god where a fit bridegroom was to be met with. When he arrived, the quiristers† Háhá, Húhú, and others were singing‡ before Brahmá; and Raivata,§ waiting till they had finished, imagined the ages that elapsed during their

<sup>1</sup> In most of the other Purāṇas, Reva, or Raiva.|| The Linga and Matsya insert a Rochamāna before him; and the Bhāgavata¶ adds, to Ánarta, Uttānabarhis and Bhūrisheṇa.

<sup>2</sup> The Bhāgavata\*\* ascribes the foundation of Kuśasthali to Revata, who built it, it is said, within the sea. The subsequent legend shows, that it was the same, or on the same spot, as Dwāraká; and Ánarta was, therefore, part of Cutch or Gujerat. See Vol. II., p. 171, note 4.††

\* The reading of my MSS. is तस्य च रेवती नाम कन्या, "and he had a daughter, Revatī."

† Gandharva. For Háhá and Húhú, see Vol. II., pp. 286, *et seq.*

‡ अतितानं नाम दिव्यं गान्धर्वमगीयत । The piece of music which they were executing was an *atitāna*,—a certain song, according to the commentary. A variant for *gāndharvan* is *gāndhāram*, qualifying *atitānam*. The scholiast takes note of it.

§ The original has Raivataka, here and below.

|| My MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* have these two readings, and Rava, as well.

¶ XL, III., 27.

\*\* IX., III., 28:

सोऽन्तः समुद्रे नगरीं विनिर्माय कुशस्वलीम् ।

†† Also see Vol. II., p. 172, note 2.

performance to be but as a moment.\* At the end of their singing, Raivata prostrated himself† before Brahmá,‡ and explained his errand. "Whom should you wish for a son-in-law?" demanded Brahmá; and the king mentioned to him various persons with whom he could be well pleased.§ Nodding his head gently, and (graciously) smiling, Brahmá said to him: "Of those whom you have named the third or fourth generation|| no longer survives; for many successions of ages¶ have passed away, whilst you were listening to our songsters.\*\* Now, upon earth, the twenty-eighth great age of the present Manu is nearly finished, and the Kali period is at hand.†† You must, therefore, bestow this virgin gem‡‡ upon some other husband: for you are, now, alone; and your friends, your ministers, ser-

\* *Muhūrta*. The Sanskrit is: तावच्च विमार्गपरिवर्तैरनेकयुगपरिवृत्ति तिष्ठन्नपि रैवतकः शृण्वन्मुहूर्तमिव मेने । *Trimarga* is here a musical technicality.

† *Prañanya*.

‡ Here, and just above, and also below, designated by his epithet of *abjayoni*, 'lotus-born.'

§ And he further solicited Brahmá's advice as to a choice: क एषां भगवतोऽभिमतः । कस्यै कन्यामिमां प्रयच्छामीति ।

|| The Sanskrit is अपत्यापत्यसंततिः ।

¶ *Chaturyuga*.

\*\* Literally, 'this music', *etañ gānīharvam*.

†† साम्प्रतं भूतले ऽष्टाविंशतितमस्य मनोश्चतुर्युगमतीतप्रायम् । आसन्नो हि तत्कलिः । Comment: अस्य रैवतस्य मनोरष्टाविंशतितमं चतुर्युगं गतप्रायम् ।

What is meant is, that, in the meantime, twenty-eight four-*yuga* cycles of the *manvantara* or patriarchate then current had nearly elapsed, &c.

Compare the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., III., 33.

For the length of a *manvantara*, see Vol. I., pp. 50—52.

‡‡ *Kanyā-ratna*.

vants, wife, kinsmen, armies, \* and treasures have long since † been swept away by (the hand of) time." Overcome with astonishment and alarm, ‡ the Raja then said to Brahmá: "Since I am thus circumstanced, do thou, lord, tell me unto whom the maiden shall be given." And the creator of the world, § whose throne is the lotos, || (thus benignantly) replied to the prince, as he stood bowed and humble ¶ before him: \*\* "The being of whose commencement, course, †† and termination we are ignorant; the unborn and omnipresent ‡‡ essence §§ (of all things); he whose real and infinite ||| nature and essence ¶¶ (we do not know), is the supreme Vishnú. \*\*\* He is time, made up of moments, and hours, and years; ††† whose influence ‡‡‡ is the source of (perpetual) change. He is the universal form of all things, from birth to death. §§§ He is eternal, without name or shape. Through the favour of that imperishable |||| (being) am

\* *Bala.*

† *Atyanta*, 'entirely.'

‡ The two substantives are to render *sádhvasa*.

§ *Sapta-loka-guru.*

|| *Abjayoni.*

¶ *Kṛtānjali-bhṛta.*

\*\* All the rest of this chapter is in verse.

†† *Madhya.*

‡‡ *Sarvagata.*

§§ *Dhātu.*

||| *Para.*

¶¶ *Sāra.*

\*\*\* "Supreme Vishnú" corresponds to *paramēśwara*.

††† *Kālmukhīrṭādi.*

‡‡‡ *Vibhūti.*

§§§ I find अजन्मनाशस्य समस्तमूर्तेरनामरूपस्य सनातनस्य । According to this, he is said to be 'unborn and indestructible,' &c. &c.

|||| *Achyuta.* See Vol. I., p. 15, note 3.

I the agent of his power in creation; through his anger is Rudra the destroyer (of the world); and the cause of preservation, Purusha, proceeds, also, from him. The unborn, having assumed my person,\* creates (the world); in his own essence,† he provides for its duration; in the form of Rudra, he devours all things; and, with the body of Ananta, he upholds them. Impersonated as Indra;‡ and the other gods, he is the guardian of mankind;§ and, as the sun and moon, he disperses darkness. Taking upon himself the nature of fire, he bestows warmth and maturity, and, in the condition of the earth, nourishes all beings.|| As one with air,¶ he gives activity to existence;\*\* and, as one with water, he satisfies (all wants); whilst, in the state of ether, associated with universal aggregation, he furnishes space for all objects.†† He is at once the creator, and that which is created; the preserver, and that which is preserved; the destroyer, and, as one with all things, that which is destroyed: and, as the indestructible,‡‡ he is distinct from these three vicissitudes. In him is the world; he is the world; and he, the primeval self-

\* *Rūpa.*

† *Purusha-swarūpin.*

‡ *Śakra*, in the original.

§ *Viśva.*

॥ पाकाय योऽमित्यमुपेत्य लोका-  
न्विभर्ति पृथ्वीवपुर्वव्यात्मा ।

¶ *Śwasana*, 'breath.'

\*\* *Loka.*

†† ददाति विश्वस्थितिसंस्थितस्तु  
सर्वावकाशं च नभःस्वरूपी ।

‡‡ *Ayayātman.* See Vol. I., p. 17, note \*.

born, is again present in the world.\* That (mighty) Vishnú, who is paramount over all beings, is now, in a portion of himself, upon the earth. That (city) Kuśasthalí, which was, formerly, your capital, and rivalled the city of the immortals,† is now (known as) Dwáraká;‡ and there reigns a portion of that divine being,§ in the person of Baladeva. To him, who appears as a man, present her, as a wife. He is a worthy bridegroom for this excellent damsel; and she is a suitable bride for him.”§

Being thus instructed by the lotos-born (divinity), Raivata returned (with his daughter,) to earth, where he found the race of men dwindled in stature, reduced in vigour, and enfeebled in intellect. Repairing to the city of Kuśasthalí, which he found (much) altered,|| the wise monarch bestowed his (unequalled) daughter on the wielder of the ploughshare,¶ whose breast was

\* So called from its many Dwáras, or gateways:

द्वतां द्वारवतीं नाम बहुद्वारां मनोरमाम् ।

Váyu.

\* Compare the *Bhagavad-gítá*, Chapter IX., *passim*.

† The Sanskrit has *amarāvativā*, “like Amarāvati.” For this city, see Vol. I., p. 137; and Vol. II., p. 240, text and notes.

‡ Kēśava, in the original.

§ तस्मै त्वमेनां तनयां नरेन्द्र  
प्रयच्छ मायामनुजाय जायाम् ।  
ज्ञाथो वरोऽसौ तनया तवेयं  
स्त्रीरत्नभूता सदृशो हि योगः ॥

|| Because, says the commentator, Kṛishná had reclaimed from the sea a shire of country measuring twelve *yojanas* in circumference, and, with the aid of Viśwakarmā, had renovated the city. For Dwáraká, *vide infra*, Book V., Chapters XXIII. and XXVIII.

¶ *Sira-dhwaja*, ‘plough-bannered’.



as fair and radiant as crystal.\* Beholding the damsel of excessively lofty height, the chief whose banner is a palm-tree† shortened her with the end of his plough-share, and she became his wife. Balarāma‡ having espoused, agreeably to the ritual, Revatī, the daughter of Raivata, the king retired to the mountain Himālaya,§ (and ended his days) in devout austerities.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The object of this legend, which is told by most of the authorities, is, obviously, to account for the anachronism of making Balarāma contemporary with Raivata; the one, early in the Tretā age, and the other, at the close of the Dwāpara.

---

\* *Sphaṭikāchalābha*, "brilliant as a mountain of crystal."

† *Tālaketu*.

‡ Indicated, in the Sanskrit, by his epithet *śirāyudha*.

§ Himāchala, in the original.

---

## CHAPTER II.

Dispersion of Revata's descendants: those of Dhṛishṭa: those of Nábhaga. Birth of Ikshwáku, the son of Vaivaswata; his sons. Line of Vikukshi. Legend of Kakutstha; of Dhundhumára; of Yuvanáswa; of Mándhātṛi: his daughters married to Saubhari.

PARÁŚARA.—Whilst Kakudmin, surnamed Raivata, was absent on his visit to the region of Brahmá, the (evil spirits or) Rákshasas named Puñyajanas\* destroyed his capital, Kuśasthalí. His hundred brothers, through dread of these foes, fled in different directions; and the Kshattriyas, their descendants, settled in many countries.<sup>1†</sup>

From Dhṛishṭa, the son of the Manu, sprang the Kshattriya race† of Dhárshṭaka.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> According to the Váyu, the brothers of Raivata founded a celebrated race called Śáryáta, from Śáryāti. The Brahma Purána says, they took refuge in secret places (gahana); for which the Hari Varṇa substitutes (parvata gaṇa) mountains. The Váyu has neither, and says, merely, that they were renowned in all regions: विख्याता दिक्षु सवासु ।

<sup>2</sup> So the Váyu, Linga, Agni, Brahma, and Hari Varṇa. § The Matsya names three sons of Dhṛishṭa,—Dhṛishṭaketu, Chitránátha, and Rañadhṛishṭa. The Bhágavata|| adds, that the sons of Dhṛi-

\* Puñyajana is usually considered as synonymous with yaksha. For the Yakshas, see Vol. I., p. 83; Vol. II., p. 75.

† सर्वदिक्षुभवन् ।

‡ Kshattria, in the original.

§ Śl. 642. The Calcutta edition has Dhṛishṭu and Dhárshṭaka. Also vide supra, p. 232, note ††.

|| IX., II., 17. Also vide infra, p. 280, note 2.

The son of Nabhāga\* was Nābhāga;<sup>1</sup> his son was

śhīa obtained Brahmanhood upon earth, though born Kshattriyas:

धृष्टादार्ष्टमभूत्तत्तं ब्रह्मभूयं गतं चिती । †

<sup>1</sup> But who is Nabhāga? For, as above observed, (p. 231, note 1,) the son of the Manu is Nabhāga-nedishīa;‡ and there is, in that case, no such person as Nabhāga.§ On the other hand, if Nabhāga and Nedishīa|| be distinct names, we have ten sons of Vaisvata, as in the Bhāgavata. ¶ The descendants of Nedishīa, through his son Nabhāga, have been already specified; and, after all, therefore, we must consider the text as intending a distinct

\* This is the ordinary reading of my MSS., of which three, however, give Nābhāga. It will contribute to harmonize the *Vishṇu-purāṇa* with itself, if we surmise,—*vide supra*, p. 13,—that there is, here, an error for Nabhaga. So Ambarisha's grandfather is called in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IV., 1; though the person there meant is, as the context evidences, identified with Nābhāganedishīa of the *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*. The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, likewise, in every MS. to which I have access, irregularly derives Nābhāga from Nabhaga:

नभगस्य च दायादो नाभागो नाम वीर्यवान् ।

Those Purāṇas which speak of Nedishīa (or Dishīa, &c.) preceded by Nābhāga, in composition or apart, and also speak of Nabhaga (or Nabhāga), recounting, of the latter, the story told in note 1, above, have explicitly misrepresented ancient tradition, inasmuch as this story relates to Nābhāganedishīa (निदिष्ट preceded by नाभा = नाभी), in whose name we have the source of Nābhāganedishīa and numerous other corruptions previously particularized. There seems to be no authority, older than epic and Paurāṇik, for such a person as Nedishīa, or Dishīa, or Arishīa, father of a Nābhāga.

† The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has:

धृष्टस्य धार्ष्टकं तत्तं रणधृष्टं बभूव ह ।

चिसाहस्रं तु स गणः चक्षियाणां महात्मनाम् ॥

‡ This should be Nābhāga-nedishīa.

§ See the conjecture ventured in note \*, above. Also *vide supra*, p. 232, text and note \*: and the Translator's last note on Chapter V. of the present Book. But the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 17, 18, gives an irreconcilable account of the offspring of Nāga.

|| Changed, here and just below, from "Nedishīa." Also read Nābhāga, and so further on. ¶ *Vide supra*, p. 14, note \*: p. 232, note ††.

Ambarīsha;<sup>1</sup> his son was Virūpa;<sup>2\*</sup> his son was Pri-

person by the name Nabhāga; and such a name does occur, in the lists of the Agni, Kūrma, Matsya, and Bhāgavata, unquestionably distinct from that with which it is also sometimes compounded. The Bhāgavata repeats the legend of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa,† with some additions, and says, that, Nabhāga having protracted his period of study beyond the usual age, his brothers appropriated his share of the patrimony. On his applying for his portion, they consigned their father to him, by whose advice he assisted the descendants of Angiras in a sacrifice, and they presented him with all the wealth that was left at its termination. Rudra claimed it as his; and, Nabhāga acquiescing, the god confirmed the gift, by which he became possessed of an equivalent for the loss of territory. Most of the authorities recognize but one name here, variously read either Nabhāga or Nābhāga, the father of Ambarīsha. The Vāyu, as well as the Bhāgavata, concurs with the text.‡

<sup>1</sup> The Bhāgavata§ considers Ambarīsha as a king who reigned, apparently, on the banks of the Yamunā. He is more celebrated as a devout worshipper of Viśhnū, whose discus protected him from the wrath of Durvāsas, and humbled that choleric saint, who was a portion of Śiva:—a legend which, possibly, records a struggle between two sects, in which the votaries of Viśhnū, headed by Ambarīsha, triumphed.

<sup>2</sup> The Agni, Brahma, and Matsya stop with Ambarīsha. The Vāyu and Bhāgavata proceed as in the text; only the latter|| adds, to Virūpa, Ketumat and Śamibhu.

\* See Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 122, note a. One MS. of the *Viśhnū-purāṇa* has Viśwarūpa.

† V., 14. For Nābhānedishtha, there mentioned, see, further, the *Rigveda*, X., LXI. and LXII.; and the *Taittirīya-saṁhitā* of the *Yajurveda*, III., I., IX., 4.

‡ It does not appear so from my MSS. See note \* in the preceding page. § IX., IV., 13, 30.

|| IX., VI., 1.

shadaśwa; his son was Rathítara,\* of whom it is sung: "These, who were Kshattriyas by birth, the heads of the family of Rathítara, were called Angirasas (or sons of Angiras), and were Brahmans as well as Kshattriyas."<sup>†</sup>

<sup>†</sup> The same verse is cited in the Váyu, and affords an instance of a mixture of character, of which several similar cases occur subsequently. ‡ Kshattriyas by birth become Brahmans by profession; and such persons are usually considered as Angirasas, followers or descendants of Angiras, who may have founded a school of warrior-priests. This is the obvious purport of the legend of Nabhága's assisting the sons of Angiras to complete their sacrifice, referred to in a former note;§ although the same authority has devised a different explanation. Rathínara|| (or Rathítara, as read in some copies, as well as by the Bhágvata¶ and Váyu,) being childless, Angiras begot on his wife sons

\* The "Rathínara" of the former edition I have altered, here and below, being convinced that it is merely a clerical error of a very few MSS.

† एते चक्षप्रसूता वै पुनश्चाङ्गिरसः स्मृताः ।

रथीतराणां प्रवराः चक्षोपेता द्विजातयः ॥

"These were born in a Kshattria or Kshattriya race, and were subsequently known as Angirasas. They were the chief of the Rathítaras,—Bráhmans possessing the rank of Kshattras."

One of my MSS. gives पभवाः for प्रवराः.

Commentary: एते रथीतरस्य प्रवरा गोत्रजाः । चक्षप्रसूताः चक्षिया अप्रजस्य रथीतरस्य भार्यायामङ्गिरसा जातत्वात् । तथापि तथोच्यो-  
गात्पुनरङ्गिरसो ब्राह्मणाः स्मृताः । अतः चक्षोपेता द्विजातयः ।  
इत्यन्वयः । This explanation I have not accepted in full.

See Dr. Muir's remarks on this passage, in *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 46, 47.

‡ Vide *infra*, p. 280, note 2.

§ Note 1 in p. 256, *supra*.

|| See note \*, above.

¶ IX., VI., 2, 3:

रथीतरस्याप्रजस्य भार्यायां तन्त्रवेऽर्चितः ।

अङ्गिरा जनयामास ब्रह्मवर्चस्विनः सुतान् ॥

Ikshváku was born from the nostril of the Manu, as he happened to sneeze.<sup>1</sup> He had a hundred\* sons, of whom the three most distinguished† were Vikukshi, Nimi, and Daṇḍa. Fifty (of the rest), under Śakuni,‡ were the protectors of the northern countries. Forty-eight were the princes of the south.<sup>2</sup>

radiant with divine glory, who, as the sons of the monarch by his wife, were Kshattriyas, but were Brahmans through their actual father. This, however, is an afterthought, not warranted by the memorial verse cited in our text.

<sup>1</sup> So the Bhāgavata: §

बुवतस्तु मनोर्जज्ञे इत्थाकुर्घ्राणतः सुतः ।

<sup>2</sup> The Matsya says, that Indra (Devarāj) was born as Vikukshi, and that Ikshváku had one hundred and fourteen other sons who were kings of the countries south of Meru, and as many who reigned north of that mountain. The Vāyu and most of the other authorities agree in the number of one hundred, of whom

एते चेक्षप्रसूता वै पुनस्त्वाङ्गिरसाः स्मृताः ।

रथीतराणां प्रवराः क्षत्रोपेता द्विजातयः ॥

These stanzas are thus rendered by Burnouf:

"Rathītara n'eut pas d'enfants; c'est pourquoi il pria Angiras de lui donner des successeurs, et Angiras eut de la femme du prince des fils brillants de l'éclat du Vēda.

"Quoique nés de la femme de Rathītara, ces fils d'Angiras n'en sont pas moins reconnus comme Angirasides; ils sont pour les Rathītaras les ancêtres, auteurs de leur race, et ils appartiennent aux deux tribus des Kshattriyas et des Brāhmanes."

\* The scholiast considers that 'a hundred' is here used, as a round number, instead of 'a hundred and one.'

† *Pravara*. In the *Vāyu-purāṇa* and *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, the word is *jyeshthā*, 'eldest'.

‡ शकुनिप्रमुखाः । Read, therefore, for "under Śakuni," "Śakuni and others".

§ IX., VI., 4.

Upon one of the days called *Ashtaká*,<sup>1</sup> *Ikshwáku* (being desirous of celebrating ancestral obsequies,) ordered *Vikukshi* to bring him flesh suitable for the offering. The prince, accordingly, went into the forest, and killed many deer and other wild animals,\* (for the celebration). Being weary (with the chase), and being hungered, he (sat down and) ate a hare, after which, (being refreshed), he carried the rest of the game to his father. *Vasishtha*,† the family-priest‡ of the house of *Ikshwáku*, was summoned to consecrate the food;§

---

fifty, with *Śakuni* at their head,|| are placed in the north; and forty-eight in the south,—according to the *Váyu*,—of whom *Vimati*¶ was the chief. The same authority specifies, also, *Nimi* and *Dańda*, as sons of *Ikshwáku*, as does the *Bhágavata*,\*\* with the addition of their reigning in the central regions.†† The distribution of the rest, in that work,‡‡ is, twenty-five in the west, as many in the east, and the rest elsewhere,—that is, the commentator adds, north and south. It seems very probable, that, by these sons of *Ikshwáku*, we are to understand colonies or settlers in various parts of India.

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 168, 169, *supra*.

---

\* The original has only *mṛiga*.

† Several of my MSS. omit this name.

‡ *Kuláchárya*.

§ This is expressed by the term *prokshatáya*, 'for aspersion.'

|| The reading is as in note ‡ in the preceding page.

¶ The name appears to be *Vimśati*: *विंशतिप्रमुखाः*, "Vimśati and others." Different MSS. of the *Harivańśa* give, in *śl.* 664, *Vasāti*, *Vasāti*, and *Śasáda*.

\*\* *Vikukshi*, *Nimi*, and *Dańdaka*. IX., VI., 4.

†† That is to say, between the *Himálayas* and the *Vindhya*s. So explains the commentator *Śrídharma*.

‡‡ IX., VI., 5:

तेषां पुरस्तादभवन्नार्यावर्ते नृपा नृप ।

पञ्चविंशतिः पञ्चाच्च त्रयो मध्येऽपरऽन्यतः ॥

but he declared that it was impure, in consequence of Vikukshi's having eaten a hare from amongst it; (making it, thus, as it were, the residue of his meal). Vikukshi was, in consequence, abandoned by his offended father; and the epithet Śasáda (hare-eater) was affixed to him by the Guru.\* On the death of Ikshwáku, the dominion of the earth descended to Śasáda,<sup>1</sup> who was succeeded by his son Puranjaya.†

In the Tretá age, a violent war<sup>2</sup> broke out between the gods and the Asuras, in which the former were vanquished. They, consequently, had recourse to

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu states, that he was king of Ayodhyá, after the death of Ikshwáku.† The story occurs in all the authorities, more or less in detail.

<sup>2</sup> The Váyu§ says, it was in the war of the starling and the stork (आडीवके युद्धे), a conflict between Vasishtha and Viśwámitra, metamorphosed into birds, according to the Bhágavata: || but that work assigns it to a different period, or the reign of Hariśchandra. If the tradition have any import, it may refer to the ensigns of the contending parties; for banners with armorial devices were, as we learn from the Mahábhárata, invariably borne by princes and leaders.

\* ग्राह । अलमनेनामधेनामिषेण । दुरात्मनानेन ते पुत्रेणैतन्मांसमुपहतं यतोऽनेन शशको भक्षितः । ततश्चासौ विकुक्षिर्गुणैवमुक्तः शशादसंज्ञामवाप पित्रापि च परित्यक्तः ।

† Paranjaya is a variant of common occurrence, and the name sanctioned by the scholiast. *Vide infra*, p. 263, note 1.

‡ इत्ताकौ संस्थिते तस्मिञ्शशस पृथिवीमिमाम् ॥

ग्राप्तः परमधर्मात्मासवायोध्याधिपोऽभवत् ॥

§ And so the *Harivamśa*, *sl.* 668.

|| IX., VII., 6. Also *vide infra*, p. 287, note 1.



Vishnú, for assistance, and propitiated him (by their adorations). The eternal ruler of the universe, Nárāyaṇa, had compassion upon them, and said:\* "What you desire is known unto me. Hear how your wishes shall be fulfilled. There is an illustrious prince† named Puranjaya, the son of a royal sage:‡ into his person I will infuse a portion of myself; and, having descended upon earth, I will, in his person, subdue all your enemies. Do you, therefore, endeavour to secure the aid of Puranjaya, for the destruction of your foes."§ Acknowledging, with reverence, the kindness of the deity, the immortals quitted his presence, and repaired to Puranjaya, whom they thus addressed: "Most renowned Kshattriya, we have come to thee, to solicit thy alliance against our enemies: it will not become thee to disappoint our hopes."|| The prince replied: "Let this your Indra, the monarch of the spheres, (the god) of a hundred sacrifices, consent to carry me upon his shoulders, and I will wage battle with your adversaries, as your ally." The gods and Indra readily answered: "So be it"; and, the latter assuming the shape of a bull, the prince mounted upon his shoulder. Being then filled with delight, and invigorated by the power of the eternal¶ ruler of all movable and immovable

\* प्रसन्नश्च देवानामनादिनिधनः सकलजगत्परायणो नारायणः प्राह ।

† *Kshattriya*.

‡ *Rājārshi*. And the Sanskrit adds 'Śaśāda.'

§ तच्छरीरेऽहमग्निं स्वयमेवावतीर्य तानशेषानसुराग्निहनिष्यामि । तन्नवद्भिः पुरंजयोऽसुरवधार्थायैह कार्योद्योगः कार्यः ।

|| *Prāṇaya*.

¶ *Achyuta*. See Vol. I., p. 15, note 3.

things, he destroyed, in the battle that ensued, all the enemies of the gods; and, because he annihilated the demon-host, whilst seated upon the shoulder (or the hump, Kakud,) of the bull, he, thence, obtained the appellation Kakutsstha (seated on the hump).<sup>1</sup>

The son of Kakutsstha was Anenas<sup>2</sup> whose son was Prithu, whose son was Viśwagaśwa,<sup>3\*</sup> whose son was Ārdra,<sup>4†</sup> whose son was Yuvanaśwa,<sup>‡</sup> whose son was Śrāvasta, by whom the city of Śrāvastī<sup>§</sup> was founded.

<sup>1</sup> The Bhāgavata adds, that he captured the city of the Asuras, § situated in the west; whence his name Puranjaya, 'victor of the city.' He is, also, termed Paranjaya, 'vanquisher of foes:' he is, also, called Indravāha, 'borne by Indra.' ||

<sup>2</sup> Suyodhana: Matsya, Agni, Kūrma. ¶

<sup>3</sup> Viśwaka: Linga. Viśwagandhi: Bhāgavata.\*\* Viśtarāśwa: Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa. ††

<sup>4</sup> Āndhra: Vāyu. Āyu: Agni. Chandra: Bhāgavata. ‡‡

<sup>§</sup> Śāvasta and Śāvastī: Bhāgavata. §§ Śrāvastī: ||| Matsya, Linga, ¶¶ and Kūrma; which also say, that Śrāvastī was in the country of Gauda, which is eastern Bengal. \*\*\* But it is, more usually,

\* One MS. has Viśwaga; another, Viśwagata. The Vāyu-purāṇa seems to give Dīśhadaśwa.

† Two MSS. have Chāndra. The Linga-purāṇa, Prior Section, LXV., 33, has Ādraka.

‡ Yuvanaśwa seems to be the reading of the Vāyu-purāṇa.

§ Daityas, in the original. || IX., VI., 12—16.

¶ And so the Linga-purāṇa. \*\* IX., VI., 20.

†† Śl. 669. ‡‡ IX., VI., 20. §§ IX., VI., 21.

||| So reads the Vāyu-purāṇa.

¶¶ Prior Section, LXV., 34. I find Śāvastī, also: and the king is there called Śāvastī.

\*\*\* The term Gauda has not only this signification, but a much wider. See the references and quotations in Messrs. Böhtlingk and Roth's *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*.

The son of Śrāvasta was Brihadaśwa,\* whose son was Kuvalayāśwa.† This prince, inspired with the spirit of Vishṇu, destroyed the Asura Dhundhu, who had harassed the pious sage‡ Uttanka;§ and he was, thence, entitled Dhundhumāra.<sup>1</sup> In his conflict with the demon,

---

placed in Kośala, || by which a part of Oude is commonly understood. In my Dictionary I have inserted Śrāvastī, upon the authority of the Trikāṇḍa Śeṣha; ¶ but it is, no doubt, an error for Śrāvastī. It is, there, also called Dharmapattana, being a city of some sanctity, in the estimation of the Buddhists. It is termed, by Fa-Hian, She-wei; by Hwan Tsang, She-lo-va-si-ti; and placed, by both, nearly in the site of Fyzabad in Oude. Account of the Foe-kúe-ki.\*\*

<sup>1</sup> This legend is told, in much more detail, in the Vāyu and Brahma Purāṇas. Dhundhu hid himself beneath a sea of sand, which Kuvalayāśwa and his sons dug up,—undeterred by the flames which checked their progress,—and finally destroyed most of them. The legend originates, probably, in the occurrence of some physical phenomenon, as an earthquake, or volcano.

---

\* According to the Vāyu-purāṇa, like our text, he had a most numerous family:

बृहदशस्य पुत्राणां सहस्राष्टकविंशतिः ।

† The Vāyu-purāṇa has Kuvalāśwa:

बृहदशसुतस्यापि कुवलाश्व इति श्रुतिः ।

And from several passages that follow this it is evident that the name is Kuvalāśwa. The *Harivamśa*, śl. 671, etc., likewise has Kuvalāśwa; and so has the *Linga-purāṇa*. ‡ *Maharshi*.

§ In two MSS. I find Utanka, the lection of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VI., 22. The *Harivamśa*, śl. 676, has, in different MSS., Utanka and Uttanka. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* gives, in my MSS., Uttanka.

|| See Vol. II., p. 172, notes 2, etc.

¶ II., I., 13.

\*\* By Professor Wilson; in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. V., pp. 122, 123.

Also see M. Vivien de Saint-Martin's *Mémoire Analytique*, etc., p. 105; and General Cunningham, in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1865, pp. 250—267.

the king was attended by his sons, to the number of twenty-one thousand; and all these, with the exception of only three, perished in the engagement, consumed by the fiery breath of Dhundhu. The three who survived were Dridháswa, Chandráswa,\* and Kapiláswa;† and the son and successor of the elder of these‡ was Haryáswa:§ his son was Nikumbha; his son was Samhataśwa;|| his son was Kṛisháswa; his son was Prasenajit; and his son was (another) Yuvanáśwa.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The series of names agrees very well to Samhataśwa, called Barhaṇáswa in the Bhágavata. ¶ We have, there, some variations, and some details not noticed in our text. The Váyu, Brahma, Agni, Linga, Matsya, and Kúrma ascribe two sons to Samhataśwa, whom the two first name Kṛisháswa and Akṛisháswa, and the rest, Kṛisháswa and Rañáswa.\*\* Senajit†† or Prasenajit‡‡ is, generally, though not always, termed the son of the younger brother; but the commentator §§ on the Hari Vaṁśa calls him the son of Samhataśwa, whilst the Matsya, Agni, Linga, and Kúrma omit him, and make Mándhātṛi the son of Rañáswa.||| The mother of Prasenajit and the wife of Akṛisháswa or Samhataśwa,—according to the different interpretations,—was the daughter of Himavat,

\* In the *Váyu-purāṇa* the name is Bhadráswa.

† The *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VI., 24, has Dridháswa, Kapiláswa, and Bhadráswa.

‡ The original here again names Dridháswa, but says nothing of his seniority: दृढाश्वाद्ययस्यः ।

§ The *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXV., 37, interposes Pramoda between Dridháswa and Haryáswa.

|| One MS. has Hitáswa; another, Samhitáswa. The latter is the reading of some MSS. of the *Váyu-purāṇa*; others giving Samhataśwa.

¶ IX., VI., 25.

\*\* The *Linga-purāṇa* distinctly calls Yuvanáśwa son of Rañáswa.

†† *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VI., 25.

‡‡ So reads the *Váyu-purāṇa*.

§§ Nilakantha, on śl. 709. Arjuna Miśra comments to the like effect.

||| The *Linga-purāṇa* represents Mándhātṛi to be son of Yuvanáśwa.

Yuvanāśwa had no son, at which he was deeply grieved. Whilst residing in the vicinage of the holy Munis, he inspired them with pity (for his childless condition); and they instituted a religious rite, to pro-

known as Dīśhadwatī, the river so termed\* (Vol. II., p. 142, note 4). The wife of Yuvanāśwa, according to the Vāyu, or of Prasenajit, according to the Brahma, was Gaurī, the daughter of Rantīnara,† who, incurring the imprecation of her husband, became the Bāhudā river (Vol. II., p. 142, note 3). The Brahma and Hari Vamśa‡ call Yuvanāśwa her son; but, in another place,§ the Hari Vamśa contradicts itself, calling Gaurī the daughter of Matīnara,|| of the race of Puru, the mother of Māndhātṛī; here following, apparently, the Matsya, in which it is so stated. The Brahma Purāṇa is not guilty of the inconsistency. The Vāyu of course gives the title to Māndhātṛī, with the addition, that he was called Gaurika, after his mother:

तस्यास्तु गौरिकः पुत्रश्चक्रवर्ती बभूव ह ।

मान्धाता यौवनाश्वो वै त्रिलोक्यविजयी नृपः ॥

Māndhātṛī's birth from Gaurī is the more remarkable, as it is incompatible with the usual legend, given in our text and in the Bhāgavata, which seems, therefore, to have been of subsequent origin, suggested by the etymology of the name. In the Bhāgavata,¶ Māndhātṛī is also named Trasaddasyu, or "the terrifier of thieves."

\* The Vāyu-purāṇa states:

ऋषाश्चक्राऋषाश्चक्र संहताश्चसुतावुभी ।

तस्य पत्नी हिमवती सतां मान्या दृषद्वती ॥

Compare the *Harivamśa*, śl. 708, 709.

† I have much doubt as to the correctness of this name.

‡ Śl. 709.

§ Śl. 1715, 1716.

|| Erroneously printed, in the former edition, "Matimara."

¶ IX., VI., 33:

चसहसुरितीन्द्रोऽङ्ग विदधे नाम तस्य वै ।

यस्यात्तसन्ति ह्युद्विप्ता दसवो रावणादयः ॥

cure him progeny. One night, during its performance, the sages, having placed a vessel of consecrated water upon the altar, had retired to repose. It was past midnight, when the king awoke, exceedingly thirsty; and, unwilling to disturb any of the holy inmates of the dwelling, he looked about for something to drink. In his search, he came to the water in the jar, which had been sanctified and endowed with prolific efficacy\* by sacred texts, and he drank it. When the Munis† rose, and found that the water had been drunk, they inquired who had taken it, and said: "The queen; that has drunk this water shall give birth to a mighty and valiant son." "It was I," exclaimed the Raja, "who unwittingly drank the water:" and, accordingly, in the belly of Yuvanáswa was conceived a child. And it grew; and in, due time, it ripped open the right side of the Raja, and was born: and the Raja did not die. Upon the birth of the child, "Who will be its nurse?" said the Munis; when (Indra,) the king of the gods appeared, and said, "He shall have me for his nurse" (*mám ayam dhásyati*); and, hence, the boy was named Mándhátí. Indra put his fore-finger into the mouth of the infant, who sucked it, and drew from it (heavenly) nectar. § And he grew up, and became a mighty monarch, || and reduced the seven continental zones under his dominion. And here a verse is recited: "From the rising to the going down of the sun, all that is irra-

---

\* *Aparimeya-máhátmya*.

† *Rishi*, in the original.

‡ The original has: राज्ञोऽस्य युवनाश्वस्य पत्नी ।

§ *Amrita*.

|| *Chakravartin*.

diated by his light is the land of Mándhātṛi, the son of Yuvanáswa."<sup>1</sup>

Mándhātṛi married Bindumatī,\* the daughter of Śaśabindu,† and had, by her, three sons, Purukutsa,‡ Ambarīsha, and Muchukunda:§ he had, also, fifty daughters.<sup>2</sup>

The (devout) sage|| Saubhari, learned in the Vedas,¶ had spent twelve years immersed in a piece of water; the sovereign of the fish in which, named Saṁmada,

<sup>1</sup> The Vāya cites this same verse, and another, with the remark, that they were uttered by those acquainted with the Purāṇas and with genealogies:

अत्राप्युदाहरन्तीमीं श्लोकौ पौराणिका द्विजाः ।  
 यावत्सूर्यस्य उदयो यावत्समनं भवेत् ।\*\*  
 सर्वत्र यौवनाश्वस्य मान्धातुः शिवमुच्यते ॥  
 अत्राप्युदाहरन्तीमं श्लोकं वंशविदो जनाः ।  
 यौवनाश्वं महात्मानं राजानममितीजसम् ।  
 मान्धातारं तनुं विष्णोः पुराणज्ञाः प्रचक्षते ॥

<sup>2</sup> The Brahma and Agni omit Ambarīsha, for whom the Matsya substitutes Dharmasena. The following legend of Saubhari occurs, elsewhere, only in the Bhāgavata,†† and there, less in detail.

\* A Bindumatī is spoken of, in the *Harshacharita*, as having slain Vidūratha. See my *Vāsavadattā*, Preface, p. 53.

† Compare the *Harivaṁśa*, II. 712.

‡ One MS. has Purushakutsa, a reading of no value; the like of which I often pass by unnoticed. The Purukutsa of the *Rigveda*—see IV., XLII., 8, 9,—is called son of Durgaha, who is again named in the same work, VIII., LIV, 12.

§ The *Linga-purāṇa* seems to read Muchakunda.

|| *Rishi*.

¶ *Bahvricha*. Vide *supra*, p. 50, note ‡.

\*\* In the *Vishnu-purāṇa* this verse is read thus:

यावत्सूर्य उदेति स यावच्च प्रतितिष्ठति ।

†† IX., VI., 39—55.

of large bulk, had a very numerous progeny. His children and his grandchildren\* were wont to frolic around him, in all directions;† and he lived amongst them happily, playing with them night and day. Saubhari, the sage, being disturbed, in his devotions, by their sports, contemplated the patriarchal felicity of the monarch of the lake, and reflected: "How enviable is this creature, who, although born in a degraded state of being, is ever thus sporting cheerfully amongst his offspring and their young! Of a truth, he awakens, in my mind, the wish to taste such pleasure; and I, also, will make merry amidst my children.": Having thus resolved, the Muni came up, hastily, from the water, and, desirous of entering upon the condition of a householder, went to Mándhátí, to demand one of his daughters as his wife. As soon as he was informed of the arrival of the sage, the king rose up from his throne, offered him the customary libation,§ and treated him with the most profound respect. Having taken a seat, Saubharisaid to the Raja: "I have determined to marry. Do you, king, give me one of your daughters, as a wife. Disappoint not my affection.|| It is not the practice of the princes of the race of Kakutstha to turn away from compliance with the wishes of those who come to them for succour. There are, O monarch, other kings of the

\* पौत्रदौहित्राः, "sons' sons and daughters' sons."

† The original says that they "frolicked at his sides, in front of him, on his back, and over his breast, tail, and head": पार्श्वतोऽग्रतः पृष्ठतो वचःपुच्छशिरसां चोपरि भ्रमन्तः ।

‡ The translation, hereabouts, is greatly compressed.

§ *Arghya*.

|| *Prañaya*.



earth to whom daughters have been born; but your family is, above all, renowned for observance of liberality in your donations to those who ask your bounty. You have, O prince, fifty daughters. Give one of them to me; that so I may be relieved from the anxiety I suffer through fear that my suit may be denied."

When Mándhatri heard this request, and looked upon the person of the sage, emaciated by (austerity and) old age, he felt disposed to refuse his consent: but, dreading to incur the anger and imprecation of the holy man, he was much perplexed, and, declining his head, was lost awhile in thought. The Rishi, observing his hesitation, said: "On what, O Raja, do you meditate? I have asked for nothing which may not be readily accorded. And what is there that shall be unattainable to you, if my desires be gratified by the damsel whom you must needs give unto me?" To this, the king, apprehensive of his displeasure,\* answered and said: "Grave sir, it is the established usage of our house to wed our daughters to such persons only as they shall, themselves, select from suitors of fitting rank; and, since this your request is not yet made known to my maidens, it is impossible to say whether it may be equally agreeable to them as it is to me. This is the occasion of my perplexity; and I am at a loss what to do." This answer of the king was fully understood by the Rishi, who said to himself: "This is merely a device of the Raja, to evade compliance with my suit. He has reflected that I am an old man, having no attractions for women, and not likely to be accepted by any of

---

\* *Śāpa*, 'curse'.

his daughters.\* Even be it so: I will be a match for him." And he then spake aloud, and said: "Since such is the custom, mighty prince, give orders that I be admitted into the interior of the palace.† Should any of the maidens, your daughters, be willing to take me for a bridegroom, I will have her for my bride. If no one be willing, then let the blame attach alone to the years that I have numbered."‡ Having thus spoken, he was silent.

Mándhātṛi, unwilling to provoke the indignation§ of the Muni, was, accordingly, obliged to command the eunuch to lead the sage into the inner chambers; who, as he entered the apartments, put on a form and features of beauty far exceeding the personal charms of mortals, or even of heavenly spirits.|| His conductor, addressing the princesses, said to them: "Your father, young ladies, sends you this pious sage,¶ who has demanded of him a bride; and the Raja has promised him, that he will not refuse him any one of you who shall choose him for her husband."\*\* When the damsels heard this, and looked upon the person of the Rishi, they were equally inspired with passion and desire, and, like a troop of female elephants disputing

\* वृद्धोऽयमनभिमतः स्त्रीणां किमुत कन्यानामित्यमुना संचिन्त्यैव-  
मभिहितम् ।

† यद्येवं तदादिश्चतामस्माकं प्रवेशाय कन्यान्तःपुरवर्षधरः ।

‡ अन्यथा चेत्तदलमस्माकमेतेनातीतकालारम्भेण ।

§ Śāpa.

|| Siddha and gandharva, in the original.

¶ Brahmarshi.

\*\* मया चास्य प्रतिज्ञासं ययस्मत्कन्यका काचिद्भवन्तं वरयति तत्क-  
न्यायाश्चन्द्रे नाहं परिपन्थानं करिष्यामि ।

the favours of the master of the herd, they all contended for the choice.\* "Away, away, sister!" said each to the other: "this is my election; he is my choice; he is not a meet bridegroom for you; he has been created, by Brahmá, on purpose for me, as I have been created in order to become his wife; he has been chosen, by me, before you; you have no right to prevent his becoming my husband." In this way arose a violent quarrel amongst the daughters of the king, each insisting upon the exclusive election of the Rishi; and, as the blameless sage was thus contended for by the rival princesses, the superintendent of the inner apartments, with a downcast look, reported to the king what had occurred.† Perplexed, more than ever, by this information, the Raja exclaimed: "What is all this? And what am I to do now? What is it that I have said? And, at last, although with extreme reluctance, he was obliged to agree that the Rishi should marry all his daughters.

Having then wedded, agreeably to law, all the princesses, the sage took them home to his habitation, where he employed the chief of architects, Viśwakarma,—equal, in taste and skill, to Brahmá himself;—to construct separate palaces for each of his wives: he ordered him to provide each building with elegant couches, and seats, and furniture, and to attach to them gardens and groves, with reservoirs of water, where the wild-duck and the swan should sport amidst beds

\* करेणैव इवेभ्युद्यपतिं तमृषिमहमहमिकया वरयाम्बभूवुः ।

† Hereabouts the rendering is rather freer than usual.

‡ विधातारमिवान्यम् ।

of lotos-flowers. The divine artist\* obeyed his injunctions, and constructed splendid apartments for the wives of the Rishi; in which, by command of Saubhari, the inexhaustible† and divine treasure called Nanda<sup>1</sup> took up his‡ permanent abode; and the princesses entertained all their guests and dependants with abundant viands of every description and the choicest quality.§

After some period had elapsed, the heart of King Mándhâtí yearned for his daughters; and he felt solicitous to know whether they were happily circumstanced. Setting off, therefore, on a visit to the hermitage of Saubhari, he beheld, upon his arrival, a row of beautiful crystal palaces, shining as brilliantly as the rays of the sun, and situated amidst lovely gardens and reservoirs of pellucid water. Entering into one of these magnificent palaces, he found and embraced a daughter, and said to her, as the tears of affection and delight trembled in his eyes: "Dear child, tell me how it is with you. Are you happy here, or not? Does the great sage treat you with tenderness? Or do you revert, with regret, to your early home?" The princess replied: "You behold, my father, how delightful a mansion I inhabit,—surrounded by lovely gardens and lakes,

---

<sup>1</sup> The great Nidhi. A Nidhi is a treasure, of which there are several belonging to Kubera. Each has its guardian spirit, or is personified.

---

\* *Twashtri*.

† *Anapáyin*.

‡ It is not clear why Professor Wilson here personifies *nanda*, as if this Purāṇa were a Tantra. In his *Essays, Analytical*, &c., Vol. II., pp. 379, 380, there is a valuable note on the nine *nidhis* of Kubera.

§ The translation of this paragraph is not very close; and the same may be said of the remainder of the chapter.

where the lotos blooms, and the wild swans murmur. Here I have delicious viands, fragrant unguents, costly ornaments, splendid raiment,\* soft beds, and every enjoyment that affluence can procure. Why, then, should I call to memory the place of my birth?† To your favour am I indebted for all that I possess. I have only one cause of anxiety, which is this: my husband is never absent from my dwelling; solely attached to me, he is always at my side; he never goes near my sisters; and I am concerned to think that they must feel mortified by his neglect: this is the only circumstance that gives me uneasiness."

Proceeding to visit another of his daughters, the king, after embracing her, and sitting down, made the same inquiry, and received the same account of the enjoyments with which the princess was provided. There was, also, the same complaint, that the Rishi was wholly devoted to her, and paid no attention to her sisters. In every palace Mándhātṛi heard the same story, from each of his daughters, in reply to his questions; and, with a heart overflowing with wonder and delight, he repaired to the wise Saubhari, whom he found alone, and, after paying homage to him, thus addressed him: "Holy sage, I have witnessed this thy marvellous power. The like miraculous faculties I have never known any other to possess. How great is the reward of thy devout austerities!" Having thus saluted the sage, and

---

\* The original here supplies but one epithet, *manonukūla*, to four substantives.

† The question of the princess rather implies, that, in spite of this very luxury, she cannot forget her early home: तथापि केन वा जन्मभूमिर्न स्मर्यते ।

been received, by him, with respect, the Raja resided with him for some time, partaking of the pleasures of the place, and then returned to his capital.

In the course of time, the daughters of Mándhātri bore to Saubhari a hundred and fifty sons; and, day by day, his affection for his children became more intense, and his heart was wholly occupied with the sentiment of self.<sup>1</sup> "These my sons," he loved to think, "will charm me with their infant prattle; then they will learn to walk; they will, then, grow up to youth, and to manhood; I shall see them married, and they will have children; and I may behold the children of those children." By these and similar reflections, however, he perceived that his anticipations every day outstripped the course of time; and, at last, he exclaimed:\* "What exceeding folly is mine!† There is no end to my desires. Though all I hope should come to pass for ten thousand or a hundred thousand years, still new wishes would spring up. When I have seen my infants walk; when I have beheld their youth, their manhood, their marriage, their progeny; still my expectations are unsatisfied, and my soul yearns to behold the de-

<sup>1</sup> Of Mamatá, 'mineness' (ममता); the notion that wives, children, wealth, belong to an individual, and are essential to his happiness.

\* एवमादिमनोरथमनुदिनकालसंपत्तिवृत्तिमवेत्येतत्संचिन्तयामास ।  
"Having discovered that some such desire kept pace with the daily increase of time, he took thought as follows."

So the commentary explains this passage, and very naturally: अनुदिनं कालस्य संपत्तिराधिक्यं तस्या वृत्तिरनुवर्तनं यच्च मनोरथे तमवेत्यत्रात्मा अचिन्तयत् । एतद्वक्ष्यमाणम् ।

† The rest of the chapter, from this point, is in verse.

scendants of their descendants. Shall I even see them, some other wish will be engendered; and, when that is accomplished, how is the birth of fresh desires to be prevented? I have, at last, discovered, that there is no end to hope, until it terminates in death; and that the mind which is perpetually engrossed by expectation can never be attached to the supreme spirit. My mental devotions, whilst immersed in water, were interrupted by attachment to my friend the fish. The result of that connexion was my marriage; and insatiable desires are the consequences of my married life. The pain attendant upon the birth of my single body is now augmented by the cares attached to fifty others, and is further multiplied by the numerous children whom the princesses have borne to me.\* The sources of affliction will be repeatedly renewed by their children, and by their espousals, and by their progeny, and will be infinitely increased: a married life is a mine of individual anxiety.† My devotions, first disturbed by the fish of the pool, have since been obstructed by temporal indulgence; and I have been beguiled by that desire for progeny which was communicated to me by association with Saṁmāda.‡ Separation from the world

\* दुःखं यदेवैकशरीरजन्म  
शतार्धसंख्यं तदिदं प्रसूतम् ।  
परियह्येण चित्तिपात्रजानां  
सुतैरनेकैर्बहुलीकृतं तत् ॥

† "Individual anxiety" is to render *mamata*, for which see the Translator's note in the preceding page.

‡ चीर्णं तपो यत्तु जलाशयेण  
तस्यश्चिरैषा तपसोऽन्तरायः ।  
मत्स्यस्य संगदभवच्च यो मे  
सुतादिरागो मुषितोऽस्मि तेन ॥



is the only path of the sage to final liberation: from commerce with mankind innumerable errors proceed. The ascetic who has accomplished a course of self-denial falls from perfection, by contracting worldly attachments. How much more likely should one so fall, whose observances are incomplete!\* My intellect has been a prey to the desire of married happiness: but I will, now, so exert myself, for the salvation of my soul, that, exempt from human imperfections, I may be exonerated from human sufferings.† To that end, I will propitiate, by arduous penance, Vishṇu, the creator of the universe, whose form is inscrutable, who is smaller than the smallest, larger than the largest, the source of darkness and of light, the sovereign god of gods.‡ On his everlasting body, which is both discrete and indiscrete substance, illimitably mighty, and identical with the universe, may my mind, wholly free from sin, be ever steadily intent, so that I may be born no more! To him I fly for refuge; to that Vishṇu who is the teacher of teachers, who is one with all beings, the

---

\* निःसंगता मुक्तिपदं यतीनां  
संगादशेषाः प्रभवन्ति दोषाः ।  
आरूढयोगोऽपि निपात्यतेऽधः  
संगेन योगी किमुताल्पसिद्धिः ॥  
† अहं त्वरिष्यामि तथात्मनोऽर्थे  
परियहयाहमुद्धीतबुद्धिः ।  
यथा हि भूयः परिहीनदोषो  
जनस्य दुःखिर्भविता न दुःखी ॥  
‡ सर्वस्य धातारमचिन्त्यरूप-  
मणोरणीयांसमतिप्रमाणम् ।  
सितासितं चेश्वरमीश्वराणा-  
माराधयिष्ये तपसैव विष्णुम् ॥



pure eternal lord of all, without beginning, middle, or end, and besides whom is nothing.”\*

---

\* तस्मिन्नशेषौजसि सर्वरूपि-  
ष्णव्यक्तविस्पष्टतनावगन्ते ।

ममाचलं चित्तमपेतदोषं  
सदास्तु विष्णावभवाय भूयः ॥

समस्तभूतादमलादनन्ता-  
त्सर्वेश्वरादन्यदनादिमध्यात् ।

यस्मान्न किञ्चित्तमहं गुरुणां  
परं गुह्यं संश्रयमेति विष्णुम् ॥

---

### CHAPTER III.

Saubhar and his wives adopt an ascetic life. Descendants of Mándhātī. Legend of Narmadá and Purukutsa. Legend of Trisanku. Báhu driven from his kingdom by the Haihayas and Tálajanghas. Birth of Sagara : he conquers the barbarians, imposes upon them distinguishing usages, and excludes them from offerings to fire and the study of the Vedas.

HAVING thus communed with himself, Saubhari abandoned his children, his home, and all his splendour, and, accompanied by his wives, entered the forest, where he daily practised the observances followed by the ascetics termed *Vaikhánasas*\* (or anchorets having families), until he had cleansed himself from all sin. When his intellect had attained maturity, he concentrated in his spirit the (sacramental) fires,<sup>1</sup> and became a religious mendicant.† Then, having consigned all his acts to the supreme,‡ he obtained the condition of Achyuta, which knows no change, and is not subject to the vicissitudes of birth, transmigration,§ or death. Whoever reads, or hears, or remembers, or understands || this legend of Saubhari and his espousal of the daugh-

---

<sup>1</sup> So Manu; "Having repositied, as the law directs, the holy fires in his breast," &c. VI., 25. ¶

---

\* The *vaikhánasa* is the same as the *vánaprastha*, for a detail of whose duties, and of those of the *bhikshu*, vide *supra*, pp. 94—97.

† *Bhikshu*.

‡ *Bhagavat*.

§ *Avikára*.

|| *Avadhárayati*.

¶ असींश्चात्मनि वैतानान्तमारोप्य यथाविधि ।

अनधिरनिर्जेतः स्यान्मुनिर्मूलफलाशनः ॥

ters of Mándhātī shall never, for eight successive births, be addicted to evil thoughts; nor shall he act unrighteously, nor shall his mind dwell upon improper objects, nor shall he be influenced by selfish attachments. The line of Mándhātī is now resumed.

The son of Ambarīsha, the son of Mándhātī, was Yuvanáswa:\* his son was Harita,<sup>†</sup> from whom the Angirasa Háritas<sup>‡</sup> were descended.<sup>§</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Váyu, Linga, Kúrma, and Bhágavata§ agree in this series: the others omit it.

<sup>2</sup> The words of the text are: तस्माद्वरितो यतोऽङ्गिरसो हारिताः । And the commentator explains the phrase: 'The Angirasa Brahmans, of whom the Hárita family was the chief.' || The Linga ¶ reads:

हरितो युवनाश्वस्य हारिता यत आत्मजाः ।

एते ह्यङ्गिरसः पञ्च बन्धोपेता द्विजातयः ॥

'Harita was the son of Yuvanáswa, whose sons were the Háritas. They were on the part (or followers) of Angirasa, and were Brahmans with the properties of Kshatriyas.' The Váyu has:

हरितो युवनाश्वस्य हारिता भूरयः स्मृताः ।

एते ह्यङ्गिरसः पुत्राः बन्धोपेता द्विजातयः ॥\*\*

'Harita was the son of Yuvanáswa, from whom were many

\* The *Bhágavata-purāṇa*, IX., VII., 1, has Yauvanáswa. See the next page, note †.

† Some MSS. have Hárita, like the *Bhágavata*.

‡ All my best MSS., supported by the commentary, yield 'Háritas'.

§ But see note † in the page next following.

|| I find: अश्वरीषस्य युवनाश्वः प्रपितामहसनामा यतो हरिता-  
जारीता अङ्गिरसो द्विजा हरितयोवप्रवराः । अथ हरितानामार्षेया  
आङ्गिरसाम्बरीषयौवनाश्वेति प्रवरपाठात् ।

¶ Prior Section, LXV., 40, 41.

\*\* My MSS. differ, as to this stanza, from those followed by Professor Wilson. *Vide infra*, p. 283, note ¶.

In the regions below the earth,\* the Gandharvas called Mauneyas† (or, sons of the Muni Kaśyapa), who

called Hárítas. They were sons of Angiras, and Brahmans with the properties of Kshattriyas. The Bhágavata‡ has only: **मान्धातुप्रवरा इमे**। These (Ambarisha, Purukutsa, and Harita,) were, according to Śrīdhara Swámin's comment, the chiefs of Mándhâtí's descendants; being founders of three several branches: or it may mean, he says, merely that they had Mándhâtí for their progenitor; Mándhâtí being, by some, also named Angiras, according to Áśwaláyana.§ It may be questioned if the compilers of the Puráṇas, or their annotators, knew exactly what to make of this and similar phrases,|| although they were, probably, intended to intimate, that some persons of Kshattriya origin became the disciples of certain Brahmans, particularly of Angiras, and, afterwards, founders of schools of religious instruction, themselves. Mándhâtí himself is the author of a hymn in the R̥ig-veda. Asiatic Researches, Vol. VIII., p. 385.¶ Hárita is the name of an individual

\* *Rasātala*. See Vol. II., p. 209, note 1.

† The commentator says they were Chitrāsena and others: see Vol. II., p. 285, note †. The term seems to be a general epithet of the Gandharvas, derived from their mother, Muni: see the *Mahābhārata*, *Ādi-parvan*, śl. 2552; *Harivaṃśa*, śl. 11553. In Vol. II., p. 75, it is the Apsarasas that spring from Kaśyapa and Muni; the Gandharvas being the offspring of Kaśyapa and Arishṭá.

‡ IX., VII., 1. Subjoined are the original and Burnouf's translation:

**मांधातुः पुत्रप्रवरो योऽम्बरीषः प्रकीर्तितः ।**

**पितामहेन प्रवृतो यौवनाश्रय तत्सुतः ।**

**हारीतस्तस्य पुत्रोऽभूत्मांधातुप्रवरा इमे ॥**

"Le fils aîné de Mándhâtí qui est célèbre sous le nom d'Ambarisha, fut adopté par son grand-père Yuvanâśva; c'est pourquoi le fils d'Ambarisha est nommé Yâuvanâśva. Ce dernier prince eut pour fils Hárita; ces [trois] personnages (Ambarisha, Yâuvanâśva et Hárita) ont, pour auteur commun Mándhâtí."

§ ? See Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 383. || *Vide supra*, p. 255, note 2; p. 258, note 1.

¶ Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 25.

were sixty millions in number, had defeated the tribes of the Nāgas (or snake-gods), and seized upon their most precious jewels, and usurped their dominion. Deprived of their power by the Gandharvas, the serpent-chiefs addressed the god of the gods, as he awoke from his slumbers; and the blossoms of his lotos-eyes opened, while listening to their hymns.\* They said: "Lord, how shall we be delivered from this great fear?" Then replied the first of males,† who is without beginning: "I will enter into the person of Purukutsa, the son of Māndhātṛi, the son of Yuvanāśwa; and in him will I quiet these iniquitous Gandharvas." On hearing these words, the snake-gods bowed and withdrew, and, returning to their country, despatched Narmadā, to solicit the aid of Purukutsa.†

Narmadā accordingly went to Purukutsa, and conducted him to the regions below the earth,‡ where, being filled with the might of the deity, he destroyed the Gandharvas. He then returned to his own palace; and the snake-gods, in acknowledgement of Narmadā's services, conferred upon her, as a blessing, that, who-

sage, considered as the son of Chyavana, and to whom a work on law is attributed. It is, probably, rather that of a school, however, than of an individual.

† Narmadā, the personified Nerbudda river, was, according to the Bhāgavata,§ the sister of the Nāgas.||

\* The rendering here is somewhat lax.

† *Purushottama*. See Vol. I., p. 16, note †.

‡ *Rasātala*.

§ IX., VII., 2.

|| For another origin of her, *vide supra*, p. 162, note ||; p. 165, note ‡.

soever should think of her, and invoke her name, should never have any dread of the venom of snakes.\* This is the invocation: "Salutation be to Narmadā in the morning; salutation be to Narmadā at night; salutation be to thee, O Narmadā! Defend me from the serpent's poison."† Whoever repeats this, day and night, shall never be bitten by a snake, in the dark, or in entering a chamber; nor shall he who calls it to mind, when he eats, suffer any injury from poison, though it be mixed with his food. To Purukutsa, also, the snake-gods announced, that the series of his descendants should never be cut off.

Purukutsa had a son, by Narmadā, named Trasadasyu,‡ whose son was Sambhūta,¹§ whose son was

---

¹ We have some varieties here. Instead of Trasadasyu, the Matsya has Dussaha, whom it makes the husband of Narmadā, and father of Sambhūti, the father of Tridhanwan. The Bhāgavata || omits Sambhūti; the Linga ¶ makes him the brother of Trasadasyu; and the Agni has, in his place, Sudhanwan.

---

\* For सर्पविषभयं there is a variant, सर्वविषभयं, "dread of any poison."

† नर्मदायै नमः प्रातर्नर्मदायै नमो निशि ।

नमोऽस्तु नर्मदे तुभ्यं रक्ष मां विषसर्पतः ॥

‡ Some MSS. read, like the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Trasaddasyu. *Vide supra*, p. 266, note ¶, for this word as an epithet.

§ The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads, in my MSS.:

नर्मदायां समुत्पन्नः संभूतस्तस्य चात्मजः ।

It seems, then,—*vide supra*, p. 165, Sanskrit extract in note †,—that Trasadasyu and Sambhūta are one, unless they are brothers.

|| IX., VII., 3. It says that Anarāṇya was son of Trasaddasyu.

¶ Prior Section, LXV., 41, 42. Then follows:

विष्णुवृद्धः सुतस्तस्य विष्णुवृद्धा यतः सृताः ।

एते ह्यङ्गिरसः पक्षे चक्षोपिताः समाश्रिताः ।

संभूतिरपरं पुत्रमनरक्षमजीजनत् ॥

Anaraṇya, who was slain by Rāvaṇa, in his triumphant progress through the nations.\* The son of Anaraṇya was Prīshadaśwa;† his son was Haryaśwa; his son was Sumanas;‡ his son was Tridhanwan; his son was Trayyāruṇa;§ and his son was Satyavrata, who obtained the appellation of Trīśanku,§ and was degraded to the

\* Bṛishadaśwa: Vāyu.|| The Matsya, Agni, and Brabma omit all between Saṁbhūta and Tridhanwan.¶ The Bhāgavata\*\* has a rather different series, or, Anaraṇya, Haryaśwa, Aruṇa, Tribandhana, Trīśanku. As Anaraṇya is famous in Hindu story,†† and Trayyāruṇa;‡‡ is a contributor to the Rīg-veda, their omission shows careless compilation.

Saṁbhūti is, thus, provided with two sons, Vishṇuvṛiddha—founder of the Vishṇuvṛiddhas,—and Anaraṇya.

The first two of these lines—only with the substitution of पुत्राः for पत्ने—occur in the Vāyu-purāṇa, likewise. Vide supra, p. 280, note . . .

\* The Vāyu-purāṇa distinctly says, in my MSS., that he slew Rāvaṇa:

रावणो निहतो येन त्रिलोकविजये पुरा ।

† Bṛishadaśwa. Līnga-purāṇa. And so, I think, the Vāyu-purāṇa is intended to read.

‡ One MS. has Trayyāruṇi.

§ Vide infra, p. 286, note †.

|| There, as in the Līnga-purāṇa, Prior Section, LXV., 45, I find Vasumanas, with Dṛishadwati—which name seems to have been misread Bṛishadaśwa—for his mother:

हव्यश्वात्तु दृषद्वत्यां जज्ञे वसुमना नृपः ।

Vasumanas, son of Rohidaśwa, is mentioned in the Anukramanikā to the Rīgveda, X., 179.

¶ The Harivaṁśa, śl. 715, 716, has, also, Saṁbhūta, Sudhanwan, Tridhanwan.

\*\* IX., VII., 4.

†† Particularly in the Rāmāyaṇa.

‡‡ Read "Tryaruṇa." Vide supra, p. 36, note †. In the Rīgveda, V., XXVII., 3, Tryaruṇa and Trasadasyu are mentioned as if contemporaries.

condition of a Chāṇḍāla (or outcaste).<sup>1\*</sup> During a twelve years' famine,† Triśanku provided the flesh of deer, for the nourishment of the wife and children of Viśwāmitra; suspending it upon a (spreading) fig-tree; on the borders of the Ganges,§ that he might not subject them to the indignity of receiving presents from an outcaste.‖ On this account, Viśwāmitra, being highly

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu states, he was banished, by his father, for his wickedness (Adharma). The Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa¶ detail his iniquity at length; and it is told more concisely in the Linga. He carried off the betrothed wife of another man;—one of the citizens, according to the two former; of Vidarbha, according to the latter. For this, his father, by the advice of Vasishṭha, banished him; and he took refuge with Śwapākas. The Rāmāyaṇa\*\* has a different story, and ascribes Triśanku's degradation to the curse of the sons of Vasishṭha, to whom the king had applied to conduct his sacrifice, after their father had refused to do so. Before that, he is described†† as a pious prince (सत्यवादी जितेन्द्रियः); and the object of his sacrifice was to ascend to heaven.

\* For Triśanku, a Chāṇḍāla king known to Buddhist tradition, and probably the same person, see Burnouf's *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., pp. 207, et seq.

† Literally, 'drought,' *anāvṛishṭi*.

‡ *Nyagrodha*.

§ Jāhnavi, in the original.

‖ An expansion of चण्डालप्रतियहपरिहारणाय ।

¶ Śl. 717, et seq.

\*\* *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LVIII.

†† *Ibid.*, LVII, 10.



pleased with him, elevated him, in his living body, to heaven.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The occurrence of the famine, and Satyavrata's care of the wife and family of Viśwāmītra, are told, with some variations, in the Vāyu, which has been followed by the Brahma and Hari Vamśa.\* During the famine, when game fails, he kills the cow of Vasishthā; and, for the three crimes of displeasing his father, killing a cow, and eating flesh not previously consecrated, he acquires the name of Trīśanku (tri, 'three', śanku, 'sin').† Vasishthā refusing to perform his regal inauguration, Viśwāmītra celebrates the rites, and, on his death, elevates the king, in his mortal body, to heaven. The Rāmāyaṇa relates the same circumstance, but assigns to it a different motive,—Viśwāmītra's resentment of the refusal of the gods to attend Trīśanku's sacrifice. That work also describes the attempt of the gods to cast the king down upon earth, and the compromise between them and Viśwāmītra, by which Trīśanku was left suspended, head downwards, in mid-air, forming a constellation in the southern hemisphere, along with other new planets and stars formed by Viśwāmītra. The Bhāgavata‡ has an allusion to this legend, saying that Trīśanku is still visible in heaven:

\* Śl. 724, *et seq.* See *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 86–88.

† *Trīśanku*—"he of three delinquencies,"—was so called, according to the commentator on the *Vishnu-purāṇa*, because he ate what was unhallowed, slew his spiritual teacher's cow, and disobeyed his father's commands: अमोक्षितमन्नगुरुधेनुवधपिचाञ्चालहनरूपेस्त्रिभिः शङ्कुभिरिव हृदिव्यथाहेतुभिस्त्रिशङ्कुसंज्ञामवाप । Then follows a quotation of the *Harivamśa*, Śl. 748, 749:

पितृष्वपारितोषेण गुरोर्दोर्गघ्नीवधेन च ।

अमोक्षितोपयोगाच्च विविधस्ते व्यतिक्रमः ॥

एवं त्रीण्यस्य शङ्कुनि तानि दृष्ट्वा महायशः ।

त्रिशङ्कुरिति ह्येवाच त्रिशङ्कुस्तेन स स्मृतः ॥

Also see Śrīdhara on the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VII., 6.

‡ IX., VII., 5.

The son of Triśanku was Hariśchandra;<sup>1\*</sup> his son

सशरीरो गतः स्वर्गमद्यापि दिवि दृश्यते ।

The Vāyu furnishes some further information, from an older source:

अत्राप्युदाहरन्तीमौ सौकी पौराणिका जनाः ।

विश्वामित्रप्रसादेन विशङ्कर्दिवि राजते ।

देवैः सार्धं महतेजानुयुक्तास्तस्य धीमतः ॥

शनैर्याति -- रम्या हेमन्ते चन्द्रमण्डिता ।†

अलंकृता त्रिभिर्व्यमैस्त्रिशङ्कुयहभूषिता ॥

Both my copies leave a blank, where it is marked; and a similar passage does not elsewhere occur: but the word should, probably, be निशा; and the whole may be thus rendered: "Men acquainted with the Purāṇas recite these two stanzas: 'By the favour of Viśwāmitra, the illustrious Triśanku shines in heaven, along with the gods, through the kindness of that sage. Slowly passes the lovely night in winter, embellished by the moon, decorated with three watches, and ornamented with the constellation Triśanku.' " This legend is, therefore, clearly astronomical, and alludes, possibly, to some reformation of the sphere by Viśwāmitra, under the patronage of Triśanku, and in opposition to a more ancient system advocated by the school of Vasishṭha. It might be no very rash conjecture, perhaps, to identify Triśanku with Orion, the three bright stars of whose belt may have suggested the three Śankus (stakes or pins) which form his name.‡

<sup>1</sup> The Paurāṇik lists generally dismiss Hariśchandra very summarily; but he makes a conspicuous figure in legends of an apparently later date. In the Mahābhārata, Sabhā Parvan, § it is

\* According to the *Harivaiṣṇava*, śl. 754, he married Satyarathā, of the Kaikaya family. And so says the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

† The MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* used by me, and to which the Translator had access, read this line thus:

शनैर्यात्यवला रम्या हेमन्ते चन्द्रमण्डिता ।

The missing word is, then, अवला, 'a woman.' In the next verse, my MSS. have भावैः, instead of यामैः.

‡ The reading of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, as now restored, militates against this conjecture. § Chapter XII.

was Rohitās̥wa;<sup>1</sup> his son was Harita;<sup>2</sup> his son was

stated, that he resides in the court of Indra, to which he was elevated for his performance of the Rājasūya sacrifice, and for his unbounded liberality. This seems to have served as the groundwork of the tale told in the Mārkaṇḍeya\* and Padma Purāṇas, of his having given his whole country, his wife and son, and, finally, himself, to Viśvāmitra, in satisfaction of his demands for Dakṣiṇā. In consequence, he was elevated, with his subjects, to heaven, from whence, having been insidiously led, by Nārada, to boast of his merits, he was again precipitated. His repentance of his pride, however, arrested his downward descent; and he and his train paused in mid-air. The city of Hariśchandra is popularly believed to be, at times, still visible in the skies. The indignation of Vasishṭha at Viśvāmitra's insatiableness produced a quarrel, in which their mutual imprecations changed them to two birds, the Śarālī (a sort of Turdus,) and the Baka (or crane). In these forms they fought for a considerable term, until Brahmā interposed, and reconciled them. The Bhāgavata alludes to this story, in its notice of Hariśchandra; but the Vāyu refers the conflict to the reign of a different prince: *vide supra*, p. 261, note 2. According to the Śiva Purāṇa, Hariśchandra was an especial worshipper of that deity; and his wife Satyavatī was a form of Jayā, one of Durgā's handmaids.

<sup>1</sup> Also read Rohita. † Traces of his name appear in the strongholds of Rotas, in Behar‡ and in the Punjab. The Bhāgavata has a legend of his having been devoted to Varuṇa, before his birth, by his father, who, having, on various pleas, deferred

\* Chapter VIII.

† In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*; in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 8; in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 11, 12; and in the *Harivamśa*, śl. 756.

‡ The *Harivamśa* states that he founded Rohitapura.

"Hariśchandra was a very great conqueror; and his son Rohita or Rohitās̥wa founded, and is said to have resided at, the fortress which, from him, is called Rohitās, a name corrupted, in our maps, to Rotas." Hamilton's *Genealogies of the Hindus, &c.*, p. 32.

Chunchu,<sup>1\*</sup> who had two sons, named Vijaya and Sudeva. † Ruruka<sup>2</sup> was the son of Vijaya, and his own son was Vrika, ‡ whose son was Báhu (or Báhuka§). This prince was vanquished by the tribes of Haihayas and Tálajanghas,<sup>3</sup> || and his country was overrun by them;

offering his son, as promised, was afflicted by a dropsy. Rohita, at last, purchased Śunahśepha, ¶ who was offered, as a victim, in his stead: see hereafter, note on Śunahśepha. \*\*

<sup>2</sup> Omitted: Agni, Linga, †† and Matsya.

<sup>1</sup> Omitted: Agni. Dhundhu: Linga, ‡‡ and Kúrma. Champa, founder of Champamālini: §§ Bhāgavata. ¶¶ But all other authorities make Champa a different person, a descendant of Anga: see family of Anu, of the lunar race. ¶¶

<sup>2</sup> Kuruka: Linga\*\*\* and Kúrma. Bharuka: Bhāgavata. †††

<sup>3</sup> Descendants of Yadu. The first springs from a prince who

\* Several MSS. give Chanchu; and other Purāṇas, and also the *Hari-vahśa*, exhibit the same variety.

† Vijaya was son of Sudeva, according to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 1. Instead of Sudeva, the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 12, has Sutejas.

‡ One MS. has Vśisha. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads, in different MSS., Vśitaka and Dhśitaka.

§ I find this, the longer, form only in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 2.

|| These are said to be a branch of the Haihayas. See the Translator's last note on Chapter XI. of this Book.

¶ Corrected, here and just below, from "Śunahśephas." See the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VII., 19, 22.

\*\* Chapter VII. of this Book.

†† I find Harita, followed by Dhundhu, in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 12:

हरितो रोहितस्याय धुन्धुर्हरित उच्यते ।

‡‡ See the preceding note.

§§ I find Champāpurī.

¶¶ IX., VIII., 1.

¶¶ Chapter XVIII. of this Book.

\*\*\* This Purāṇa has Ruchaka, in some MSS.

††† IX., VIII., 2.

in consequence of which, he fled into the forests, with his wives. One of these was pregnant; and, being an object of jealousy\* to a rival queen, the latter gave her poison, to prevent her delivery. The poison had the effect of confining the child in the womb for seven years. Báhu, having waxed old, died in the neighbourhood of the residence† of (the Muni) Aurva. His queen, having constructed his pile, ascended it, with the determination of accompanying him in death; but the sage‡ Aurva, who knew all things, past, present, and to come, issued forth from his hermitage, and forbade her, saying: "Hold! hold! This is unrighteous. A valiant prince, the monarch of many realms,§ the offerer of many sacrifices, the destroyer of his foes, a universal emperor,|| is in thy womb. Think not of committing so desperate an act!" Accordingly, in obedience to his injunctions, she relinquished her intention. The sage then conducted her to his abode, and, after some time, a very splendid boy was there born. Along with

---

is the twelfth, and the second, from one who is the eighteenth, in the lunar line; and both are, thus, contemporary with a prince who is the thirty-fifth of the solar dynasty. The Váyu adds, that they were assisted by Śakas, Yavanas, Kámbojas, Páradas, ¶ and Pahlavas.

---

\* This is an inference. The original runs: तस्याश्च सपत्न्या गर्भस्तन्ना-  
नाय गरो दत्तः ।

† *Áśrama.*

‡ *Bhagavat.*

§ अखिलभूमण्डलपतिरतिवीर्यपराक्रमः ।

|| *Chakravartin.*

¶ Corrected from "Páravas,"—a typographical error, presumably.

him, the poison that had been given to his mother was expelled; and Aurva, after performing the ceremonies required at birth,\* gave him (on that account) the name of Sagara (from Sa, 'with', and Gara, 'poison'). The same holy sage celebrated his investiture with the cord of his class, instructed him (fully) in the Vedas,† and taught him the use of arms, especially those of fire, called after Bhārgava.‡

When the boy (had grown up, and) was capable of reflection, he said to his mother, (one day): "Why are we dwelling in this hermitage? Where is my father? And who is he?" His mother, in reply, related to him all (that had happened); upon hearing which, he was highly incensed, and vowed to recover his patrimonial kingdom, and exterminate the Haihayas and Tālajanghas,§ by whom it had been overrun. Accordingly, (when he became a man), he put nearly the whole of the Haihayas to death, and would have, also, destroyed the Śakas, the Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Páradas, and Pahlavas,<sup>1</sup> but that they applied to Vasishtha, the family-

<sup>1</sup> The Haihayas || we shall have further occasion to notice. The

\* जातकर्मदिकां क्रियां निधाव । The *jāta-karman* is described as "a ceremony ordained on the birth of a male, before the section of the navel-string, and which consists in making him taste clarified butter out of a golden spoon." Colebrooke's *Digest*, &c., Vol. III., p. 104, note †.

† Insert 'and all sciences', शास्त्राख्यशेषाणि ।

‡ Read "called after Bhṛigu": अस्त्रं चाग्नेयं भार्गवाख्यम् । The *Vāyu-purāṇa* alleges that Sagara's instructor in the use of such arms was Bhṛigu himself. For Hindu fiery weapons, *vide supra*, p. 81, note ..

§ Add "and others," *ādi*.

|| For mention of this race in a medieval inscription, see the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1862, p. 117, line 1.

priest\* (of Sagara), for protection. Vāsishṭha, regarding them as annihilated (or deprived of power), though

Śakas† are, no doubt, the Sacæ or Sakai of the classical geographers,—Scythians and Indo-Scythians, Turk or Tartar tribes, who established themselves, about a century and a half before our era, along the western districts of India, and who are, not improbably, connected with our Saxon forefathers. The Yavanas‡ are the Ionians or Greeks. The Kāmbojas§ were a people on the northwest of India, of whom it is said, that they were remarkable for a capital breed of horses. There is an apparent trace of their name in the Caumojees of Kaferistán, who may have retreated to the mountains before the advance of the Turk tribes. (Elphinstone's Account of the Kingdom of Caubul, &c., 1st ed., p. 619: see, also, Vol. II., p. 182, note 1). The Páradas|| and Pahlavas¶ or Pahnavas may designate other bordering tribes in the same direction, or on the confines of Persia. Along with these, in the legend that follows, the Bhágavata\*\* enumerates Barbaras.†† The Váyu adds Māhishikas,‡‡ Dárvas,§§ Chaulas,||| and Kbaśas;¶¶ the two former

\* *Kula-guru.*

† See Vol. II., p. 165, note 8.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 181, note 6.

§ See Vol. II., p. 182, notes 1, *etc.*; p. 183, note 3, and annotations thereon.

|| See Vol. II., p. 182, note 4; p. 183, note †.

¶ This, undoubtedly, is the right word; and, on the authority of all my best MSS., I have amended the text accordingly, in the preceding page, and in p. 294, *infra*. See Vol. II., p. 187, note §. At p. 339 of that volume, I have silently corrected the statement previously made at p. 168, note ||, that the Pahlavas are not named in the genuine *Rāmāyaṇa*.

\*\* IX., VIII., 5. Along with the Barbaras are there named only the Tálajanghas, Yavanas, Śakas, and Haihayas.

†† See Vol. II., p. 176, notes 8 and \*\*; p. 178, note §.

‡‡ See Vol. II., p. 166, notes 8, *etc.*

§§ See Vol. II., p. 178, text and notes † and ††.

||| Identified, here, with the Cholas, for whom see Vol. II., p. 178, note 13. The *Harivamśa*, in the corresponding passage, has Cholas.

¶¶ See Vol. II., p. 186, note 5.



living,\* thus spake to Sagara: "Enough, enough, my

of which are people on the Malabar and Coromandel coasts; the two latter are, usually, placed amongst the mountaineers of the Hindu Kush. The Brahma Purāṇa lengthens the list with the Kolas (the forest races of eastern Gondwana), the Sarpas,† and the Keralas,‡ (who are the people of Malabar). The Hari Vamśa§ still further extends the enumeration with the Tushāras or Tokhāras|| (the Turks of Tokharestan), the Chīnas¶ (Chinese), the Madras\*\* (people in the Punjab), the Kishkindhas†† (in Mysore), Kauntalas‡‡ (along the Nerbudda), Bangas§§ (Bengalis), Śālwas||| (people in western India), and the Konkaṇas¶¶ (or inhabitants of the Concan). It is evident, from the locality of most of the additions of the last authority, that its compiler, or corrupter, has been a native of the Dekhin.

\* *Jivanmr̥itaka*. The scholiast hereupon quotes the following stanza from some unnamed *Smṛiti*:

यः स्वधर्मात्परिभ्रष्टो विप्रैश्चैव बहिष्कृतः ।  
स जीवन्नेव लोकेऽस्मिन्मृत इत्यभिधीयते ॥

"He who has fallen away from his duty, and is cast out by Brāhmanas, though living in this world, is declared to be dead."

† In the corresponding passage of the *Harivamśa*,—namely, at *śl.* 782,—I find, much more frequently than कोलसर्पाः,—yielding Kolas and Sarpas, or else Kolasarpas,—कोलिसर्पाः, कोलिसर्पाः, &c. All these, I strongly suspect, are corruptions of कलिसर्पाः, an epithet which the *Vāyu-purāṇa*—see a few lines before, in Professor Wilson's foot-note,—applies to the Māhishikas.

‡ See Vol. II., p. 178, notes 1 and 5.

§ *Śl.* 782—784.

|| See Vol. II., p. 186, notes 5, *etc.*

¶ See Vol. II., p. 181, note 7.

\*\* See Vol. II., p. 163, notes 11, *etc.*

†† Tradition places the Kishkindhas in Odra, or Orissa. See the *Śabdalalpadrūma*, *sub voce*; also, Vol. II., p. 177, note 3.

‡‡ Some MSS. have Kentalas. And see Vol. II., p. 157, notes 9, *etc.* I know not on what authority M. Langlois asserts, that these people, "aux longs cheveux étaient près des Tchīnas."

§§ "Vangas", in Vol. II., p. 166.

||| See Vol. II., pp. 133—135; p. 156, note \*.

¶¶ See Vol. II., p. 178, notes 14 and 5.



son! Pursue no further these objects of your wrath, whom you may look upon as no more.\* In order to fulfil your vow,† I have separated them from affinity to the regenerate tribes, and from the duties of their castes." Sagara, in compliance with the injunctions of his spiritual guide, contented himself, therefore, with imposing upon the vanquished nations peculiar distinguishing marks.‡ He made the Yavanas<sup>1</sup> shave their heads entirely;§ the Śakas he compelled to shave (the upper) half of their heads; the Páradas wore their hair long; and the Pahlavas let their beards grow; in obedience to his commands.<sup>2</sup> Them, also, and other

<sup>1</sup> And Kámbojas: Váyu.

<sup>2</sup> The Asiatic nations generally shave the head, either wholly, or in part. Amongst the Greeks, it was common to shave the fore part of the head; a custom introduced, according to Plutarch, by the Abantes,—whom Homer|| calls ὀπίθεν κομίζοντες,—and followed, according to Xenophon, by the Lacedæmonians. It may be doubted, however, if the Greeks or Ionians ever shaved the head completely. The practice prevails amongst the Mohammedans; but it is not universal. The Śakas (Scythians, or Tartars) shave the fore part of the head, gathering the hair at the back into a long tail, as do the Chinese. The mountaineers of the Himálaya shave the crown of the head, as do the people of Kaferistán, with exception of a single tuft. What oriental people wore their hair long, except at the back of the head, is questionable; and the usage would be characteristic rather of the Teutonic and Gothic nations. The ancient Persians had long bushy

\* अलमेभिरतिजीवन्मृतकैरनुसृतैः।

† Pratiñd.

‡ Vesānyatwa.

§ Mūṇḍita-śiras.

|| *Iliad*, II., 542.

Kshattriya races, he deprived of the established usages of oblations to fire\* and the study of the Vedas; and, thus separated from religious rites,† and abandoned by the Brahmans, these different tribes became Mlechchhas. Sagara, after the recovery of his kingdom, reigned over the seven-zoned earth, with undisputed dominion.‡

beards, as the Persepolitan sculptures demonstrate. In Chardin's time, they were out of fashion; but they were again in vogue, in that country, in the reign of the last king, Fath Sháh.

<sup>1</sup> So the Váyu, &c.; and a similar statement is given in Manu, X., 44, where, § to the Śakas, Yavanas, Kámbojas, Páradas, and Pahlavas, || are added the Pauṇdrakas ¶ (people of western Bengal), Oḍras \*\* (those of Orissa), Dravidas †† (of the Coromandel coast), Chinas (Chinese), Kirátas (mountaineers), and Daradas ‡: (Dards of the Hindu Kush). From this passage, and a similar one in the Rámáyāṇa, in which the Chinas §§ are mentioned, the late Mr. Klaproth inferred those works to be not older than the third century B. C., when the reigning dynasty of Tsin first gave that

\* *Vashatkára*. See Vol. II., p. 29, note §.

† *Dharma*.

‡ सगरोऽपि स्वमधिष्ठानमागम्यास्त्वलितचक्रः सप्तद्वीपवतीमिमासु-  
र्वी प्रशशास ।

§ See Vol. II., p. 183, note 3, and annotations thereon.

|| Corrected from "Pahnavas." The Translator has Pahlavas in Vol. II., p. 183, note 3. *Vide supra*, p. 292, note ¶.

¶ Professor Wilson had "Pauṇdras," which I do not find in the original. For the Pauṇdrikas, see Vol. II., p. 177, note ††.

\*\* This is, perhaps, to be altered. See Vol. II., p. 184, note †; p. 177, notes 3 and \*\*.

†† Elsewhere read Dravidas. See Vol. II., p. 177, text and note 5.

‡: See Vol. II., p. 185, notes 3, etc.

§§ It is only in the Bengal recension of the *Rámáyāṇa* that the Chinas are mentioned. See Vol. II., p. 176, note \*\*.

name to China (see, also, Vol. II., p. 181, note 7). It was probable, he supposed, that the Hindus became acquainted with the Chinese only about 200 B. C., when their arms extended to the Oxus: but it is difficult to reconcile this date with the difference of style between the Rāmāyaṇa, particularly, and the works of the era of Vikramāditya. It would seem more likely, that the later appellations were interpolated. It must have been a period of some antiquity, when all the nations from Bengal to the Coromandel coast were considered as Mlechchhas and outcasts.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

The progeny of Sagara: their wickedness: he performs an *Aśwamedha*: the horse stolen by Kapila: found by Sagara's sons, who are all destroyed by the sage: the horse recovered by *Amśumat*: his descendants. Legend of *Mitrāsaba* or *Kalmāshapāda*, the son of *Sudāsa*. Legend of *Khaṭwānga*. Birth of *Rāma* and the other sons of *Daśaratha*. Epitome of the history of *Rāma*: his descendants, and those of his brothers. Line of *Kuśa*. *Bṛīhadbala*, the last, killed in the Great War.

*SUMATI*, the daughter of *Kaśyapa*, and *Keśinī*,\* the daughter of *Raja Vidarbha*,† were the two wives of *Sagara*.‡ Being without progeny, the king solicited

\* So the *Rāmāyaṇa*. § *Sumati* is called the daughter of *Arish-tanemi*:|| the *Mahābhārata* ¶ calls her *Śaibya*. The story of *Sa-*

\* This was the elder wife, the *Vāyu-purāṇa* alleges.

† In the *Vāyu-purāṇa* and *Hariwaṇśa*, he is called simply *Vidarbha*.

‡ The following genealogy is given in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXX., 19—37: *Brahmā*, *Marichi*, *Kaśyapa*, *Vivasvat*, *Manu*, *Ikshvāku* (first king of *Ayodhyā*), *Kukshi*, *Vikukshi*, *Bāṇa*, *Anarāṇya*, *Prīthu*, *Triśanku*, *Dhundhumāra*, *Yuvanāśwa*, *Māndhātī*, *Susandhi*, *Dhruvasandhi* (with *Prasenajit*), *Bharata*, *Asita*, *Sagara*. The same detail is found in the *Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa*, CX., 5—24.

In the Bengal recension of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Ādi-kāṇḍa*, LXXII., *Angiras* and *Prachetas* intervene between *Kaśyapa* and *Manu*, *Vivasvat* being omitted; as is *Kukshi*, also.

The *Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa*, CXIX., in the same recension, names, somewhat discrepantly: *Brahmā*, *Marichi*, *Kaśyapa*,—and then, a break being announced,—*Vivasvat*, *Manu*, *Ikshvāku*, *Kukshi*, *Vikukshi*, *Reṇu*, *Pushya*, *Anarāṇya*, *Prīthu*, *Triśanku*, *Dhundhumāra*, *Yuvanāśwa*, *Māndhātī*, *Susandhi*, *Dhṛitasandhi* (with *Prasenajit*), *Bharata*, *Asita*, *Sagara*.

Most of this is very different from what we meet with in the *Purāṇas*.

§ *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, XXXVIII., 3, 4.

|| This is another name of *Kaśyapa*. See Vol. II., p. 28, note 2. For the stanza there cited from the *Mahābhārata*, see the *Sānti-parvan*, sl. 7574.

¶ *Vana-parvan*, sl. 8833.

the aid of the sage Aurva, with great earnestness;\* and the Muni pronounced this boon, that one wife should bear one son, the upholder of his race, and the other should give birth to sixty thousand sons; and he left it to them to make their election. Keśinī chose to have the single son; Sumati, the multitude: and† it came to pass, in a short time, that the former bore Asamanjas,<sup>1</sup> a prince through whom the dynasty continued; and the daughter of Vinatā,‡ Sumati, had sixty thousand sons. The son of Asamanjas was Ām-  
sumat.

Asamanjas was, from his boyhood, of very irregular conduct. § His father hoped, that, as he grew up to manhood, he would reform; but, finding that he continued guilty of the same immorality, Sagara abandoned him. The sixty thousand sons of Sagara followed the example of their brother Asamanjas. The path of virtue and piety being obstructed, in the world, by the sons of Sagara, || the gods repaired to the Muni ¶

gara and his descendants is told at length in the Rāmāyaṇa, First Book; and in the Mahābhārata, Vana Parvan, III., 106, et seq.; as well as in most of the Purāṇas.

<sup>1</sup> Or Panchajana:\*\* Brahma.††

\* *Samādhi*, = *chittairāgrya*, the scholiast says.

† Insert "the Rishi having pronounced 'So be it'": तथेति च ऋषि-  
णाभिहिते ।

‡ See Vol. II., pp. 26 and 73.

§ *Apavṛtta*.

|| सागरैरपध्वस्तयज्ञादिसन्मार्गे जगति ।

¶ Substituted for Rishi.

\*\* This is an epithet of Asamanjas, in the *Harivaṃśa*, śl. 802, et seq.

†† Asamanja: *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and *Linga-purāṇa*. Asamanjasa: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., VIII., 14.

Kapila, who was a portion of Vishnú,\* free from fault, and endowed with all (true) wisdom. Having approached him with respect, they said: "O lord, what will become of the world, if these sons of Sagara are permitted to go on in the evil ways which they have learned from Asamanjas! Do thou, then, assume a visible form,† for the protection of the afflicted universe." "Be satisfied", replied the sage: "in a brief time, the sons of Sagara shall be, all, destroyed."

At that period, Sagara commenced the (performance of the solemn) sacrifice of a horse, who was guarded by his own sons: nevertheless, some one stole the animal, and carried it off into a chasm in the earth. Sagara commanded his sons to search for the steed; and they, tracing him by the impressions of his hoofs, followed his course, with perseverance, until, coming to the chasm where he had entered, they proceeded to enlarge it, and dug downwards, each, for a league.‡ Coming to Pátála, they beheld the horse wandering freely about; and, at no great distance from him, they saw the Rishi Kapila sitting, with his head declined in meditation,§ and illuminating the surrounding space with radiance as bright as the splendours of the autumnal sun shining in an unclouded sky.|| Exclaiming "This

\* Purushottama, in the original.

† "Visible form" is to render *śarīra*, 'body'.

‡ वसुधातलमेकैको योजनं योजनमवनेश्वरान् ।

§ This specification does not appear in the original. See the next note.

|| भगवन्तमपघने शरत्कालेऽर्कमिव तेजोभिरनवरतमूर्ध्वमधश्चाशेषा दिशश्चोद्भासयमानं कपिलर्विमपश्यन् । Commentary: अपघने। अपगतमेधे ।

is the villain who has maliciously interrupted our sacrifice, and stolen the horse: kill him! kill him!" they ran towards him, with uplifted weapons. The Muni slowly raised his eyes, \* and, for an instant, looked upon them; and they were reduced to ashes by the (sacred) flame that darted from his person.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Bhāgavata† has, for a Purāṇa, some curious remarks on this part of the story, flatly denying its truth:

न साधुवादो मुनिकोपभर्जिता  
नृपेन्द्रपुत्रा इति सत्त्वधामनि ।  
कथं तमो रोषमयं विभाव्यते  
जगत्पवित्रात्मनि खे रजो भुवः ॥  
यस्मेरिता साङ्ख्यमयी दृढेह नी-  
र्यया मुमुक्षुस्तरते दुरत्ययम् ।  
भवाण्येवं मृत्युपथं विपश्चितः  
परात्मभूतस्य कथं पृथङ्मतिः ॥

"The report is not true, that the sons of the king were scorched by the wrath of the sage. For how can the quality of darkness, made up of anger, exist in a world-purifying nature, consisting of the quality of goodness;—the dust of earth, as it were, in the sky? How should mental perturbation distract that sage, who was one with the Supreme, and who has promulgated that Sāṅkhya philosophy which is a strong vessel by which he who is desirous of liberation passes over the dangerous ocean of the world, by the path of death?"‡

\* The original, परिवर्तितलोचनेन, implies that he cast his eyes about.  
† IX., VIII., 12, 13.

‡ Burnouf's more exact translation of this passage is as follows:

"Elle n'est pas vraie la tradition qui prétend que les fils du roi furent détruits par la colère du sage; comment en effet les Ténèbres que produit la colère eussent-elles pu exister chez un sage, dont la Bonté était le corps, et qui purifiait le monde? c'est comme si l'on voulait attribuer au ciel la poussière née de la terre.

"Comment eût-il pu croire à des distinctions [comme elles d'ami et

When Sagara learned that his sons whom he had sent in pursuit of the (sacrificial) steed had been destroyed by the might of the great Rishi Kapila, he despatched Anśumat, the son of Asamanjas, to effect the animal's recovery. The youth, proceeding by the (deep) path which the princes had dug, arrived where Kapila was, and, bowing respectfully,\* prayed† to him, (and so propitiated him), that the saint said: "Go, (my son), deliver the horse to your grandfather; and demand a boon. Thy grandson shall bring down the river of heaven: (on the earth)." Anśumat requested, as a boon, that his uncles§ who had perished through the sage's displeasure|| might, although unworthy of it, be raised to heaven, through his favour. "I have told you," replied Kapila, "that your grandson shall bring down upon earth the Ganges (of the gods); and, when her waters shall wash the bones and ashes of thy grand-

d'ennemi], ce sage identifié avec l'Esprit suprême, qui dirigea ici-bas le solide vaisseau de la doctrine Sāṅkhya, à l'aide duquel l'homme désireux de se sauver traverse le redoutable océan de l'existence, ce chemin de la mort?"

A tolerably full account of Kapila will be found in my edition of the *Sāṅkhya-sāra*, Preface, pp. 13—21. Several things, however, are to be corrected there; as the work was sent out, by the Asiatic Society of Bengal, without my authority, and while I was known to be still employed on what would have made ten or twelve pages of additional matter, including various readings of MSS. collated since I left India, besides minute indexes and numerous emendations. The copies of the *Dasa-rūpa* in circulation are similarly unamended and imperfect.

\* *Bhakti-namra*.

† *Tushṭāva*, 'lauded'.

‡ "River of heaven" is for Gangā, the word in the Sanskrit.

§ Anśumat rather strangely calls them *pitrī*, 'fathers'. The scholiast explains that the term is used for *pitrīvyā*.

|| The original has ब्रह्मदण्डहतान्, "smitten by the punishment of a Brāhman."



father's sons,\* they shall be raised to Swarga. Such is the efficacy of the stream that flows from the toe of Vishṇu, that it confers heaven upon all who bathe in it designedly, or who even become accidentally immersed in it: those, even, shall obtain Swarga, whose bones, skin, fibres, hair, or any other part, shall be left, after death, upon the earth which is contiguous to the Ganges." Having acknowledged, reverentially, the kindness of the sage, Amśumat returned to his grandfather, and delivered to him the horse.† Sagara, on recovering the steed, completed his sacrifice, and, in affectionate memory of his sons, denominated Sāgara the chasm which they had dug.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sāgara is still the name of the ocean, and, especially, of the Bay of Bengal, at the mouth of the Ganges. On the shore of the island called by the same name, tradition places a Kapilāsrama, or hermitage of Kapila, which is still the scene of an annual pilgrimage. Other legends assign a very different situation for the abode of the ascetic, or, the foot of the Himālaya, where the Ganges descends to the plains.‡ There would be no incompatibility, however, in the two sites, could we imagine the tra-

\* "Thy grandfather's sons" is an expansion of the word for 'them'.

† अश्वमादाय पितामहयज्ञमाजगाम ।

‡ सागरं चात्मजप्रीत्या पुत्रत्वे कल्पयामास; "and, from love of his sons, he set up the ocean as a son."

Sāgara, the word here used for 'ocean', is, in form, patronymic of Sagara. The commentator says: सागरं सगरसुतैः खननाद्वर्धितम् । अत एवात्मजप्रीत्या पुत्रत्वे कल्पयामास स्थापयामास । तस्मिन्पुत्रबुद्धिं कृतवानित्यर्थः ।

§ In the *Padma-purāṇa*, Kapila is said to have dwelt in the village of Indraprastha.

The son of Amśumat was Dilīpa;<sup>1</sup> his son was Bhagīratha, who brought Gangā down to earth; whence she is called Bhāgīrathī.\* The son of Bhagīratha was Śruta;<sup>2</sup>† his son was Nābhāga;<sup>3</sup> his son was Ambarīsha; his son was Sindhudwīpa;‡ his son was Ayutāśwa;<sup>4</sup>§ his son was Ātuparīna,|| the friend¶ of Nala, skilled profoundly in dice.<sup>5</sup> The son of Ātuparīna was

dition referred to a period when the ocean washed, as it appears once to have done, the base of the Himālaya, and Saugor (Sāgara) was at Haridwāra.

<sup>1</sup> Or Khaṭwānga: Brahma and Hari Vanśa:\*\* but this is, apparently, an error. *Vide infra*, p. 311, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> Omitted: Matsya and Agni. Viśruta:†† Linga.

<sup>3</sup> Nābha:‡‡ Bhāgavata.

<sup>4</sup> Ayutāyus:§§ Vāyu, Linga, and Kūrma. Śrutāyus: Agni. Ayutājit:|||| Brahma.

<sup>5</sup> अचहृदयः, 'knowing the heart of the dice.' The same epi-

\* The *Vāyu-purāṇa* hereupon gives the following quotation:

अचाप्युदाहरन्तीमौ श्लोकी पीराणिका जनाः ।  
भगीरथसु तां गंगामानयामास कर्मभिः ।  
तस्माज्जागीरथी गंगा कथ्यते वंशवित्तमैः ॥

Two stanzas are here promised; but only one is cited.

† A single MS. has Subotra.

‡ According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IX., 16, he was son of Nābha; Ambarīsha being there omitted.

§ In two MSS. the name is Ayutāyus.

|| The *Harivaṃśa* has Ātuparīna, and gives the patronym Ātuparīna to Sudāsa.

¶ *Sahāya*.

\*\* *Sl.* 808. *Khaṭwānga* is given there as Dilīpa's surname. *Khaṭwānga*, as the name of a royal sage, appears in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, II., I., 13.

†† I find Śruta.

‡‡ Corrected from "Nābhīn".

§§ So, too, reads the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

|||| This is the reading of the *Harivaṃśa*, also.

Sarvakāma;<sup>1</sup>\* his son was Sudāsa; his son was Sau-

thet, as well as that of 'friend of Nala,' is given him in the Vāyu, Bhāgavata, and Brahma Purāṇas, and in the Hari Varṇa, and leaves no doubt of their referring to the hero of the story told in the Mahābhārata. Nala, however, as we shall hereafter see, is some twenty generations later than Rītuparṇa, in the same family; and the Vāyu, therefore, thinks it necessary to observe, that two Nalas are noticed in the Purāṇas, and the one here adverted to is the son of Virasena:

नली द्वाविति विख्याती पुराणेषु दृढव्रतौ ।

वीरसेनात्मजश्चैव यश्चेत्ताकुकुलोद्भवः ॥

whilst the other belongs to the family of Ikshvāku. The same passage occurs in the Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Varṇa;† and the commentator‡ on the latter observes: निषधात्मजो नलो वीरसेनसुतान्नलादन्यः । 'Nala the son of Nishadha is different from Nala the son of Virasena.' It is, also, to be observed, that the Nala of the tale is king of Nishadha, and his friend Rītuparṇa is king of Ayodhyā. The Nala of the race of Ikshvāku is king of Ayodhyā; he is the son of Nishadha, however; and there is, evidently, some confusion between the two. We do not find Virasena, or his son, in any of the lists. *Vide infra*, p. 320, note 1.

<sup>1</sup> There is considerable variety in this part of the lists; but the Vayu and Bhāgavata agree with our text. The Matsya and others make Kalmāshapāda the son or grandson of Rītuparṇa,

\* Śarvabhauma: *Linga-purāṇa*.

† *Ś.* 831, 832:

नली द्वावेव विख्याती पुराणेषु भरतर्षभ ।

वीरसेनात्मजश्चैव यश्चेत्ताकुकुलोद्भवः ॥

We read, too, in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 24, 25:

नली द्वावेव विख्याती पुराणेषु दृढव्रतौ ।

वीरसेनसुतश्चान्यो यश्चेत्ताकुकुलोद्भवः ॥

‡ *Nīlakaūṭha*.

dása, named, also, Mitrasaha.<sup>1\*</sup>

and place Sarvakāma, or Sarvakarman, after him.† See further on.‡

<sup>1</sup> The Vāyu, Agni, Brahma, and Hari Vamśa read Amitrasaha, 'foe-enduring'; § but the commentator on our text explains it Mitra, a name of Vasishṭha, Saha, 'able to bear' the imprecation of; || as in the following legend, which is similarly related in the Bhāgavata. ¶ It is not detailed in the Vāyu. A full account occurs

\* The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IX., 18, says that he was called Kalmāshāghri, also. This is a synonym of Kalmāshapāda, for which epithet vide *infra*, p. 308.

† In the *Harivamśa*, śl. 817, Sarvakarman appears as son of Mitrasaha. In the next two stanzas, the names of his successors are: Anaratīya, Nighna, Anamitra (and Raghu, his brother), Duliduha, Dilīpa.

‡ Vide *infra*, p. 313, note 1.

§ The first and fourth works named have—as has, also, the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 27,—नास्त्रा मित्रसहः; the second and third, राजा मित्रसहः. The words of our text are सौदासो मित्रसहनामा; and here, but for the commentary, there is just as good reason as there is in the other instances, to infer that the name is Amitrasaha. The momentary indignation of Saudāsa against Vasishṭha justifies but ill the supposition that the term *amitra*, 'enemy', was applied to the latter. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IX., 18, in its अत्रमित्रसहं यं, reads Mitrasaha, unmistakably; and so does the *Mahābhārata*, *Ādi-parvan*, śl. 6720; *Āśvamedhika-parvan*, śl. 1690.

In Dr. Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary* there is, however, an article अमित्रसह, which word there points to our king, "also called Saudāsa: according to the *Vāyu*-, *Agni*-, *Brahma-Pur.* and the *Harivamśa*; the *Vishnu-Pur.* calls him Mitrasaha." Were not these particulars taken from the note under annotation? Even a reference to so accessible a work as the *Harivamśa* would have suggested a doubt of there being such a name as Amitrasaha.

|| The commentator's words are: मित्रं वसिष्ठं प्रतिशप्तुं समर्थोऽपि सहते स्म। तेन मित्रसहनाम। This imports, that Mitrasaha was so called, because, though he had it in his power to retaliate, in kind, the curse of his friend (*mitra*), namely, Vasishṭha, he forbore (*sahate sma*, from *sah*).

¶ IX., IX., 19—39.

The son of Sudāsa, having gone into the woods to hunt, fell in with a couple of tigers, by whom the forest had been cleared of the deer.\* The king slew one of these tigers with an arrow. At the moment of expiring, the form of the animal was changed, and it became that of a fiend† of fearful figure and hideous aspect.

---

in the Mahābhārata, Ādi Parvan, s. 176, but with many and important variations. Kalmāshapāda, whilst hunting, encountered Śakti,‡ the son of Vasishṭha, in the woods, and, on his refusing to make way, struck the sage with his whip. Śakti cursed the king to become a cannibal; and Viśwāmitra, who had a quarrel with Vasishṭha, seized the opportunity to direct a Rākshasa to take possession of the king, that he might become the instrument of destroying the family of the rival saint. Whilst thus influenced, Mitrasaha, a Brahman, applied to Kalmāshapāda for food; and the king commanded his cook to dress human flesh, and give it to the Brahman, who, knowing what it was, repeated the curse of Śakti, that the king should become a cannibal; which taking effect with double force, Kalmāshapāda began to eat men. One of his first victims was Śakti, whom he slew and ate, and then killed and devoured, under the secret impulse of Viśwāmitra's demon, all the other sons of Vasishṭha. Vasishṭha, however, liberated him from the Rākshasa who possessed him, and restored him to his natural character. The imprecation of the Brahman's wife, and its consequences, are told, in the Mahābhārata, as in the text; but the story of the water falling on his feet appears to have grown out of the etymology of his name, which might have referred to some disease of the lower extremities; the prince's designation being, at length, Mitrasaha Saudāsa Kalmāshapāda, or, 'Mitrasaha, son of Sudāsa, with the swelled feet.'

---

\* *Apamrita*.

† *Rākshasa*.

‡ On the correct name, Śakti, *vide supra*, p. 35, note ‡.

Its companion, threatening the prince with its vengeance, disappeared.

After some interval, Saudása celebrated a sacrifice, (which was conducted by Vasishtha). At the close of the rite, Vasishtha went out; when the Rákshasa, the fellow of the one that had been killed in the figure of a tiger, assumed the semblance of Vasishtha, and (came and) said (to the king): "Now that the sacrifice is ended, you must give me flesh to eat. Let it be cooked; and I will presently return." Having said this, he withdrew, and, transforming himself into the shape of the cook, dressed some human flesh, which he brought to the king, who, receiving it on a plate of gold, awaited the reappearance of Vasishtha. As soon as the Muni returned, the king offered to him the dish. Vasishtha, surprised at such want of propriety\* in the king, as his offering him meat to eat, considered what it should be that was so presented, and, by the efficacy of his meditations, discovered that it was human flesh. His mind being agitated with wrath, he denounced a curse upon the Raja, saying: "Inasmuch as you have insulted all such holy men† as we are, by giving me what is not to be eaten, your appetite shall, henceforth, be excited by similar food."

"It was yourself," replied the Raja to the (indignant) sage, "who commanded (this food to be prepared)." "By me!" exclaimed Vasishtha. "How could that have been?" And, again having recourse to meditation,‡

---

\* *Daukṣīlya.*

† *Tapaswin.*

‡ *Samādhi.*

he detected the whole truth. Foregoing, then, all displeasure towards the king,\* he said: "The food (to which I have sentenced you) shall not be your sustenance for ever: it shall (only) be so for twelve years." The king, who had taken up water in the palms of his hands, and was prepared to curse the Muni, now considered that Vasishtha was his spiritual guide,† and, being reminded,‡ by Madayanti, his queen, that it ill became him to denounce an imprecation upon a holy teacher who was the guardian divinity of his race,§ abandoned his intention. || Unwilling to cast the water upon the earth, lest it should wither up the grain,—for it was impregnated with his malediction,—and equally reluctant to throw it up into the air, lest it should blast the clouds, and dry up their contents, he threw it upon his own feet.¶ Scalded by the heat which the water had derived from his angry imprecation, the feet of the Raja became spotted black and white; \*\* and he, thence, obtained the name of Kalmásha-páda, or he with the spotted (kalmásha) feet (páda).††

\* अस्मानुग्रहं चकार ।

† In the original, this consideration is suggested by Madayanti.

‡ Prasáddita, 'appeased.'

§ कुलदेवताभूतमाचार्यम् ।

|| This, though implied, is not expressed in the Sanskrit.

¶ सस्यामुदरार्थं तच्छापासु नोर्ध्वा नाकाशे चिन्नेप तेनैव स्वपादौ सिषेच । "That water for cursing he threw neither on the earth nor into the air, for sustenance of the grain or of the clouds; but he sprinkled his own feet with it."

\*\* This is borrowed from the scholiast, who says: कल्माषतां कृष्णपाण्डुताम् ।

†† तेन क्रोधश्रुतेनाश्रसा दग्धच्छायी तत्पादौ कल्माषतामुपगती । ततश्च स कल्माषपादसंज्ञामवाप ।

In consequence of the curse of Vasishtha, the Raja became a cannibal\* every sixth watch of the day,† (for twelve years), and, in that state, wandered through the forests, and devoured multitudes of men. On one occasion, he beheld a holy person‡ engaged in dalliance with his wife. As soon as they saw his terrific form, they were frightened, and endeavoured to escape; but the (regal) Rákshasa (overtook and) seized the husband. The wife of the Brahman, then, also desisted from flight, and earnestly entreated the savage§ (to spare her lord), exclaiming: "Thou, Mitrasaba, art the pride|| of the (royal) house of Ikshwáku,—not a (malignant) fiend.¶ It is not in thy nature, who knowest the characters of women, to carry off and devour my husband."\*\* But all was in vain; and, regardless of her reiterated supplications, he ate the Brahman, as a tiger devours a deer.†† The Brahman's wife, furious with wrath, then addressed the Raja, and said: "Since you have barbarously disturbed the joys of a wedded pair, and killed my husband, your death shall be the conse-

\* राक्षसभावमुपेत्य ।

† Read "every sixth meal-time;" i. e., at the close of every third day. The original is षष्ठे काले, on which the comment is: षष्ठे षष्ठे काले तृतीयदिनान्ते ।

‡ Muni.

§ Bahu-lasta.

|| Tilaka.

¶ Rákshasa.

\*\* नाहंसि स्त्रीधर्मसुखाभिज्ञो मय्यहृतार्थायामिमं मद्गतारमचुम् ।

Comment: स्त्रीधर्मो मैथुनं तत्सुखाभिज्ञः ।

†† I find *pasu*.



quence of your associating with your queen."\* So saying, she entered the flames.

At the expiration of the period of his curse, Saudāsa returned home. Being reminded of the imprecation of the Brahmani, by his wife, Madayantī, he abstained from conjugal intercourse, and was, in consequence, childless; but, having solicited the interposition of Vasisṭha, Madayantī became pregnant.† The child, however, was not born for seven years, when the queen, (becoming impatient), divided the womb with a (sharp) stone, and was thereby delivered. The child was, thence, called Aśmaka (from Aśman, 'a stone'). The son of Aśmaka was Mūlaka, who, when the warrior tribe was extirpated upon earth, was surrounded and concealed by a number of females;‡ whence he was denominated Nārikavacha (having women for armour).<sup>1</sup> The son of Mūlaka was Daśaratha; his son

<sup>1</sup> His name, Mūlaka, or 'the root', refers, also, to his being the stem whence the Kshatriya races again proceeded. § It may be doubted if the purport of his title Nārikavacha is accurately explained by the text. ||

\* यस्मादेवं मय्यतृप्तायां त्वयायं मत्पतिर्भक्षितस्तस्मात्त्वमत्यन्तमवलोपभोगप्रवृत्तौ प्रास्यसि ।

† Hereabouts the rendering is free.

‡ Rather, "surrounded and guarded by garmentless women:" स्त्रीभिर्विवस्त्राभिः परिवार्य रक्षितः । I find no other reading than this.

§ See the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., IX., 40, and Śrīdhara's supplementation thereof.

|| The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reports, as follows, on the origin of Mūlaka's epithet:

was Ilavila;\* his son was Viśwasaha;† his son was Khatwānga;‡ (called, also,) Dilīpa,<sup>1</sup> who, in a battle between the gods and the Asuras, being called, by the former, to their succour, killed (a number of) the latter. Having, thus, acquired the friendship of the deities in heaven, they desired him to demand a boon. He said to them: "If a boon is to be accepted by me, then tell me, as a favour, what is the duration of my life." "The length of your life is but an hour,"§ the gods replied. On which, Khatwānga, who was swift of motion,|| de-

<sup>1</sup> This prince is confounded with an earlier Dilīpa by the *Brahma Purāṇa* and *Hari Vamśa*. ¶

अचापुदाहरन्तीमं मूलकं वै नृपं प्रति ।  
स हि रामभयाद्राजा स्त्रीभिः परिवृतोऽवसत् ।  
विवस्त्रस्त्रीणामिच्छन् नारीकवचमीश्वरः ॥

Parasūrama is here intended, according to Śrīdhara, in his comment on the parallel passage in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*,—IX., IX., 40. Two verses, which, it may be conjectured, closely correspond, in a correct reading, to the stanza quoted in the preceding extract, appear in the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 29.

\* Not one of my MSS. has this name. Four give Ilavila; others, Iḍa-vila and Ailavila. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads, in different MSS., Iḍaviḍa, Iḍiviḍa, and Aiḍiviḍa; the *Linga-purāṇa*, Ilavila; the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Aiḍaviḍa. Compare the variants noticed in p. 246, note \*, *supra*.

† The *Linga-purāṇa* interpolates Vīddhaśarman before Viśwasaha.

‡ This name is frequently and variously corrupted, especially into Katwānga and Khatwānga. It does not seem necessary to dwell on these depravations.

§ *Muhūrta*.

|| *Laghima-guṇa*, "endowed with lightness." *Laghiman* is "the faculty of assuming levity," illustrated by "rising along a sunbeam, to the solar orb." It must be equally easy to the adept to travel a ray downwards. See Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., p. 250.

¶ *Vide supra*, p. 303, note 1; p. 305, note †.

scended, in his easy-gliding chariot, to the world of mortals. Arrived there, he prayed, and said: "If my own soul has never been dearer to me than (the sacred) Brahman; if I have never deviated from (the discharge of) my duty; if I have never regarded gods, men, animals, vegetables, all created things,\* as different from the imperishable;† then may I, with unswerving step, attain to that divine being on whom holy sages meditate!" Having thus spoken, he was united with that supreme being,‡ who is Vāsudeva; with that elder§ of all the gods, who is abstract existence,|| and whose form cannot be described. Thus he obtained absorption, according to this stanza, which was repeated, formerly, by the seven Rishis: "Like unto Khatwāṅga will be no one upon earth, who, having come from heaven, and dwelt an hour amongst men, became united with the three worlds, by his liberality and knowledge of truth."<sup>1</sup> ¶

---

<sup>1</sup> The term for his obtaining final liberation is rather unusual; चयोऽभिसंहिता लोकाः, 'By whom the three worlds were affected,

---

\* *Vtīkshādika.*

† *Achyuta.*

‡ *Paramātman.*

§ *Guru.*

|| *Sattā-mātrātman.*

¶ खट्वाङ्गेन समो नान्यः कश्चिदुर्व्यां भविष्यति ।

येन स्वर्गादिहागम्य मुहूर्तं प्राप्य जीवितम् ।

चयोऽभिसंहिता लोका बुद्ध्या दानेन चैव हि ॥

Comment: मुहूर्तं जीवितं प्राप्य ज्ञात्वा । बुद्ध्या वासुदेवः सर्वमिति ज्ञानेन । यद्दानं समर्पणं खण्डनमिति वा प्रविलायनमिति यावत्तेनाभिसंहिता विषयीकृतास्त्रयो लोकाः । विष्णौ प्रविलायिता इत्यर्थः ।

According to this, partially accepted, the last two lines may be ren-

The son of Khatwānga was Dīrghabāhu; his son was Raghu; his son was Aja;\* his son was Daśaratha.<sup>1</sup>

or beloved:† विषयीकृताः,‡ the three worlds being identified with their source, or the Supreme. The text says, of this stanza, श्रूयते; and the Vāyu, citing§ it, says, इति श्रुतिः. || The legend is, therefore, from the Vedas.

<sup>1</sup> The lists here differ very materially, as the following comparison will best show:

Vishnu.	Matsya. ¶	Rāmāyaṇa.**
Kalmāshapāda	Kalmāshapāda	Kalmāshapāda

dered: "by whom, arrived here below from paradise, having obtained an hour's prolongation of life, the three worlds were mastered through wisdom and self-surrender."

The scholiast puts much more of Vedāntism into these verses than it is likely they were intended to convey.

Compare the *Harivamśa*, *śl.* 809. The ordinary reading, there, in the last line, is अनुसंधिताः.

\* The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., X., 1, has Raghu, Pīthushravas, Aja.

† अभिसंहित can scarcely bear either of these meanings. Its most probable signification, here, is 'contemplate thoroughly'.

‡ This means 'experienced', i. e., recognized as vanity.

§ The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has only the last two verses, and does not call them a citation. It reads सत्येन for दानेन.

|| The *Vāyu-purāṇa* uses this expression in connexion with something else:

दिलीपस्त्वस्र पुत्रोऽभूत्षट्पाङ्गद इति श्रुतिः ।

Khatwāngada is, moreover, the form here presented.

¶ Whether the names particularized here, as in many other lists throughout this work, are correctly represented, or not, I do not pretend to pronounce. To this point I have already adverted; giving the reason why we must, at present, look with distrust, in most cases, upon any express or implied claim to punctual accuracy as regards Paurāṇik minutiae: see Vol. I., p. 153, note †. In annotating these volumes, all that, as a rule, I have undertaken to do, touching the numerous works referred to in the Translator's commentary, has been, to restrict myself to the most important and most accessible of them, and to collate these, in such manuscripts as are within my reach, and in the printed editions, with my best diligence.

\*\* *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXX., 40—43; *Ayodhya-kāṇḍa*, CX., 29—34.

The god from whose navel the lotos springs became fourfold, as the four sons of Daśaratha,—Rāma, Laksh-

Vishnu.	Matsya.	Rāmāyaṇa.
Āsmaka	Sarvakarman	Śankhaṇa *
Mūlaka	Anaraṇya	Sudarśana
Daśaratha	Nighna	Agnivarṇa
Ilavila	Anamitra	Śighraga
Viśwasaha	Raghu	Maru
Dilīpa	Dilīpa	Praśuśruka †
Dīrghabāhu	Aja	Ambarisha
Raghu	Dīrghabāhu	Nahusha
Aja	Ajapāla	Yayāti ‡
Daśaratha	Daśaratha	Nābhāga
		• Aja
		Daśaratha.

The Vāyu, Bhāgavata, § Kūrma, and Linga agree with our text, except in the reading of a few names: as, Śataratha, || for Daśaratha the first; Vairivira, for Ilavila; and Kritaśarman, Vīddhaśarman, or Vīddhakarman, for Viśwasaha. ¶ The Agni and Brahma and Hari Vamśa agree with the second series, with similar occasional exceptions; \*\* showing that the Purāṇas admit two series, differing in name, but agreeing in number. The Rāmāyaṇa, however, differs from both, in a very extraordinary manner; and the variation is not limited to the cases specified; as it begins with Bhagīratha, as follows:

\* Corrected from "Śankana." The Bengal recension of the *Rāmāyaṇa* has, in the *Ādi-kāṇḍa*, Śankhaṇa; in the *Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa*, Khanitra.

† For the Paurāṇik son of Maru, *vide infra*, p. 325, l. 6.

‡ Both the genuine *Rāmāyaṇa* and the Bengal recension omit Yayāti in the *Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa*.

§ The readings of this Purāṇa I have detailed, as will have been seen.

|| So read the *Vāyu-purāṇa* and the *Linga-purāṇa*.

¶ *Vide supra*, p. 311, note †.

\*\* All these, so far as the *Harivamśa* is concerned, have been specified in my annotations.

maña, Bharata, and Śatrughna,\*—for the protection† of the world. Rāma, whilst yet a boy, accompanied Viśwāmitra, to protect his sacrifice, and slew Tāḍakā. He afterwards killed Mārīcha with his resistless shafts;‡

Purāṇas.	Rāmāyaṇa. §
Bhagīratha	Bhagīratha
Śruta	Kakutstha
Nābhāga	Raghu
Ambarīsha	Kalmāshapāda
Sindhudwīpa	
Ayutāśwa ¶	
Ītuparṇā	
Sarvakāma	
Sudāsa	
Kalmāshapāda	

The entire Paurāṇik series comprises twenty descents; and that of the Rāmāyaṇa, sixteen. Some of the last names of the poem

\* Insert 'as parts of himself,' आत्मांशिन.

† *Stṛiti*, 'stability'.

‡ यज्ञे च मारीचमिषुवाताहतं दूरं चिक्षेप । "And, at the sacrifice, he hurled to a distance Mārīcha, struck by the blast of his shaft."

We read, in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, XXX., 16—18:

इत्युक्त्वा वचनं रामश्चपि संधाय वेगवान् ।

मानवं परमोदारमस्त्रं परमभास्वरम् ।

चिक्षेप परमक्रुद्धो मारीचोरसि राघवः ॥

स तेन परमास्त्रेण मानवेन समाहतः ।

संपूर्णं योजनशतं क्षिप्तः सागरसंज्ञवे ॥

It appears, from this, that Mārīcha, struck, in the breast, by the weapon Mānava, discharged from Rāma's bow, was projected, by the impact, a hundred *yojanas*, into the sea.

The story of the death of Mārīcha, in the guise of a golden deer, at the hands of Rāma, is told in the same poem, *Araṇya-kāṇḍa*, XLIV.

§ *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXX., 39, 40; *Ayodhyā-kāṇḍa*, CX., 28, 29.

|| Corrected from the impossible "Kakutstha."

¶ *Vide supra*, p. 303, notes 4, §, §§, and |||.

and Subáhu and others fell by his arms. He removed the guilt of Ahalyá, by merely looking upon her. In the palace of Janaka, he broke, with ease, the mighty bow of Maheśwara, and received the hand of Sítá, the daughter of the king, self-born from the earth,\* as the prize of his prowess.† He humbled the pride of Paraśuráma, who vaunted his triumphs over the race of Haihaya;‡ and his repeated slaughters of the Kshattriya tribe. Obedient to the commands of his father, and cherishing no regret for the loss of sovereignty,§ he entered the forest, accompanied by his brother (Lakshmaña) and by his wife, where he killed, in conflict, Virádha, Khara, Dúshaña,|| and other Rákshasas, (the headless giant) Kabandha, and Bálin ¶ (the monkey monarch).

---

occur amongst the first of those of the Purāṇas; but there is, an irreconcilable difference in much of the nomenclature. The Agni, under the particular account of the descent of Ráma, has, for his immediate predecessors, Raghu, Aja, Daśaratha, as in our text; and the author of the Raghu Vamśa agrees with the Purāṇas,\*\* from Dilípa downwards.

---

\* *Ayonijá.*

† *Vírya-kulká.*

‡ अशेषहैहयकुलकेतुभूतम् ।

§ अगणितराज्याभिलाषः ।

|| Corrected from "Kharadúshana". The original is विराधखरदूषणादीन् । For Khara and Dúshaña, see the *Rámáyana*, I, I., 47; the *Raghuvamśa*, XII., 42, 46; the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*; IX., X., 9; &c. &c.

¶ कबन्धबालिनी । Hence I have altered "Bali", which, however, is a form that occurs elsewhere.

\*\* With which of them, except the *Agni-purāṇa*? In the *Raghuvamśa*, VI., 74—78, we find Dilípa, Raghu, Aja, and then, in VIII., 29, Daśaratha.

Having built a bridge across the ocean,\* and destroyed the whole Rákshasa nation, he recovered (his bride,) Sítá, whom their ten-headed (king, Rávaṇa,) had carried off, and returned to Ayodhyá, with her, after she had been purified, by the fiery ordeal, from the soil contracted (by her captivity), and had been honoured by the assembled gods, (who bore witness to her virtue).<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This is an epitome of the Rámáyāṇa, the heroic poem of Válmíki, on the subject of Ráma's exploits. A part of the Rámáyāṇa was published, with a translation, by Messrs. Carey and Marshman, several years since; but a much more correct edition of the text of the two first books, with a Latin translation of the first and part of the second, have been more recently published by Professor Schlegel,—a work worthy of his illustrious name.† A summary of the story may be found in Sir William Jones's Works, Maurice's Hindustan, Moor's Pantheon, &c. It is, also, the subject of the Uttara Ráma Charitra, in the Hindu Theatre; in the introduction to which an outline of the whole is given. The story is, therefore, no doubt, sufficiently familiar, even to English readers. It seems to be founded on historical fact; and the traditions of the south of India uniformly ascribe its civilization,

---

• बद्धा चाक्षोनिधिम ।

† For Signor Gorresio's edition of the spurious Rámáyāṇa, see Vol. II., p. 190, note \*. The genuine Rámáyāṇa—which Professor Wilson does not seem to have known, save in Schlegel's composite edition of the first two books,—has been lithographed at Calcutta and Bombay. For some idea of the difference between the two, the reader is referred to the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. XIX., pp. 303–308, and to Dr. Muir's *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part IV., pp. 377–418. I have seen, in India, no less than seven different commentaries on the real Rámáyāṇa; a copy of one of which, accompanying the text, was transcribed nearly five hundred years ago.



Bharata made himself master of the country of the Gandharvas, after destroying vast numbers of them;\* and Śatrughna, having killed the Rākshasa chief, Lavaṇa, the son of Madhu, took possession of his capital, Mathurā.†

Having, thus, by their unequalled valour and might, rescued the whole world from the dominion of malignant fiends, Rāma, Lakshmaṇa, Bharata, and Śatrughna reascended to heaven, and were followed by those of the people of Kośala: who were fervently devoted to these incarnate portions of the supreme (Vishṇu). §

Rāma (and his brothers) had (each,) two sons. Kuśa and Lava were the sons of Rāma; those of Lakshmaṇa were Angada and Chandraketu;|| the sons of Bharata

---

the subjugation or dispersion of its forest tribes of barbarians, and the settlement of civilized Hindus, to the conquest of Lankā by Rāma.

---

\* The original says that he destroyed thirty millions of terrible *gandharvas*: उग्रगन्धर्वकोटीलिखी जघान ।

† Rather, "founded Mathurā"; the Sanskrit being *niveśita*. Moreover, the original has nothing corresponding to "his capital".

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads:

माधवं लवणं हत्वा गत्वा मधुवनं च तत् ।

शत्रुघ्नेन पुरी तत्र मथुरा संनिवेशिता ॥

And the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* says, at IX., XI., 14:

शत्रुघ्नश्च मधोः पुत्रं लवणं नाम राजसम् ।

हत्वा मधुवनं चक्रे मथुरां नाम वै पुरीम् ॥

Three of my copies of the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*, and two of the *Vāyu*, have Madhurā, instead of Mathurā. It is not altogether certain that Madhurā was not the original name, and even that heard by Hiouen Tsbang.

‡ Strictly, "people of the city of Kośala," कोशलनगरजनपदाः ।

§ This sentence is very freely rendered.

|| A Chandraketu, prince of the city of Chakora, who was killed by an emissary of King Śūdraka, is mentioned in the *Harshacharita*. See my edition of the *Vāsavadattā*, Preface, p. 53.

were Taksha\* and Pushkara;† and Subáhu and Śúrasena‡ were the sons of Śatrughna.

† The Váyu specifies the countries or cities over which they reigned. Angada and Chitraketu§—as the Váyu terms the latter, —governed countries near the Himálaya, the capitals of which were Ángadí and Chandravaktrá.¶ Taksha and Pushkara were sovereigns of Gandhára, residing at Takshaśilá¶ and Pushkará-vatí.\*\* Subáhu and Śúrasena reigned at Mathurá; and, in the latter, we might be satisfied to find the Suraseni†† of Arrian, but that there is a subsequent origin, of perhaps greater authenticity, in the family of Yadu, as we shall hereafter see.‡‡ ‘Kúśa built Kúśasthali on the brow of the Vindhya, the capital of Kośalá; and Lava reigned at Śrávastí (*vide supra*, pp. 249, 263) in Uttara

\* Two MSS. have the elongated form, Takshaka.

† One of my MSS. has Pushkala; and so has the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

‡ All my MSS., and most of those of the *Váyu-purāṇa*, have Śúrasena. Śrutasena: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XI., 13.

§ My MSS. have Chandraketu,—the reading of the *Raghuvamśa*, XV., 90, also. But Chitraketu is the name in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XI., 12.

॥ हिमवत्पर्वताभ्यासे स्त्रीतौ जनपदौ तयोः ।

अङ्गदस्त्राङ्गदी या तु देशे कारपथे पुरी ॥

Ángadí is, here, located in Kárapatha; as I find the name spelled. In the line following this stanza, the country seems to be named, of which Chandraketu's Chandravaktrá was the capital; but, unfortunately, it is illegible in all my MSS.

The *Raghuvamśa*, XV., 90, places both the brothers in Kárapatha.

¶ A large number of useful references bearing on this city will be found in Messrs. Boehtlingk and Roth's *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*, *sub voce*.

\*\* गन्धारविषये सिद्धे तयोः पुर्यौ महात्मनोः ।

तक्षश्च दिशु विख्याता रम्या तक्षशिला पुरी ।

पुष्करस्यापि वीरश्च विख्याता पुष्करावती ॥

Takshaśilá and Pushkarávatí have been identified with the *Ταξίλα* of Ptolemy and the *Πουκελαιώτις* of Arrian. For the people of Gandhára, see Vol. II., p. 174, note 2.

†† See Vol. II., p. 156, note 2.

‡‡ In Chapter XI. of this Book.

The son of Kuśa was Atithi; his son was Nishadha; his son was Nala;<sup>1</sup> his son was Nabhas;\* his son was Puṇḍarīka; his son was Kshemadhanwan; his son was Devānīka; his son was Ahīnagu;<sup>2</sup>† his son was Pāri-

(northern) Kośāla:<sup>3</sup>

कुशस्य कोशलाः राज्यं पुरी चापि कुशस्यली ।

रम्या निवेशिता तेन विन्ध्यपर्वतसानुषु ॥

उत्तरकोशले राज्यं लवस्य च महात्मनः ।

श्रावस्ती लोकविख्याता कुशवंशं निबोधत ॥ §

The Raghu Vamśa|| describes Kuśa as returning from Kuśāvati to Ayodhyā, after his father's death; but it seems not unlikely, that the extending power of the princes of the Doab, of the lunar family, compelled Rāma's posterity to retire more to the west and south.

<sup>1</sup> The Bhāgavata is the only Purāṇa that omits this name; as if the author had been induced to correct the reading, ¶ in order to avoid the necessity of recognizing two Nalas. *Vide supra*, p. 303, note 5.

<sup>2</sup> Here, again, we have two distinct series of princes, inde-

\* Nabha, in a few MSS.

† Ruru has here been omitted by the Translator. One of my MSS. —that which, I believe, Professor Wilson generally, and all but exclusively, used,—here exhibits the mutilation सुतो रुसस्य च. There is no Ruru, however, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

‡ Query, कोशले, in 'Kośāla'?

§ This extract is from a somewhat long quotation in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. In a verse a little before these, we are told that Rāma established a rule of ten thousand years:

दश वर्षसहस्राणि रामो राज्यमकारयत् ।

With this compare the *Linga-purāṇa*, Prior Section, LXVI., 37.

|| XVI., 25. From the same work, XV., 97, it appears on what ground the Translator identified one of the Kuśasthalis with Kuśāvati. See Vol. II., p. 172, note ††.

¶ He reads—IX., XII., 1,—Nabha, in its stead:

कुशस्य चातिथिसस्यान्निषधस्तुतो नमः ।

And Nabha's son is Puṇḍarīka.

páttra;\* his son was Dala;<sup>1</sup>† his son was Chhala;<sup>2</sup>‡ his son was Uktha;<sup>3</sup>§ his son was Vajranábha; his son

pendently of variations of individual names. Instead of the list of the text, with which the Váyu and Bhágavata nearly, and the Brahma and Hari Vamśa indifferently, conform, we have, in the Matysa, Linga, Kúrma, and Agni, the following: Ahinagu, || Sahasráśwa (Sahásráya, or Sahasrabala), ¶ Chandrávaloka, Tárapiḍa (or Tárádbiśa), Chandragiri, Bhánuratha (or Bhánumitra),\*\* and Śrutáyus, with whom the list ends, except in the Linga, which adds Báhula, †† killed by Abhimanyu: enumerating, therefore, from Devánika, but seven or eight princes, to the Great War, instead of twenty-three, as in the other series. The Raghu Vamśa gives much the same list as our text, ending with Agnivarná.††

<sup>1</sup> Bala: Bhágavata. Nala: Hari Vamśa.

<sup>2</sup> Sthala: Bhágavata. Śala: §§ Váyu and Brahma. Śila: Raghu Vamśa. |||

<sup>3</sup> Omitted: Bhágavata. ¶¶

\* My MSS. leave it very dubious whether the name is Páripáttra or Páriyáttra. There are two mountain-ranges, one imaginary, and the other real, regarding which there is, likewise, uncertainty as to the name being Páripáttra or Páriyáttra. See Vol. II., p. 123, note †; p. 128, notes, l. 8.

† A single MS. gives Bala.

‡ I find Śala in one MS.

§ The *Harivamśa*, ll. 825, 826, has Ahinagu, Sudhanwan, Śala, Uktha. For Śala I find Nala and Gaya, in some MSS.

|| In some MSS. of the *Linga-purāṇa* the name is Ahinara.

¶ Here, I believe, the *Linga-purāṇa* inserts Śubha.

\*\* Bhānuachandra seems to be the reading of the *Linga-purāṇa*.

†† I find Bāhulabala.

‡‡ *Vide infra*, p. 324, note ||.

§§ My MSS. of the *Váyu-purāṇa* have Bala.

||| Not so. The *Raghuvarṇa*, XVIII., 17, make Śila son of Páriyáttra, and mentions no one corresponding to Chhala.

¶¶ The *Raghuvarṇa* has Unnábha, son of Śila. The *Váyu-purāṇa* seems to exhibit Auka.

was Śankhanábha;<sup>1</sup>\* his son was Dhyushitáśwa;<sup>2</sup>† his

<sup>1</sup> Śankha: Brahma.: Khagaña: Bhāgavata. §

<sup>2</sup> Dúshitáśwa: Vāyu. Adhyúshitáśwa: || Brahma. Vidhriti: Bhāgavata.

\* One MS. gives Śankhaña; one, Chhampaña.

† By the kindness of Professor Monier Williams, of Oxford, I am enabled to state, that one of the MSS. of the text of the *Vishnu-purāṇa* which formerly belonged to Professor Wilson has तस्मादध्युषिताश्वः, i. e., Adhyushitáśwa; another, ततो ध्युषिताश्वः, the same name, or else Dhyushitáśwa; another, ततो व्युत्थिताश्वः, i. e., Vyutthitáśwa, or Avyutthitáśwa. Again, all Professor Wilson's and all my own MSS. that contain both the text and the commentary here read ततो व्युत्थिताश्वः; while my other MSS.—except one which has ततो व्युषिताश्वः,—give तस्मादध्युषिताश्वः or शङ्खणाध्युषिताश्वः, i. e., Dhyushitáśwa and Vyushitáśwa. Dhyushitáśwa is the name—corrupted, in some copies, into Vyushitáśwa,—in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, where we read:

शङ्खणस्य सुतो विद्वानध्युषिताश्व इति श्रुतः ।

ध्युषिताश्वसुतस्यापि राजा विश्वसहः किल ॥

In the *Harivahśa*, likewise, the true reading, as shown by my best MSS., is, undoubtedly, Dhyushitáśwa. This has been corrupted into Vyushitáśwa, and regularized into Adhyushitáśwa. Vyutthitáśwa looks like a heedless and uninquiring venture at emendation, on the part of the commentator on the *Vishnu-purāṇa*.

Conclusively, we find, in the *Raghuvaṃśa*, XVIII.; 23:

तस्यावसाने हरिदश्वधामा

पित्र्यं प्रपेदे पदमश्विरूपः ।

वेलातटेपूषितसेनिकाश्च

पुराविदो यं ध्युषिताश्वमाङ्गः ॥

"On his [Śankhaña's] death, one endued with the effulgence of the sun, handsome as the Āśvins, and whom those conversant with antiquity call Dhyushitáśwa,—the horses of his troops having encamped on the declivity of the sea-shore,—acceded to the dignity of his fathers."

My best MSS. of the *Raghuvaṃśa* read as above; and the best MSS. of Mallinātha's commentary that I have access to give, likewise, Dhyushitáśwa. Moreover, from a grammatical point of view, Kālidāsa's very etymology, and, similarly, Mallinātha's gloss, unquestionably favour this name, as against Vyushitáśwa.

The strange, but not unjustifiable, name Dhyushitáśwa would naturally

son was Viśwasaha;<sup>1\*</sup> his son was Hirañyanābha,† who was a pupil of the mighty Yogin Jaimini, and communicated the knowledge of spiritual exercises: to Yājñavalkya.<sup>2</sup> The son of this saintly king was

<sup>1</sup> Omitted: Brahma and Bhāgavata.

<sup>2</sup> Omitted: Brahma and Hari Vanśa; but included, with similar particulars, by the Vāyu, § Bhāgavata, and Raghu Vanśa.

provoke, to a careless scholar, a surmise of mistake; and the close resemblance between व्यु and वु, hastily written, may have seemed to support such a surmise. We thus see how, in all likelihood, Vyushitāśwa originated.

"Abhyutthitāśwa", the name in the former edition of the work under annotation, is in none of the MSS. that were used by Professor Wilson; and I have dismissed it for Dhyushitāśwa. It may be added, that Vyutthitāśwa is the name in the translation of the *Vishṇu-purāṇa* that was prepared for the Professor in Bengal.

Messrs. Boettlingk and Roth, in their *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*, referring to Professor Lassen,—who confessedly copies from Professor Wilson,—insert Adhyushitāśwa, an unavowed alteration of Adhyūshitāśwa.

Turning, for comparison, to the *Sanskrit Dictionary* of Dr. Goldstücker, we here find that very critical work not only scrupulously holding with Professor Wilson, even to his long and short vowels, but doing so in silence, and, manifestly, without any care of verification. Abhyutthitāśwa is registered; and equally is Adhyūshitāśwa,—a name I have found nowhere,—for the constituent participle of which, rendered "very diseased," recourse is had to the verb *ūsh*, *ayrotare*, a mere invention, there is reason to suspect, of the grammarians. At the same time, Kālidāsa's word should seem to have escaped the observation of the learned and researchful lexicographer.

‡ And *Harivamśa*. § Śankhaṇa: *Vāyu-purāṇa* and *Raghuvanśa*.

|| On this and "Dūshitāśwa", see note † in the preceding page and the present.

\* And so reads the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

† In one view, the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XII., 2, 3, has, instead of Ahinagu, &c., Aniba, Pāriyātra, Bala, Sthala, Vajranābha, Khagaṇa, Vidhiti, Hirañyanābha.

‡ The expression "knowledge of spiritual exercises" is to render *yoga*.

§ Premising the name of Viśwasaha, the *Vāyu-purāṇa* states:

हिरण्यनाभः कौशलो वसिष्ठस्तप्तुतोऽभवत् ।

Hirañyanābha seems, thus, to be called the Vasishtha of Kośala. But

Pushya;\* his son was Dhruvasandhi;<sup>1</sup> his son was

See, also, p. 58, *supra*, where Kauśalya is, likewise, given as the synonym of Hirañyanābha;† being, as the commentator observes, his Viśeṣanām, his epithet or attribute,—born in, or king of, Kōśala. The Vāyu, accordingly, terms him हिरण्यनाभः कौशल्यः; but, in the Bhāgavata,‡ the epithet Kauśalya is referred, by the commentator,§ to Yājñavalkya, the pupil of Hirañyanābha: यतः सकाशात्कौशल्यो याज्ञवल्क्य ऋषिरध्यातॄं योगमध्यगात् । The author of the Rāghu Varāṇsa, not understanding the meaning of the term, has converted Kauśalya into the son of Hirañyanābha. || Rāghu Varāṇsa, XVIII., 27. The Bhāgavata, like our text, calls the prince the pupil of Jaimini; the Vāyu, more correctly, जैमिनेः पौत्रस्य शिष्यः, ‘the pupil of the sage’s grandson’. There seems to be, however, something unusual in the account given of the relation, borne by the individuals named, to each other. As a pupil of Jaimini, Hirañyanābha is a teacher of the Sāma-veda (*vide supra*, p. 58); but Yājñavalkya is the teacher of the Vāja-saneyi branch of the Yajus (*vide supra*, p. 57). Neither of them

some MSS. have Kauśilya, not Kauśalya. *Vide supra*, p. 58, note †.

Then follows the stanza:

पौत्रस्य जैमिनेः शिष्यः स्मृतः सर्वेषु शर्मसु ।

शतानि संहितानां तु पञ्च योऽधीतवांस्ततः ॥

Here, as before, Hirañyanābha is associated with five hundred *Saṁhitās*.

\* In the *Harivaṁśa*, II. 827, 828, we find Dhyushitāśwa, and then Pushya.

† Corrected from “Hirañyagarbha”, a mere slip of the pen.

‡ IX., XII., 4:

शिष्यः कौशल्य अध्यातॄं याज्ञवल्क्योऽध्यगाद्यतः ।

योगं महोदयमृषिर्हृदययन्त्रिभेदनम् ॥

“C’est de ce maître que le Rishi Yājñavalkya, qui était né dans le Kōśala, apprit le Yōga de l’Esprit suprême, ce Yōga qui donne des facultés si puissantes, et qui tranche le lien du cœur.”

§ Śrīdhara.

|| The *Rāghuvarāṇsa*, proceeding, makes Kauśalya father of Brahmishtha; him, father of Putra; and him, father of Pushya.



Sudarśana; his son was Agnivarña; his son was Śīghra; his son was Maru,<sup>2</sup> who, through the power of devotion (Yoga), is still living in the village called Kalāpa,\* and, in a future age, will be the restorer of the Kshattriya race in the solar dynasty.† Maru had a son named Prasūruta; his son was Susandhi;‡ his son was Amarsha;§ his son was Mahaswat;<sup>3</sup> his son was Viśrutavat;|| and his son was Brīhadbala,¶ who was killed, in the

is specified, by Mr. Colebrooke, amongst the authorities of the Pātanjala or Yoga philosophy; nor does either appear as a disciple of Jaimini, in his character of founder of the Mīmāṃsā school. Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society, Vol. I.\*\*

<sup>1</sup> Arthasiddhi: Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa.

<sup>2</sup> Maruta: Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa. These authorities†† omit the succeeding four names.

<sup>3</sup> Sahaswat: Vāyu.

<sup>4</sup> Viśwasāhwan:‡‡ Bhāgavata.

\* The *Harivaṃśa* has Kalāpadwipa; some MSS. reading Kāliyādwipa. For the situation of the village of Kalāpa, *vide supra*, p. 197, note ||.

† आगामियुगे सूर्यवंशचक्रप्रवर्तयिता भविष्यति। The *Vāyu-purāṇa* seems to declare, that he will reestablish the Kshattras in the nineteenth coming *yuga*:

एकोनविंशप्रयुगे चक्रप्रवर्तकः प्रभुः ।

Some MSS. read एकोनविंश°, 'twenty-ninth.'

‡ All my MSS. but two—showing Susandhi,—have Sugavi. Sandhi is the reading of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XII., 7. The *Vāyu-purāṇa* has Susandhi, distinctly.

§ Amarshaṇa: *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

|| One MS. has Viśwavāha.

¶ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XII., 7, 8, names Viśwasāhwan, Prasajit, Takshaka, Brīhadbala.

\*\* Or Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*, Vol. I., pp. 230—236, 296.

†† *Harivaṃśa*, sl. 829, 830.

‡‡ Corrected from "Viśwasaha."



Great War,\* by Abhimanyu, the son of Arjuna. † These are the most distinguished princes in the family of Ikshwáku. Whoever listens to the account of them will be purified from all his sins.<sup>1</sup>;

---

<sup>1</sup> The list closes here; as the author of the Purāṇas, Vyása, is contemporary with the Great War. The line of Ikshwáku is resumed, prophetically, in the twenty-second chapter.

---

\* *Bhārata-yuddha*.

† The former edition had "Anjuna", by error of the press.

‡ एते हीक्ष्वाकुभूपालाः प्राधान्येन मयोदिताः ।  
एतेषां चरितं शृण्वन्सर्वपापैः प्रमुच्यते ॥

---

## CHAPTER V.

Kings of Mithilá. Legend of Nimi, the son of Ikshwáku. Birth of Janaka. Sacrifice of Śiradhwaġa. Origin of Sítá. Descendants of Kuśadhwaġa. Kṛiti the last of the Maithila princes.

THE son of Ikshwáku, who was named Nimi,<sup>1</sup> instituted a sacrifice that was to endure for a thousand years, and applied to Vasishtha to offer the oblations.\* Vasishtha, in answer, said, that he had been preengaged, by Indra, for five hundred years, but that, if the Raja would wait for some time, he would come and officiate as superintending priest.† The king made no answer; and Vasishtha went away, supposing that he had assented.‡ When the sage had completed the performance of the ceremonies he had conducted for Indra, he returned, with all speed, to Nimi, purposing to render him the like office. When he arrived, however, and found that Nimi had retained Gautama and other priests to minister at his sacrifice, he was much displeased, and pronounced upon the king, who was then asleep, a curse, to this effect, that, since he had not intimated his intention, but transferred to Gautama the duty he had first entrusted to himself, Vasishtha, Nimi

---

<sup>1</sup> None of the authorities, except the Váyu and Bhágavata, contain the series of kings noticed in this chapter.

---

\* "Chose Vasishtha as the *hotri*," literally.

† *Ritwig*.

‡ Here the scholiast quotes a proverb, मौनं संमतिलक्षणम्, which may be translated, almost word for word, "Silence implies consent."

should, thenceforth, cease to exist in a corporeal form. When Nimi woke, and knew what had happened, he, in return, denounced, as an imprecation upon his unjust preceptor, that he, also, should lose his bodily existence, as the punishment of uttering a curse upon him, without previously communicating with him. Nimi then abandoned his bodily condition. The spirit of Vasishtha, also, leaving his body, was united with the spirits of Mitra and Varuṇa, for a season, until, through their passion for the nymph Urvaśī, the sage was born again, in a different shape.\* The corpse of Nimi was preserved from decay, by being embalmed with fragrant oils and resins; and it remained as entire as if it were immortal.† When the sacrifice was concluded,

---

\* This shows that the Hindus were not unacquainted with the Egyptian art of embalming dead bodies. In the Kāśī Khaṇḍa, s. 30, an account is given of a Brahman who carries his mother's bones, or, rather, her corpse, from Setubandha (or Rāmeśwara) to Kāśī. For this purpose, he first washes it with the five excretions‡ of a cow, and the five pure fluids, (or, milk, curds, ghee, honey, and sugar).§ He then embalms it with Yakshakardama ||

---

\* For a more literal rendering of this sentence, see *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 73, 74. The notes in the latter page may, also, be consulted to advantage.

† निमेरपि तच्छरीरमतिमनोहरतैलगन्धादिभिरुपसंस्क्रियमाणं नैव क्लेदादिकं दोषमवाप । सद्यो मृतमिव तस्थौ । The whole of this paragraph would admit of being much more closely Englished.

‡ They can hardly be generalized as "excretions". For particulars, see note \*\* to p. 193, *supra*.

§ So says Raghunandana, in the *Jyotistattva*.

|| According to Colebrooke, in his edition of the *Amara-kośa*, it consists of "camphor, agallochum, musk, and bdellium (or else the three first, with saffron and sandal-wood, in equal proportions."

the priests applied to the gods, who had come to receive their portions, that they would confer a blessing upon the author of the sacrifice. The gods were willing to restore him to bodily life; but Nimi declined its acceptance, saying: "O deities, who are the alleviators of all worldly suffering, there is not, in the world, a deeper cause of distress than the separation of soul and body. It is, therefore, my wish to dwell in the eyes of all beings, but nevermore to resume a corporeal shape." To this desire the gods assented; and Nimi was placed, by them, in the eyes of all living creatures; in consequence of which, their eyelids are ever opening and shutting.\*

---

(a composition of agallochum, camphor, musk, saffron, sandal, and a resin called Kakkola), and envelopes it, severally, with Netra vastra (flowered muslin), Pattāmbara (silk), Surasa vastra (coarse cotton), Mānjishthavāsa† (cloth dyed with madder), and Nepāla Kambala (Nepal blanketing). He then covers it with pure clay, and puts the whole into a coffin of copper (Tāmra sampu-faka).‡ These practices are not only unknown, but would be thought impure, in the present day.

---

\* ततो भूतान्युन्मेषनिमेषं चक्रुः । This legend would connect the word *nimisha*, 'wink', with the name of Nimi.

† Corrected from "Mānjishtha", which means only "dyed with madder".

‡ धनंजयोऽपि धर्मात्मा मातृभक्तिपरायणः ।  
 आदायास्थीन्यथो मातुर्गंगामार्गस्थितोऽभवत् ॥  
 पद्मगन्धेन संस्नाय ततः पद्मामृतेन वै ।  
 यच्चर्दमलेपेन लिप्त्वा पुष्पैः प्रपूज्य च ॥  
 आवेष्ट्य नेत्रवस्त्रेण ततो माञ्जिष्ठवाससा ।  
 नेपालकम्बलेनाथ मुदा चाथ विशुद्धया ।  
 ताम्रसंपुटके कृत्वा मातुरङ्गाण्यहो वणिक् ॥

In the text of my MS., *pattāmbara* and *surasavastra* do not appear; but the latter is given as a gloss on *netravastra*.

As Nimi left no successor, the Munis, apprehensive of the consequences of the earth being without a ruler, agitated the body of the prince, \* and produced, from it, a prince, who was called Janaka, from being born without a progenitor.† In consequence of his father being without a body (videha), he was termed, also, Vaideha (the son of the bodiless); and (he, further, received the name of) Mithi, from (having been produced by) agitation (mathana).<sup>1</sup> The son of Janaka was Udā-

<sup>1</sup> These legends are intended to explain, and were, probably, suggested by, the terms Videha† and Mithilā, applied to the country upon the Gunduk and Coosy§ rivers, the modern Tirhoot. The Rāmāyaṇa|| places a prince named Mithi between Nimi and

\* अपुत्रस्य तस्य भूभुजः शरीरमराजकभीरवस्ते मुनयोऽरण्यां ममन्तुः।

All my MSS. have अरण्यां, by which we are to understand the nether piece of timber used to produce fire, by attrition, at sacrifices,—the *arāṇi* containing a socket, into which the king's body was introduced, by way of upper *arāṇi*. On the reading अरण्या, things would be reversed, and a socket for the upper *arāṇi* would be furnished in the royal corpse.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* says:

तस्य पुत्रो मिथिर्नाम जनितः पर्वभिस्त्रिभिः ।

अरण्यां मध्यमानायां प्रादुर्भूतो महायशः ।

नाम्ना मिथिरिति ख्यातो जननाञ्जनकोऽभवत् ॥

A very complete dissertation on the *arāṇi* will be found in Dr. Goldstücker's *Sanskrit Dictionary*, *sub voce*.

† तत्र च कुमारो जज्ञे । जननाञ्जनकसंज्ञां चासाववाप । It was by reason of the peculiar way in which he was engendered, that he was called Janaka.

The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XIII., 13, says:

जन्मना जनकः सोऽभूदेहसु विदेहजः ।

"On l'appela Djanaka à cause de la manière dont il était né", etc.

‡ Corrected from "Vaideha". See Vol. II., p. 165.

§ For these two rivers, see Vol. II., p. 146, note 3.

|| *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXX., 4.

vasu;\* his son was Nandivardhana; his son was Suketu;† his son was Devaráta; his son was Brīhaduktha;‡ his son was Mahāvīrya;§ his son was Satyadhṛiti;|| his son was Dhṛishtaketu; his son was Haryaśwa; his son was Maru; his son was Pratibandhaka;¶ his son was Kṛitaratha;\*\* his son was Kṛita;†† his son was Vi-

Janaka, whence comes the name Mithilā. In other respects, the list of kings of Mithilā agrees, except in a few names. Janaka, the successor of Nimi, is different from Janaka who is celebrated as the father of Sītā. One of them—which, does not appear,—is, also, renowned as a philosopher, and patron of philosophical teachers. Mahābhārata, Moksha Dharma. According to the Vāyu Purāṇa, Nimi founded a city called Jayanta, near the Āśrama of Gautama.‡‡ The remains of a city called Janakpur, on the northern skirts of the district, are supposed to indicate the site of a city founded by one of the princes so named.

\* Two of my MSS. have Udāravasu.

† The majority of my MSS. have Swaketu. But Suketu is the accepted reading, as in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXXI, 5, 6; &c. &c.

‡ Brīhadratha: *Rāmāyaṇa*.

§ Mahāvira: *Rāmāyaṇa*.

|| Two MSS. give Sudhṛiti, the reading of the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Vāyu-purāṇa*. The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* exhibits Sudhṛiti and Sudhṛit in one and the same stanza.

¶ In one copy I find Pratika. Pratindhaka is read in the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and is, almost certainly, the correct name. Pratipaka is the *Bhāgavata*'s ordinary corruption. The Bengal *Rāmāyaṇa* has, according to Signor Gorresio, Prasiddhaka.

\*\* One MS. has Kṛitiratha; another, Śrutiratha. Kirttiratha is the reading of the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Vāyu-purāṇa*. The Bengal *Rāmāyaṇa* has Kfittiratha, in Signor Gorresio's edition.

†† I find Kṛiti. The *Rāmāyaṇa*, the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and the *Bhāgavata* have Devamidha.

‡‡ योऽसौ निवेशयामास पुरं देवपुरोपमम् ।

अयन्मिति विख्यातं गीतमस्यात्रमाभितः ॥

budha;\* his son was Mahádhṛiti;† his son was Kṛitirāta;‡ his son was Mahároman;§ his son was Suvarṇaroman;|| his son was Hraswaroman; his son was Síradhwaia.

Síradhwaia ploughing the ground, to prepare it for a sacrifice (which he instituted), in order to obtain progeny, there sprang up, in the furrow, ¶ a damsel, who became his daughter, Sítá.<sup>1\*\*</sup> The brother of Síradhwaia

<sup>1</sup> This identifies Síradhwaia with the second Janaka, the father-in-law of Rāma. The story of Sítá's birth, or, rather, discovery, is narrated in the Áraṇya Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, the Vana Parvan of the Mahábhārata, and in the Vāyu, Brahma Vaiyarta, Káliká, and other Purāṇas.

\* Viśruta is the name in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

† The *Vāyu-purāṇa* shows both this and Dhṛiti. One of them is, perhaps, for the sake of metre. *Vide infra*, p. 335, note †. The *Rāmāyaṇa* seems to have Mahádhṛaka, corrupted, in some copies, into Mahán-dhṛaka; while the Bengal recension has Andhaka.

‡ Kraturāta occurs in one MS. Kirttirāta: *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

§ The inferior character of the Bengal recension of the *Rāmāyaṇa* is evidenced by the fact that it here reads, at variance with all authority, Kṛitroman.

|| A single copy has Swarnaroman, the synonymous reading of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, and of the *Bhāgavata*.

¶ *Sire*, 'on his ploughshare'; for which the word for 'plough' seems to be here used by synecdoche. In the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., 13, 18, we read as follows:

सीता सीरायतो जाता तस्मात्सीरध्वजः स्यूतः ।

\*\* The *Vāyu-purāṇa*, having named Síradhwaia, says:

उद्भिन्ना कथतो येन सीता राज्ञा यश्चिनी ।

Sāṁśapāyana interrupts with questions, which the other interlocutor, Síta, answers as follows:

अग्निर्वै कथमाणे अश्वमेधे महात्मनः ।

विधिना सुप्रयुक्तेन तस्मात्सानुसमुत्थिता ॥

was Kuśadhwaṇa, who was king of Kāśī:<sup>1\*</sup> he† had a son, also, named Bhānumat.<sup>2</sup> The son of Bhānumat was Śatadyumna;‡ his son was Śuchi;§ his son was Ūrjavāha;|| his son was Satyadhwaṇa;¶ his son was

<sup>1</sup> The Rāmāyaṇa\*\* says, 'of Sāṅkāśyā', †† which is, no doubt, the correct reading. ‡‡ Fa Hian found the kingdom of Saug-kia-shi in the Doab, about Mainpooree. §§ Account of the Foe-kue-ki. || The Bhāgavata makes Kuśadhwaṇa the son of Śiradhwaṇa. ¶¶

<sup>2</sup> The Bhāgavata differs from our authority, here, considerably, by inserting several princes between Kuśadhwaṇa and Bhānumat; or, Dharmadhwaṇa, who has two sons, Kṛitadhwaṇa and Khāṇḍikya: the former is the father of Keśidhwaṇa; the latter, of Bhānumat.\*\*\* See the last Book of the Viṣṇu.

\* The text of all my MSS. but two has साङ्काश्वाधिपतिः, 'king of Sāṅkāśyā'. And herewith agrees the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. See the quotation in note \*\*\*, below. I have corrected the Translator's "Sankaśya".

† Namely, Śiradhwaṇa.

‡ One MS. gives Sudyumna. Pradyumna: *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

§ In the *Vāyu-purāṇa* the name is Muni.

|| Or the equivalent Ūrjavaha, in some copies; as in the *Vāyu*. One MS. has Ūrja.

¶¶ Variants, each in one MS.: Śatadhwaṇa and Bharadhwaṇa.

\*\* *Bāla-kāṇḍa*, LXXI., 19. Just before, the *Rāmāyaṇa* states that Kuśadhwaṇa conquered Sāṅkāśyā from Sudhanwan.

†† And so reads the *Vāyu-purāṇa*. See note \*\*\*, below.

‡‡ See the note next following.

§§ For Sāṅkāśyā, its site, &c., see the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, 1865, Part I., pp. 195—203.

|| See the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Vol. V., p. 121.

¶¶ See the next note.

\*\*\* This requires correcting. According to the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., XIII., 19—21, Śiradhwaṇa begot Kuśadhwaṇa; he, Dharmadhwaṇa; he, Kṛitadhwaṇa and Mitadhwaṇa; Kṛitadhwaṇa, Keśidhwaṇa; Mitadhwaṇa, Khāṇḍikya; Keśidhwaṇa, Bhānumat.

But the *Viṣṇu-purāṇa* has the support of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, with regard to the relationship between Śiradhwaṇa, Kuśadhwaṇa, and Bhānumat:

सीरध्वजानुजातसु भानुमान्नाम मैथिलः ।

भ्राता कुशध्वजस्तस्य साङ्काश्वाधिपतिर्नृपः ॥



Kuṇi;<sup>1\*</sup> his son was Anjana;† his son was Ritujit;‡ his son was Arishtanemi;<sup>2</sup> his son was Śrutáyus;§ his son was Supárśwa;|| his son was Sanjaya;<sup>3</sup> his son was Kshemári;<sup>4</sup>¶ his son was Anenas;<sup>5</sup> his son was Mīnaratha;<sup>6\*\*</sup> his son was Satyaratha; his son was Sátyarathi;<sup>7</sup> his son was Upagu;<sup>8</sup>†† his son was Śruta;<sup>9</sup> his son was Śáśwata;<sup>10</sup> his son was Sudhanwan;‡‡ his son was Subhása;§§ his son was Suśruta;<sup>11</sup> his son was

<sup>1</sup> Śakuni; and the last of the series, according to the Vāyu. |||

<sup>2</sup> Between this prince and Śuchi the series of the Bhāgavata is: Sanadhwaia, Ūrdhwaketu, Aja, Purajit. ¶¶ The following variations are from the same authority.

<sup>3</sup> Chitraratha.

<sup>4</sup> Kshemādhi. \*\*\*

<sup>5</sup> Omitted.

<sup>6</sup> Samaratha.

<sup>7</sup> Omitted.

<sup>8</sup> Upaguru.

<sup>9</sup> Upagupta.

<sup>10</sup> Vaswananta.

<sup>11</sup> Yuyudhan, ††† Subhášana, Śruta.

\* The Vāyu-purāṇa has Śakuni; and then follow Swāgata, Suvarchas, Sutoya, Suśruta, Jaya, &c.

† In one copy, Arjuna.

‡ Kratujit, in two MSS.; Kuntijit, in one.

§ A single MS. gives Śatáyus.

|| Supárśwaka, the longer form, in the Bhāgavata-purāṇa.

¶¶ One MS. has Kshemādhi; another has Kshemavat, followed by Váramatha, after whom comes Sátyarathi.

\*\* One copy has Mánaratha. Also see the last note.

†† In one MS. the name is Upagupta. In another MS., which I purchased at Ajmere, occur Upagu, Upagupta, Upayuta, Swāga (Swāgata?), Suvarchas, Supárśwa, Sustuta, Jaya, &c. Compare note \*, above.

‡‡ Vasuvarchas, in one copy.

§§ One MS. gives Subhávya.

||| See note \*, above.

¶¶ Corrected from "Purujit".

\*\*\* Corrected from "Kshemadhi".

††† Corrected from "Yuyudhána".

Jaya; his son was Vijaya; his son was Rīta;\* his son was Sunaya;<sup>1</sup> his son was Vītahavya; his son was Dhṛiti;† his son was Bahulāśwa; his son was Kṛiti,‡ with whom terminated the family of Janaka. These are the kings of Mithilā, who, for the most part, § will be<sup>2</sup> proficient in spiritual knowledge.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Śunaka.

<sup>2</sup> **आत्मविद्याययिषो भविष्यन्ति** || is the reading of all the copies; but why the future verb, 'will be', is used does not appear.

<sup>3</sup> Descendants of two of the other sons of the Manu are noticed in the Bhāgavata. From Nṛiga, it is said, proceeded Sumati, Bhūtajyotis, Vasu, Pratika, Oghavat, and his sister Oghavati, married to Sudarśana. ¶ The Linga\*\* gives three sons to Nṛiga,—Vṛisha, Dhṛishṭaka, and Rañadhṛishṭa, †† and alludes to a legend of his having been changed to a lizard, by the curse of a Brahman. Narishyanta's descendants‡‡ were Chitrasena, Dakṣha, Madhwat, §§ Pūrva, Indrasena, Vītihoṭra, Satyaśravas, Uruśravas,

\* Kṛita seems to be the name in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*.

† The *Vāyu-purāṇa* seems to place, here, Manodhṛiti, whom it forthwith calls Dhṛiti. Perhaps the first name is a lengthening of the second, to fill out the line. *Vide supra*, p. 332, note †. One of my MSS. of the *Vishṇu-purāṇa*, which I procured from Arrah, gives, instead of Vītahavya, Dhṛitahavya, followed by Sanjaya, Jitāśwa, Dhṛiti.

‡ The *Bhāgavata-purāṇa* gives him a son, Vaśin.

§ *Prāchuryeṇa*, 'abundantly'.

|| One of my MSS. has the present, **भवन्ति**; and this tense is implied in the parallel passage of the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

¶ *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 17, 18.

\*\* Prior Section, LXVI., 46; where, however, I find Dhṛishṭa, Dhṛishṭaketu, and Rañadhṛishṭa.

†† It looks as if there were some confusion between these persons and the *Matsya-purāṇa*'s sons of Dhṛishṭa and their father. *Vide supra*, p. 255, note 2.

‡‡ *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, IX., II., 19—22.

§§ I find Mīdhwas. Professor Wilson's "Madhwat" is, almost certainly, wrong. Paurāṇik names that are restrictively so, are, with rare exceptions,

Devadatta, Agniveśya (also called Játukarṇa\*), a form of Agni, and progenitor of the Ágniveśya Brahmans.† In the Brahma Purāṇa and Hari Vamśa, the sons of Narishyat—whom the commentator on the latter considers as the same with Narishyanta,‡ —are termed Śakas (Saca or Scythians); whilst, again, it is said, that the son of Narishyanta was Dama, or, as differently read, Yama. As this latter affiliation is stated in the authorities, it would appear as if this Narishyanta was one of the sons of the Manu: but this is only a proof of the carelessness of the compilation; for, in the Vishṇu, § Vāyu, and Márkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, Narishyanta, the father of Dama, is the son of Marutta, the fourteenth of the posterity of Dishṭa or Nedishṭa.||

significant. In the generality of instances, it is only when we recede into rather remote antiquity, that there is a difficulty in making Hindu proper names amenable to etymological investigation.

\* Likewise called Kánina.

† The Ágniveśyáyanas.

‡ We have, here, only two forms of one name.

§ *Vide supra*, p. 353.

|| Corrected from "Nedishṭa."

## CORRIGENDA, &amp;c.

- P. 3, note \*. See Vol. II., p. 26, note 2.
- P. 4, l. 1. Read Ūrja.
- P. 11, note †. See Vol. II., p. 100, note 1. We read, in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, V., I, 28: अन्यस्यामपि जायायां त्रयः पुत्रा आसन्तु मक्षामसो रैवत इति मन्वन्तराधिपतयः ।
- P. 13, l. 1. Read Ūrn.
- P. 13, note §. For the Manu's wife, Śraddhā, see p. 233, note §. The Manu's correct epithet, as Dr. Muir reminds me, is Śraddhādeva, of which Śraddhadeva is a corruption. Śraddhadeva is, however, appropriate to Yama. See *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 209, note 66 (2nd ed.). Also see the *Mahābhārata*, *Śānti-parvan*, śl. 9449.
- P. 13, note ††. For Dhīśhtu read Dhīśhūn. See p. 232, note ††, foot of the page.
- P. 13, note §§. Burnonf, in his *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*, Vol. III, Preface, p. CVI., takes the printer's error "Sanyāti", in the former edition, for a real reading.
- P. 14, note \*, end. The commentary there spoken of as ampler than the other is so, I am now convinced, only by interpolations; and these are comparatively rare, after the first few chapters of Book III.
- P. 16, note \*. Its last sentence may be a misstatement. See note below, on p. 24, note 1.
- P. 16, note †. See p. 80, note †.
- P. 22, l. 2 *ab infra*. I owe to Dr. Muir the indication of *sāvarṇya* and *sāvarṇi* in the *Rigveda*, X., LXII., 8—11; and of the Muni Sāvarṇi, in the same Veda, *Vālakhilya*, III., 1. See, further, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., p. 217, note 71 (2nd ed.).
- P. 24, note 1. I am unable to decipher, in any of my MSS. of the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, the passage there abstracted in translation.
- P. 24, l. 3. The ninth Manu and the eleventh are called Dakṣaputra and Dharmaputra, in a Paurāṇik extract already referred to: see Vol. II., p. 339, supplement to p. 131, note ¶.
- P. 26, l. 1. Read Rishis.
- P. 26, l. 6. "Dharma-sāvarṇi." See supplementary note, just above, on p. 24, l. 3.
- P. 28, l. 6. Many particulars regarding the Manus, which I have not incorporated in my annotations, may be found in Messrs. Boehtlingk and Roth's *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*, *sub voce* मनु.
- P. 29, notes, l. 2 *ab infra*. Read *Śānti-parvan*.
- P. 34, notes, l. 7. For यथा read यया.
- P. 34, note §. For Yamra, son of Vikhanas, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 293, note a.
- P. 34, notes, last line. For Traijāruṇi read Traiyāruṇi.
- P. 37, notes, l. 11 *ab infra*. See p. 221, note †.
- P. 40, notes, l. 11 *ab infra*. Read दशविधत्वम्.
- P. 40, notes, l. 9 *ab infra*. Read *paśubandha*.
- P. 44, notes † and ‡. The commentator on the *Vishṇu-purāṇa* says: बाष्कल एव बाष्कलिः स्वार्थे दञ् ।

- P. 52, note †, line 1. Read यजुर्वेद.  
 P. 58, note †. See p. 323, note §.  
 P. 63, l. 3. For the technicality *vaitāna*, see Dr. Stenzler's edition of Āśvalāyana's *Gṛhyasūtra*, Part II., p. 1, note 1.  
 P. 66, note §. See, in explanation of *gāthā*, the same work, Part II., p. 90, III., 1, note 2.  
 P. 67, l. 1. Read Āgneya.  
 P. 68, l. 2. For the *artha-śāstra*, see the *Mitāksharā* on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, II., 21.  
 P. 84, note †. In the *Matsya-purāṇa*, Chapter CXXVIII., the *brahmnāstra* is represented as shot from a bow.  
 For Bhṛigu, in connexion with fiery weapons, see p. 291, text and note †.

- P. 86, l. 4. Read Śūdra.  
 P. 88, notes, l. 8. Read द्वादशेऽङ्गि.  
 P. 89, note †. In the *Nirṇayasindhu*, the passage cited is attributed to Gautama.  
 P. 90, notes, ll. 6—11. Compare the *Nirṇayasindhu*, Bombay edition of 1857, III., B, fol. 10 r.  
 P. 90, notes, l. 2 *ab infra*. Read चाचं.  
 P. 93, note 2. Sāyaṇa Āchārya, however, commenting on the *Aitareya-brāhmaṇa*, VII., IX., cites the following *śruti*: यज देवानधीष् वेदान्प्रजामुत्पादय । "Sacrifice to the gods, read the Vedas, beget offspring."

See, further, the *Kaushitaki-brāhmaṇa Upanishad*, and the *Bṛihad-āranyaka Upanishad*, VI., IV.

- P. 94, note †. See p. 123, note ||.  
 P. 98, l. 7 *ab infra*. Compare pp. 146, 147, text and notes.  
 P. 103, notes, ll. 5, 6. Read III., A, fol. 30 v.  
 P. 104, notes, last line. See p. 197, note ¶.  
 P. 107, note †. The *Mitāksharā*, commenting on the *Yājñavalkya-smṛiti*, I., 7, has: सदाचारः । सतां शिष्टानामाचारोऽनुष्ठानम् ।  
 P. 109, note \*. For Mitra, &c., see, further, the *Laws of the Mānavas*, XII., 121.  
 P. 118, ll. 5, *et seq.* See p. 171, note §.  
 P. 123, notes, l. 9. For *svadhā*, see Professor Wilson's Translation of the *Rigveda*, Vol. I., p. 34, note a.  
 P. 139, l. 2 *ab infra*. The double asterisks should be attached to the word "towel".  
 P. 141, note \*, l. 12 *ab infra*. Read इदमन्यच्च.  
 P. 146, ll. 1—4. The original is as follows:

सचैलस्य पितुः स्नानं जति पुत्रे विधीयते ।

जातकर्म तथा कुर्वीच्छाङ्गमभ्युदये च यत् ॥

"When a son is born, the bathing of the father, in his clothes, is enjoined. Let him perform the *jāta-karman*, also, and the *śrāddha* for joyous occasions."

Compare p. 98, ll. 7—4 *ab infra*, the original of which is as follows:

जातस्य जातकर्मादि क्रियाकाण्डमशेषतः ।

पुत्रस्य कुर्वीत पिता श्राद्धं चाभ्युदयात्मकम् ॥

P. 146, note \*. See p. 291, note \*.

P. 151, notes, l. 4 *ab infra*. Read निवर्तेता चतुर्दशात्.

P. 152, note †. Compare the following stanza, referred to the *Kūrma-purāṇa*, quoted in the *Nīriyāsindhu*, Bombay edition, III., C, fol. 18 v.:

व्यापादयेद्य आत्मानं स्वयमग्न्युदकादिभिः ।

विहितं तस्य नाशीच नापि कार्यादकक्रिया ॥

P. 158, note †. See p. 221, note †.

P. 159, notes, l. 12 *ab infra*. For चिन्नुता: read विन्नुता:.

P. 160, note †. See p. 147, notes, l. 1.

P. 161, notes, l. 3. Read Áttáhi.

P. 162, note †, l. 1. Read चत्तियाणां.

P. 166, note †. Hemādri's quotations from the *Nandi-purāṇa* are, I find, too incorrect to be transcribed. They recognize five classes of *pitṛis*: Agnishwāttas, Barbishads, Kāvya, Sukálins, and Vyāmas. The *Nāgara-khaṇḍa* of the *Skanda-purāṇa* names six classes: Agnishwāttas, Barbishads, Ájyapas, Somapas, Rāsmipas, and Upahūtas. In the *Vishṇuśarmottara* we find seven classes, in two groups: Subhāswaras, Barbishads, Agnishwāttas, without form; Kravyādas, Upahūtas, Ájyapas, Sukálins, possessing forms. The *Śrāddhakalpa*, from which these particulars are taken, is very full on the subject of the *pitṛis*.

The *Vahni-purāṇa* reckons seven classes of *pitṛis*, entitled Subhāswaras, Barbishads, Agnishwāttas, Ájyapas, Upahūtas, Kravyādas, and Sukálins. It agrees, thus, precisely, with the *Vishṇuśarmottara*, as just above referred to.

In the *Mahābhārata*, *Sabhā-parvan*, śl. 341, the names are given of classes of *pitṛis* called, agreeably to the best MSS. within my reach, Phenapas, Ushmapas, and Sudhāvats. In śl. 461—463, seven classes are enumerated: Vairājas, Agnishwāttas, Gārhapatyas, Somapas, Ekaśringas, Chaturvedas, and Kālas:

पितृणां च गणान्विद्धि सत्रैव पुरुषर्षभ ।

मूर्तिमन्तो वै चत्वारस्त्रयश्चाप्यशरीरिणः ॥

वैराजाश्च महाभागा अग्निष्वात्ताश्च भारत ।

गार्हपत्या नाकचराः पितरो लोकविश्रुताः ॥

सोमपा एकशृङ्गाश्च चतुर्वेदाः कलास्तथा ।

एते चतुर्षु वर्णेषु पूज्यन्ते पितरो नृप ॥

The last-named classes are said to be honoured among the four castes. Compare p. 163, note †.

In the *Rigveda*, X., XIV. and XV., we read of the Kavyas, Barbishads, Agnishwāttas, Upahūtas, &c. &c.; and—compare p. 166, note \*,—the distinction is, thus early, made of *pitṛis* into the divisions of Agnidagdhas and Anagnidagdhas.

To exhaust the subject of these demigods, or even to collect all the more ancient passages in which they figure, would require considerable research.

In the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, the origin of the *pitṛis* is stated as follows:

पितृवन्नन्यमानस्तान्पुत्रान्प्राध्यायित प्रभुः ।

पितरो ह्युपपन्नाः राज्यहोरांतरासुवत् ॥

तस्मात्ते पितरो देवाः पुत्रत्वं तेन तेषु तत् ।

यया सृष्टास्तु पितरस्तां तनुं स व्यपोहत् ॥

"Regarding himself as a father, he [Prajāpati] thought upon these sons: he created Fathers (*Pitṛis*) from his armpits, in the interval between day and night. Hence these Fathers are gods: therefore that sonship belongs to them. He cast aside the body with which the Fathers were created." *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 78, 79. (2nd ed.).

- P. 170, note ||. In p. 66, note §, the *Pitṛi-gītā* is instanced as a specimen of a *gāthā*.  
 P. 175, note §. For further information regarding the sacrificial fires, see Śaṅkara Āchārya's commentary on the fourth chapter of the *Prasna Upanishad*.  
 P. 184, notes, last line. For त हस्त read तं हस्तं.  
 P. 188, l. 2. Read Śrāddha.  
 P. 190, l. 15. The work there named seems to be entitled, in preference, *Valmi-purāṇa*.  
 P. 190, l. 18. Read रोचकयाद्रवाक्ष्व.  
 P. 194, note \*\*, l. 1. Read *priyangu*.  
 P. 196, note ||. Compare p. 130, note \*.  
 P. 198, notes, l. 9. Read vague senso.  
 P. 205, ll. 6 et seq. ab *infra*. The original is as follows:

त्रैलोक्यं यज्ञभागाश्च दैव्यिर्हृदपुरोगमैः ।

हृतं नो ब्रह्मणोऽप्याजामुल्लङ्घ्य परमेश्वर ॥

यद्यप्यशेषभूतस्य वथं ते च तवांशकाः ।

तथाप्यविद्याभेदेन भिन्नं पश्यामहे जगत् ॥

- P. 209, note 1. Were the *Sāptatantavas* a sect of Jainas? They are named, as are the Jainas, in the *Harshacharita*. See my edition of the *Vāsavadattā*, Preface, p. 53.  
 P. 215, notes, l. 2 ab *infra*. Trisanku, the Buddhist, uses the following language regarding Brāhmanas: "Quand ils veulent manger de la viande, voici le moyen qu'ils emploient: ils tuent les animaux en prononçant des Mantras, parce que, disent-ils, les brebis ainsi immolées vont droit au ciel. Mais si c'est là le chemin du ciel, pourquoi donc ces Brāhmanes n'immolent-ils pas aussi avec des Mantras eux et leurs femmes, leur père et leur mère, leurs frères et leurs sœurs, leurs fils et leurs filles? \* \* \* Non, il n'est pas vrai que l'eau lustrale et que les Mantras fassent monter au ciel les chèvres et les brebis; toutes ces inventions sont des moyens employés par ces méchants Brāhmanes pour satisfaire leur désir de manger de la viande." Burnouf's *Introduction à l'Histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*, Vol. I., p. 209.  
 P. 221, notes, l. 6. Read स भोगान् and संभोगान्.  
 P. 221, notes, l. 6 ab *infra*. Read *Triyārūhi*.  
 P. 230, note ||. See, further, Vol. II., p. 27.  
 P. 231, note ||. The legend of the *Āitareya-brāhmaṇa*, there referred to, is translated, by Dr. Muir, as follows: "The brothers of Nābhāne-

disbha disinherited him, whilst he was living in the state of a Brahmachárin. Coming (to them), he said: 'What share have you given to me?' They replied: '(We have given thee) this judge and divider, (as thy share).' In consequence, sons, even now, speak of their father as the 'judge and divider.' He came to his father, and said: 'Father, they have given thee to me, as my share.' His father answered: 'Do not, my son, care about that. These Angirases are performing a sacrifice, in order to (secure) the heavenly world; but, as often as they come to the sixth day (of the ceremony), they become bewildered. Make them recite these two hymns (R. V., x., 61 and 62) on the sixth day; and, when they are going to heaven, they will give thee that provision of a thousand which has been made for the sacrifice.' He said: 'So be it.' He approached them, saying: 'Receive me, the son of Manu, ye sages.' They replied: 'With what object dost thou speak?' He said: 'Let me make known to you this sixth day; and then you shall give me this sacrificial provision of a thousand, when ye are going to heaven.' 'Let it be so,' they answered. He made them repeat these two hymns on the sixth day. They then knew the sacrifice and the heavenly world. Hence, when any one repeats these two hymns on the sixth day, it is with a view to a knowledge of the sacrifice, and to the revelation of the heavenly world. When they were going to the heavenly world, they said to him: 'This thousand, O Bráhmaṇ, is thine.' As he was collecting (the thousand), a man in dark clothing rose up before him, from the north, and said: 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' Nábhānedishtha replied: 'But they have given it to me.' (The man) rejoined: 'It belongs to (one of) us; let thy father be asked.' He went to his father, who asked: 'Have they not given thee (the thousand), my son?' 'They did give it to me,' he replied; 'but a man in dark clothes rose up before me, from the north, and took it from me, saying, "This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine." His father said: "It is his; but he will give it to thee." He returned, and said (to the man): "This is thine, reverend sir; so my father says." (The man) replied: "I will give it to thee, who hast spoken the truth." Wherefore one who has this knowledge should speak only truth. That is a hymn which bestows a thousand,—that Nábhānedishtha hymn. A thousand falls to his lot, he knows the heavenly world on the sixth day—the man who knows this.' *Original Sanskrit Texts*, Part I., pp. 192, 193, (2nd ed.).

A relative passage, referred to in p. 257, note †, is then given, from the *Taittiriya-saṁhitā* of the *Yajurveda*: "Manu divided his property to his sons. He disinherited his son Nábhānedishtha, who was living as a Brahmachárin. He came and said: 'How hast thou disinherited me?' 'I have not disinherited thee,' replied (his father); 'these Angirases are celebrating a sacrifice. They do not know the heavenly world. Declare to them this *Bráhmaṇa*; and, when they are going to heaven, they will give thee the cattle they have.' He declared the *Bráhmaṇa* to them; and, when they were going to heaven, they gave him the cattle they had. Rudra came to him, as he was on the place of sacrifice, employed with the cattle, and said: 'These are my cattle.' 'But,' replied Nábhānedishtha, 'they have given them to me.' 'They have not power to do so: that which is left on the place of sacrifice is mine,' answered Rudra. Hence, the place of sacrifice must not be approached. (Rudra further) said: 'Give



me a share in the sacrifice, and I shall not injure thy cattle.' He offered him this libation of *soma* and flour. Then Rudra did not injure his cattle. Whenever any one knows this libation of *soma* and flour, and offers it up, Rudra does not injure his cattle."

- P. 232, notes, 1. 6 *ab infra*. According to the *Linga-purāṇa*, the Manu's sons were nine; and their names are as in the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*, saving that Dhīshānu and Arishā take the places of Dhīshā and Dishā. Except for Arishā instead of Dishā, the nine names, in the *Brahma-purāṇa*, are the same as those in the *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*. The *Vāgni-purāṇa* gives Manu ten sons, with appellations altogether peculiar, as a whole; and the same may be said of the *Matsya-purāṇa*, my MSS. of which here present, for the rest, a good number of various readings.

- P. 238, notes, 1. 13. Read Rāmāyaṇa.

- P. 240, notes, last line. Read वैश्वता.

- P. 246, note \*. See p. 311, note \*.

- P. 248, note ||. The ensuing legend is taken from the *Śatapatha-brāhmaṇa*, IV., V., 1, etc.: Chyavana of the race of Bhṛigu, or Chyavana of the race of Angiras, having magically assumed a shrivelled form, was abandoned. Śaryāta, the descendant of Manu, wandered over this [world], with his tribe. He sat down in the neighbourhood [of Chyavana]. His youths, while playing, fancied this shrivelled magical body to be worthless, and pounded it with clods. Chyavana was incensed at the sons of Śaryāta. He created discord among them, so that father fought with son, and brother with brother. Śaryāta bethought him, 'what have I done, in consequence of which this calamity has befallen us?' He ordered the cowherds and shepherds to be called, and said, 'which of you has seen anything here to day?' They replied, 'this shrivelled magical body which lies there is a man. Fancying it was something worthless, the youths pounded it with clods.' Śaryāta knew, then, that it was Chyavana. He yoked his chariot, and, taking his daughter Sukanyā, drove off, and arrived at the place where the Rishi was. He said, 'Reverence to thee, Rishi! I injured thee, because I did not know. This is Sukanyā: with her I appease thee. Let my tribe be reconciled.' His tribe was, in consequence, reconciled; and Śaryāta, of the race of Manu, strove that he might never again do injury to any one. Now, the Āświns used to wander over this world, performing cures. They approached Sukanyā, and wished to seduce her; but she would not consent. They said to her: 'Sukanyā, what shrivelled magical body is this by which thou liest? Follow us.' She replied: 'I will not abandon, while he lives, the man to whom my father gave me.' The Rishi became aware of this. He said, 'Sukanyā, what was this that they said to thee?' She told it to him. When informed, he said, 'If they address thee thus again, say to them, 'ye are neither complete nor perfect, and yet ye speak contemptuously of my husband'; and, if they ask 'in what respect are we incomplete and imperfect?' then reply, 'make my husband young again, and I will tell you.' Accordingly, they came again to her, and said the same thing. She answered, 'Ye are neither complete nor perfect, and yet ye talk contemptuously of my husband.' They inquired, 'In what respect are we incomplete and imperfect?' She rejoined, 'make my husband young again, and I

will tell you.' They replied, 'take him to this pond, and he shall come forth with any age which he shall desire. She took him to the pond; and he came forth with the age that he desired. The Āświns then asked, 'Sukanyā, in what respect are we incomplete and imperfect?' To this the Rishi replied: 'The other gods celebrate a sacrifice in Kurukṣetra, and exclude you two from it. That is the respect in which ye are incomplete and imperfect.' The Āświns then departed, and came to the gods who were celebrating a sacrifice, when the *Bakishpavamāna* text had been recited. They said, 'Invite us to join you.' The gods replied, 'We will not invite you; for ye have wandered about very familiarly among men, performing cures.' The Āświns rejoined, 'Ye worship with a headless sacrifice.' They asked, 'How [do we worship] with a headless [sacrifice]?' The Āświns answered, 'Invite us to join you, and we will tell you.' The gods consented, and invited them. They offered this Āśvina draught (*graha*) to the Āświns, who became the two *adhvaryu* priests of the sacrifice, and restored the head of the sacrifice. It is related, in the *Brāhmaṇa* of the *Divākirttyas*, in what manner they restored the head of the sacrifice," etc., etc. Dr. Muir, in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, New Series, Vol. II., pp. 11—13

- P. 259, l. 1. The proper name Ikshwāku occurs in the *Rigveda*, X., LX., 4., on which Professor Max Müller remarks: "This is the first mention of Ikshwāku, and the only one in the *Rigveda*. I take it not as the name of a king, but as the name of a people,—probably, the people who inhabited Bhājeratha, the country washed by the northern Gangā or the Bhāgirathi." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, New Series, Vol. II., p. 462, note 1.
- P. 264, note †. Read वृहदश्वसुतश्चापि.
- P. 264, note ‡. See p. 319, note 1.
- P. 269, note †. *Prishthatas* rather means, there, 'behind him.'
- P. 283, notes, l. 7 *ab infra*. For note † read note ‡. There must be an omission, in the *Vāyu-purāṇa*, before the verse there quoted from it.
- P. 297, note †. Another inconsistency of the *Rāmāyaṇa* may be mentioned. In the *Aranya-kāṇḍa*, XIV., 8, 9, Marichi, Kaśyapa, and Vivasvat are spoken of as sons of Brahmā. Elsewhere in the same poem, as we have seen, they are represented as being, respectively, grandfather, father, and son.
- P. 308, note ¶. A better rendering is as follows: "With a view to the preservation from injury of the grain and the clouds, he threw that water for cursing neither on the earth nor into the air," &c.
- P. 312, notes, l. 4 *ab infra*. Read जीवितं.
- P. 313, note ¶. A special reason for my having declined to enter into particulars as to what is found in the *Matsya-purāṇa* is, that the copies of it accessible to me are, for the most part, exceedingly incorrect, and, in the matter of proper names, exhibit the widest discrepancy. I may add, that my MSS. seem to support the list of names to which this note is appended.
- P. 316, notes, l. 5 *ab infra*. Read Bāli.







CHALLENGED.

conch  
28/5/80

✓ 22/3/76 SV I

Central Archaeological Library,  
NEW DELHI.

Call No. 9129  
Sa 8P/VIS/W.H

Author— Wilsen, H. H. and  
Hall, F

Title— The Vishnu Purana.  
A System of Hindu  
Mythology and Tradition

Borrower No.

Date of Issue

60-1-17  
Date of Return

*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.